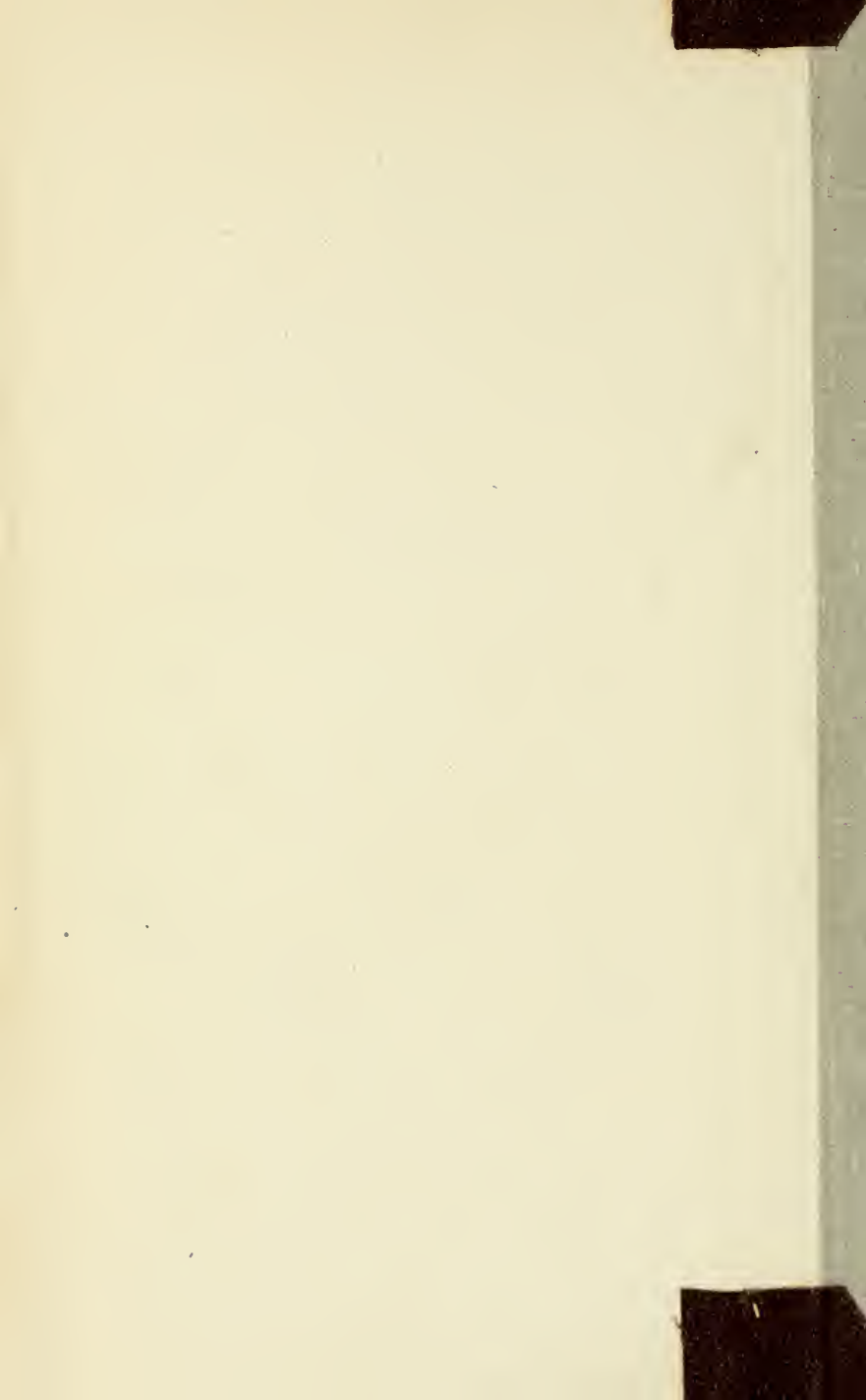


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO DUPL



3 1761 00361152 2









Caxton's  
Book of Curtesye.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. III.

1868

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.  
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



432  
22

# Caxton's Book of Curtesye,

PRINTED AT WESTMINSTER ABOUT 1477-8 A.D.

AND NOW REPRINTED,

WITH TWO MS. COPIES OF THE SAME TREATISE, FROM  
THE ORIEL MS. 79, AND THE BALLIOL MS. 354.



EDITED BY

FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A.

EDITOR OF 'THE BABEES BOOK, ETC.' ('MANNERS AND MEALS IN OLDEN TIME'),  
ETC. ETC.

[*Reprinted 1882.*]

380 5-5  
711 196.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXVIII.

PR  
1119  
E5  
no. 3,  
etc.

Extra Series,

III.

---

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS, THE CHAUCER PRESS.

## PREFACE.

THOUGH no excuse can be needed for including in our Extra Series a reprint of a unique Caxton on a most interesting subject, yet this Book of Curtesye from Hill's MS. was at first intended for our original series, I having forgotten lately that Caxton had written to 'lytyl Iohn,' though some months back I had entered the old printer's book for my second collection of Manners and Meals tracts for the Society. After the copy of Hill—which Mr W. W. King kindly made for his fellow-members—had gone to press, Mr Hazlitt reminded me of the Caxton, and its first and last lines in Mr Blades's admirable book showed that Hill's text was the same as the printed one. I accordingly went to Cambridge to copy it, and there, before tea, Mr Skeat showed me the copy of *The Vision of Piers Plowman* which the Provost and Fellows of Oriel had been good enough to lend him for his edition of 'Text B.' Having enjoyed the vellum Vision, I turned to the paper leaves at its end, and what should they contain but an earlier and better version of the Caxton that I had just copied part of?<sup>1</sup> I drank seven cups of tea, and eat five or six large slices of bread and butter, in honour of the event;<sup>2</sup> and Mr Skeat, with his never-

<sup>1</sup> Mr Bradshaw was kind enough to copy the rest, and to read the whole of the proof with Caxton's original.

<sup>2</sup> I must be excused for not having found the poem before, as it is not in the Index to Mr Coxe's Catalogue. In the body of the work it is entered as "A father's advice to his son; with instructions for his behaviour as a king's or nobleman's page. ff. 88, 89, 78. Beg.

Kepeth elene and leseth not youre gere."



failing kindness, undertook to copy and edit the Oriel text for the Society. With three texts, therefore, in hand, I could not well stick them at the end of the Postscript to the *Babees Book*, &c.,<sup>1</sup> and as I wanted Caxton's name to this Book of Curtesye to distinguish it from what has long been to me THE Book of Courtesy,—that from the Sloane MS. 1986, edited by Mr Halliwell for the Percy Society, and by me for our own E. E. T. S.—and as also Caxton's name is one 'to conjure withal,' I have, with our Committee's leave, made this little volume an Extra Series one, and called it Caxton's, though his text is not so good as that of the Oriel MS.

On this latter point Mr Skeat writes :

"The Oriel copy is evidently the best. Not only does it give better readings, but the lines, as a rule, run more smoothly ; and it has an extra stanza. This stanza, which is marked 54, occurs between stanzas 53 and 54 of the other copies, and is of some interest and importance. It shows that Lidgate's pupil, put in mind of Lidgate's style by the very mention of his name, introduces a ballad of three stanzas, in which every stanza has a burden after the Lidgate manner. The recurrence of this burden no doubt caused copyists to lose their place, and so the stanza came to be omitted in other copies. Its omission, however, spoils the ballad. Both it and the curious lines in *Piers Ploughmans Crede*,

For aungells and arcangells · all þei whijt vseþ  
And alle aldermen · þat ben *ante tronum*,

i. e. all the elders before the throne, allude to Rev. iv. 10. This Crede passage has special reference to the *Carmelites* or *White Friars*.

"The first two leaves of the Oriel copy are misplaced inside out at the end ; but this is not the only misarrangement. The poem has evidently been copied into this MS. from an older copy having a leaf capable of containing *six stanzas at a time* ; which leaves were out of order. Hence the poem in the Oriel MS. is written in the following order, as now bound up, Stanzas 11 (l. 5)—18, 25—30, 37—42, 19—24, 49—54, 31—36, 43—48, 55—76, 8—11 (l. 4), 4 (l. 5)—7, 1—4 (l. 4)."

<sup>1</sup> The Treatises in *The Babees Book*, &c., and the Index at the end, should be consulted for parallel and illustrative passages to those in Caxton's text.

As an instance of a word improved by the Oriel text, may be cited the '*brecheles feste*' of Caxton's and Hill's texts, l. 66, and l. 300,

ffor truste ye well ye shall you not excuse  
ffrom *brecheles feste*, & I may you espye  
Playenge at any game of rebawdrye.—Hill, l. 299—301.

Could it be 'profitless,' from A.-Sax. *brēc*, gain, profit; or 'breechless,' a feast of birch for the boy with his breeches off? The latter was evidently meant, but it was a forced construction. The Oriel *byrcheley* set matters right at once.

Another passage I cannot feel sure is set at rest by the Oriel text. Hill's and Caxton's texts, when describing the ill-mannered servant whose ways are to be avoided, say of him, as to his hair, that he is

Absolon with disheveled heres smale,  
lyke to a prysoner of saynt Malowes,<sup>1</sup>  
*a sonny busshe able to the galowes*.—Hill, l. 462.

For the last line the Oriel MS. reads,

*a sonny bush myght cause hym to goo louse,*

and Mr Skeat says,—“This is clearly the right reading, of which *galowes* is an unmeaning corruption. The poet is speaking of the *dirty* state of a bad and ill-behaved servant. He is as dirty as a man come out of St Malo's prison; a sunny bush would cause him to go and free himself from minute attendants. A 'sunny bush' probably means no more than a warm nook, inviting one to rest, or to such quiet pursuits as the one indicated. That this is really the reading is shown by the next stanza, wherein the poet apologizes for having spoken too bluntly; he ought to have spoken of such a chase by saying that he goes *a-hawking* or *a-hunting*. Such was the right euphemism required by 'norture.'”

If this is the meaning, we may compare with it the old poet's reproof to the proud man:

<sup>1</sup> An allusion to the strong castle built at St Malo's by Anne, Duchess of Bretayne.—Dyce.

Man, of þi schuldres and of þi side  
 þou miȝte hunti luse and flee :  
 of such a park i ne hold no pride ;  
 þe dere nis nauȝte þat þou mighte sle.

*Early English Poems*, ed. F. J. F., 1862, p. 1, l. 5.

and remember that one of the blessings of the early Paradisaical  
*Land of Cokaygne* is :

Nis þer flei, fle, no lowse,  
 In cloþ, in toune, bed, no house.

*Ib.*, p. 157, l. 37-8.

We may also compare the following extract about Homer's death from "Pleasant and Delightfull Dialogues in Spanish and English : Profitable to the Learner, and not vnpleasant to any other Reader. By *John Minsheu*, Professor of Languages in London. 1623," p. 47.

"F . . . a foole with his foolishnesse framed in his owne imagination may giue to a hundred wise men matter to picke out.

"I, So it hapned to the Poet Homer, that as he was with age blinde, and went walking by the sea shoare, & heard certaine Fishermen talking, that at that time were a *lowsing* themselues, and as he asked them, what fish they caught, they vnderstanding that he had meant their lice, they answered, Those that we <sup>1</sup> haue, we seeke for, and those that we <sup>2</sup> haue not wee finde, but as the good Homer could not see what they did, and for this cause could not vnderstand the riddle, it did so griene his vnderstanding to obtaine the secret of this matter, which was a sufficient grieue to cause his death."

But the subject is not a very pleasant one for discussion, though the occupation alluded to in the Oriel Text must have been one of the pastimes of many people in Early England.

The book itself, *Lytill Johan*, is by a disciple of Lydgate's—see l. 366, p. 36-7—and contains, besides, the usual directions how to dress, how to behave in church, at meals, and when serving at table, a wise man's advice on the books his little Jack should read, the best English poets,—then Gower, Chaucer, Occleve, and Lydgate,—not the Catechism and Latin Grammar. It was very pleasant to come

<sup>1</sup> i. Haue in their clothes, i. lice.

<sup>2</sup> i. Haue not in hand.

off the directions not to conveye spetell over the table, or burnish one's bones with one's teeth, to the burst of enthusiasm with which the writer speaks of our old poets. He evidently believed in them with all his heart; and it would have been a good thing for England if our educators since had followed his example. If the time wasted, almost, in Latin and Greek by so many middle-class boys, had been given to Milton and Shakspeare, Chaucer and Langland, with a fit amount of natural science, we should have been a nobler nation now than we are. There is no more promising sign of the times than the increased attention paid to English in education now.

But to return to our author. He gives Chaucer the poet's highest gift, Imagination, in these words,

what ever to say he toke in his entente,  
his langage was so fayer & pertynante,  
yt semeth vnto manys heryng  
*not only the worde, but veryly the thyng.* (l. 343.)

And though the writer has the bad taste to praise Lydgate more than Chaucer, yet we may put this down to his love for his old master, and may rest assured that though the cantankerous Ritson calls the Bury schoolmaster a 'driveling monk,' yet the larking schoolboy who robbed orchards, played truant, and generally raised the devil in his early days (*Forewords to Babees Book*, p. xlv.), retained in later years many of the qualities that draw to a man the boy's bright heart, the disciple's fond regret. We too will therefore hope that old Lydgate's

sowle be gon  
(To) the sterred paleys above the dappled skye,  
Ther to syng *Sanctus* insessavntly  
Emonge the mvses nyne celestyall,  
Before the hyeste Iubyter of all. (l. 381-5.)

In old age the present poem was composed (st. 60, p. 42-3); 'a lytill newe Instruccion' to a lytle childe, to remove him from vice & make him follow virtue. At his riper age our author promises his boy the surplusage of the treatise (st. 74, p. 50-1); and if a copy of it exists, I hope it will soon fall in our way and get into type, for 'the more the merrier' of these peeps into old boy-life.

On one of the grammatical forms of the Oriel MS., Mr Skeat writes :

“It is curious to observe the forms of the imperative mood plural which occur so frequently throughout the poem in the Oriel copy. The forms ending in *-eth* are about 31 in number, of which 17 are of French, and 14 of A.S. origin. The words in which the ending *-eth* is dropped are 42, of which 18 are of French, and 24 of A.S. origin. The three following French words take *both* forms ; *avyse* or *avyseth*, *awayte* or *awayteth*, *wayte* or *wayteth* ; and the five following A.S. words, *be* or *beth*, *kepe* or *kepeth*, *knele* or *knelyth*, *loke* or *loketh*, *make* or *maketh*. Thus the poet makes use, on the whole, of one form almost as often as the other (that is, supposing the scribe to have copied correctly), and he no doubt consulted his convenience in taking that one which suited the line best. It is an instance of what followed in almost every case of naturalization, that A.S. inflections were added to the French words quite as freely as to those of native origin. Both the *-eth* and *-e* forms are commonly used without the word *ye*, though *Be ye* occurs in l. 58. In the phrase *avise you* (l. 78), *you* is in the accusative.”

Commenting also on l. 71 of Caxton and Hill, Mr Skeat notices how they have individualised the general ‘child’ of the earlier Oriel text :

“71. Here we find *child* riming to *mylde*. In most other places it is *Johan*. The rime shows that the reading *child* is right, and *Johan* is a later adaptation. The Oriel MS. never uses the word *Johan* at all ; it is always *child*.”

I may remark also, that on the question lately raised by Mr Bradshaw, ‘who before Hampole,<sup>1</sup> or after him, used *you* for the nominative as well as the correct *ye*,’ Hill uses both *you* and *ye*, see l. 47, 51, 52, &c., though so far as a hasty search shows, Lydgate, in his Minor Poems at least, uses *ye* only, as do Lord Berners in his *Arthur of Lytil Brytayne*, ab. 1530, the Ormulum, Anceren Riwle, Genesis and Exodus, William of Palerne, Alliterative Poems, Early Metrical Homilies, &c.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Pricke of Conscience*, p. 127, l. 4659 ; and p. xvii.

<sup>2</sup> Mr Skeat holds that in the various reading *3aw drieth* from the Univ. Coll.



The final *d*, *f*, *t*, of Hill's MS., often have a tag to them. As they sometimes occur in places where I judge they must mean nothing, I have neglected them all. Every final *u* has a line through it, which may mean *e*. Nearly every final *n* and *m* has a curly tail or line over it. This is printed *e* or *n̄*, though no doubt the tail and line have often no value at all. The curls to the *rs* are printed *e*, because *ther* with the curly *r*, in l. 521, Hill, rimes to *where* of l. 519.

At the end of Caxton's final *d* and *g* is occasionally a crook-backed line, something between the line of beauty and the ordinary knocker. This no doubt represents the final *e* of MSS., and is so printed, as Mr Childs has not the knocker in the fount of type that he uses for the Society's work. Caxton's *n̄* stands for *un* in the *-aunce*, *-aunte*, of words from the French. No stops or inverted commas have been put to Caxton's text here, but the stanzas and lines have been numbered, and side-notes added.

"The *Book of Curtesye*," says Mr Bradshaw, "is known from three early editions. The first, without any imprint, but printed at Westminster by Caxton ab. 1477-78,<sup>1</sup> the only known copy of which is here reproduced. The second (with the colophon 'Here endeth a lytyll treatyse called the booke of Curtesye or lytyll John. Emprynted atte Westmoster') is only known from a printer's proof of two pages<sup>2</sup> preserved among the Douce fragments in the Bodleian. It must have been printed by Wynkin de Worde in Caxton's house ab. 1492. In the third edition it was reprinted at the end of the *Stans puer ad Mensam* by Wynkin de Worde ab. 1501-1510. The Cambridge copy is the only one known to remain of this edition."

I have no more to say: but, readers, remember this coming New Year to do more than last for what Dr Stratmann calls "the dear Old English." Think of Chaucer when his glad spring comes, and

Oxford MS. (of the early part of the 15th century) to the Vernon MS. *pou druizest*, l. 25, Passus 1, of the Vision of Piers Plowman, the *3ow* is an accusative, "exactly equivalent to the Gothic in the following passage—'hwana þaursjai, gaggai du mis, i. e. *whom* it may thirst, let him come to me.' John vii. 37. I conclude that *3ow* is accusative, not dative. The same construction occurs in German constantly, '*es dürstet mich*' = it thirsts me, I thirst."

<sup>1</sup> In his type No. 2, *Blades*, ii. 63.

<sup>2</sup> In Caxton's type No. 5, *Blades*, ii. 235 (not 253 as in Index).

every day besides ; forget not Langland or any of our early men ;

reporte

& revyue *the* lawde of them that were  
famovs in<sup>1</sup> owre langage, these faders dere,  
whos sowles in blis, god eternall avaunce,  
that lysten so<sup>2</sup> owre langage to enhavnee !

(*Hill*, l. 430-4.)

3, *St George's Square, N.W.*

15 Dec., 1867.

<sup>1</sup> Founders of, *Oriel* MS.

<sup>2</sup> some, *Hill* ; so, *Oriel*.

The Book of Curtesye.

[The Book of Curtesy.]

[From the Oriel MS. lxxix.]

[1]

Lytle childe, sythen youre tendre infancie  
Stondeth as yett vnder yndyff[e]rence,  
To vice or vertu to mouen<sup>1</sup> or Applie, 3 <sup>1</sup> MS. morven.  
And in suche Age ther is no prouidence,  
Ne comenly no sadde intelligence,  
But ryght as wax receyueth printe and figure,  
So chylder ben disposed of nature,

[2]

Vice or vertu to Folowe and ympresse  
In mynde ; and therfore, to stere and remeve  
You from vice, and to vertu thou<sup>2</sup> dresse, 10 <sup>2</sup> Read you.  
That on to folow, and the other to eschewe,  
I haue devysed you this lytill newe  
Instruccion according to youre age,  
Playne in sentence, but playner in langage. 14

---

(Richard Hill's Commonplace Book, or Balliol MS. 354, fl C lx.)

Here begynnyth lytill Iohan.

Lyteff Iohan, sith your tendere enfancie  
Stondyth as yet vnder Indyfference  
To vyce or vertu to mevyn or applie,  
4 & in suche age *ther*<sup>1</sup> ys no provydence,  
Ne comenly no sage Intelygence,  
But as wax receyvith prynt or fygure,  
So chyldren bene disposed of nature

[Hill's Text.]

<sup>1</sup> The *th* is the same as the *y*.

## [The Book of Curtesye.]

[*Caxton's Text.*]

### [1]

1    ytyl Iohn syth your tendre enfancye  
      Stondeth as yet vnder / in difference  
To vice or vertu to meynyn or applye  
And in suche age ther is no prouidence  
Ne comenly no sade Intelligence  
But as waxe resseyueth prynte or figure  
So children ben dispose of nature

[Leaf 1 a.]  
As Infancy is  
indifferent  
3 whether it follows  
vice or virtue,

7

### [2]

Vyce or vertue to folowe ande enpresse  
In mynde / ande therfore / to styre & remeue  
You from vice / ande to vertue adresse  
That one to folowe / and that other teshewe  
I haue deuysed you / this lytyl newe  
Instruccïon / acordynge vnto your age  
Playne in sentence / but playner in langage

I have written  
this new treatise  
to draw you from  
vice, and turn you  
to virtue.

10

14

- 
- 8 ¶ Vyce or vertu to folowe, & enpresse  
      In mynde ; & therfor to styre & remeue  
      you frome vice, & to vertu adresse,  
      That on to folow, & that other to eschewe,  
12    I haue deuysed you this lytill newe  
      Instruccïon <sup>1</sup> accordyng vnto your age,  
      playn In sentence, but playnere In langage.

[*Hill's Text.*]

<sup>1</sup> The mark of contraction is over the *n* : t. i. the *n* has its tail curled over its back like a dog's.



## [3]

**T**aketh hede therfore and herkyn what I say,  
 And yeueth therto hooly youre aduertence,  
 Lette not youre eye be here and youre hert away, 17  
 But yeueth herto youre besy diligence,  
 And ley aparte alle wantawne insolence,  
 Lernyth to be vertues and well thewid ;  
 Who wolle not lere, nedely must be lewid. 21

## [4]

**A**fore all thyng, fyrst and principally,  
 In the morowe when ye<sup>1</sup> shall vppe ryse, <sup>1 MS. he.</sup>  
 To wyrship god haue in youre memorie ; 24  
 Wyth cristis crosse loke ye blesse you thriese,  
 Your pater-nosteir seyth in devoute wyse,  
 Aue maria wyth the holy crede,  
 Than alle the after the bettir may ye spede. 28

## [5]

**A**nd while ye be Abouten honestly  
 To dresse youre-self and don on youre aray,  
 Wyth youre felawe well and tretably 31  
 Oure lady matens Avyseth that you say,  
 And this observaunce vseth euery day,  
 Wyth prime and owris, and wythouten drede  
 The blyssed lady woll graunte you youre mede. 35

- ¶ Take hede *therfor*, & harken what I saye, [Hill's Text.]  
 16 & geve *therto* yowre good aduertence,  
 lette not *your* ere be here, & *your* herte awaye,  
 But pute you *therto* besy delygence,  
 Laying a-parte all wanton Insolence,  
 20 lernyd to be *vertuvs* & well thewed ;  
 who will not lerne, nedely he must be lewed.
- ¶ Afore all thyng, & pryneypally  
 In the mornyng whan ye vp ryse,  
 24 To worship god haue in memory ;  
 with *crystis* crosse loke ye blesse ye thryse,

## [3]

|  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| Take hede therfore / and herkne what I saye  | Attend therefore<br>to what I say. |
| Ande gyue therto / your goode aduertence     |                                    |
| Lete not your ere be here & your herte awaye | 17                                 |
| But put ye therto / besy diligence           |                                    |
| Leynge aparte al wantown Insolence           |                                    |
| Lerneth to be vertuous / and wel thewede     | Learn good<br>manners.             |
| Who wil not lerne / nedely he must be lewed  | 21                                 |

## [4]

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Afore alle thinge / ande principally            | [Leaf 1 b.]                                  |
| In the morenynge / whan ye vp rise              | On rising,                                   |
| To worshipe gode / haue in memorie              | 24   |
| With crystes crosse / loke ye blesse you thrise | cross yourself,                              |
| Your pater noster / saye in deuoute wyse        | say your Pater<br>Noster, Ave, and<br>Creed. |
| Aue maria / with the holy crede                 |  |
| Thenne alle the day / the better shal ye spede  | 28   |

## [5]

|   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| And while that ye be aboute honestly        |                           |
| To dresse your self / & do on your araye    | While dressing,           |
| With your felawe / wel and tretably         | 31                        |
| Oure lady matyns / loke that ye saye        | say our Lady's<br>Matins, |
| Ande this obseruance / vse ye every daye    |                           |
| With pryme and ouris / withouten drede      | Prime, and<br>Hours.      |
| The blesside lady / wil quyte you your mede | 35                        |

your patere noster say in deuoute wyse,  
 Aue maria / with the holy crede ;  
 28 Then all the day the better shall ye spede. [Hill's Text.]

¶ And while ye dresse your selfe, honestly  
 To dresse your selfe & do on your araye,  
 with your felowe well & tretably  
 32 Owre lady matens loke that you say ;  
 And this obseruance vse ye euery day,  
 with pryme & owers with-owt drede.  
 the blesseyd lady will quyte you your mede.

## [6]

**K**embe youre hede and loke ye kepe hit elene,  
 Youris eris twayne suffre not foule to be ;  
 In youre visage wayteth no spotte be sene, 38  
 Purge youre nase, let hit not combred be  
 Wyth foule matiers Ayeunst all oneste,  
 But wyth bare hande no matier from hit feche,  
 For that is a foule and an vncurtays teche. 42

## [7]

Youris handes wassheth, that is an holsom thyng,  
 Youris nayles loke they be not geet blake,  
 Suffre hem not to ben ouer long growyng ; 45  
 To youre aray good hede I warne you take,  
 That manerly ye seet hit vp and make,  
 Youris hode, youre gowne, youre hose, and eke  
 youre scho,  
 Wyth all array longyng youre body to. 49

## [8]

**K**epeth elene and leseth not youre gere,  
 And or ye passen oute of youre loggyng,  
 Euery garment that ye schulle vppon you were, 52  
 Awayteth welle that hit be so syttyng  
 As to youre degre semeth moost on accordyng ;  
 Than woll men sey, ‘ for soth this childe is he  
 That is well taught and loueth honeste.’ 56

---

36 ¶ Kembe your hede, & loke you kepe yt elene ; [Hill's Text.]  
           your eres twayn suffre not fowle to be ; [m C 1x back]  
 In your wysage loke no spote be sene ;  
           purge your nose ; lett no man in yt se  
 40 The vile matter ; yt ys none honeste ;  
           Ne with your bare hond no fylth from yt feche,  
           ffor that ys fowle, & an vncurtoys teche.

¶ Your hondis wasshe ; yt ys an holsom thyng ;  
 44 your naylis loke they be not gety blake,  
           Ne suffre not them ouer longe growyng.

## [6]

|  |                                    |    |
|--|------------------------------------|----|
| Kembe your hede / & loke ye kepe it elene        | Comb your head;<br>clean your ears |    |
| Your eres tweyne / suffre not fowl to be         |                                    | 38 |
| In your visage / wayte no spot be sene           |                                    |    |
| Purge your nose / lete noman in it see           | and nose;                          |    |
| The vile mater / it is none honeste              |                                    |    |
| Ne with your bare honde / no filth fro it fecche | don't pick it.                     |    |
| For that is fowl / and an vncurtoys teche        |                                    | 42 |

## [7]

|  |                                       |    |
|--|---------------------------------------|----|
| Your hondes wesshe / it is an holsom thinge  | [Leaf 2 a.]                           |    |
| Your naylis loke / they be not gety blacke   | Wash your<br>hands; don't keep        |    |
| Ne suffre not hem / to be ouer longe growyng | your nails jet-<br>black or too long. | 45 |
| To your araye / I warne you good hede take   |                                       |    |
| That manerly ye fytted it vp and make        |                                       |    |
| Your hooede, gowne, hosyn / & eke your sho   | Wear fit clothes,<br>that fit well    |    |
| With al your aray longyng your body to       |                                       | 49 |

## [8]

|   |                             |    |
|---|-----------------------------|----|
| Kepe you elene / and lose not your gere         |                             |    |
| And or ye passe / out of your loggyng           |                             |    |
| Euery garment / that ye shal on were            |                             | 52 |
| Awayte wel / that it be so syttyng              | and suit your<br>station;   |    |
| As to your degre / semeth acordyng              |                             |    |
| Thenne wil men saye / forsoth this childe is he | the men will<br>praise you. |    |
| That is wel taught / and louth honeste          |                             | 56 |

---

48      To your A-rye I warne you good hede take,  
          Manerly & fyte loke you yt make;  
          your hood / gowne / hosen / & eke your sho,  
          with all your aray longyng your body to.      [Hull's Text.]

¶ Kepe you elene, & lose not your gere;  
          & or you passe owt of your lodgyng,  
52      Euery garment *that* ye shaft were,  
          Awayte wel *that* yt be so syttyng  
          & to your degre semed accordyng;  
          Than wil men say, "for sothe *this* child ys he  
56      *that* ys wel taught, & loweth honeste."

## [9]

And as ye walke and passen be the strete,  
 Be ye not nyce of chere and countenance ;  
 And loke, my childe, to folkys that ye mete, 59  
 Ye spekyn feyre wyth wordis of plesaunce ;  
 To youre souerayne wyth humble obeysaunce,  
 To hym that is youre felowe and pere,  
 Yevith feyre langage wyth ryght frendly chere. 63

## [10]

Cast not wyth stone or styke at foule ne beste,  
 And where ye walke be ware that ye ne rage,<sup>1</sup>  
 For and ye do, ye shall to byrcheley feest. 66  
 Terre<sup>2</sup> wyth no hounde in fylde nor in village,  
 Gothe forth in peace, demenyng youre vysage  
 In sobre wyse, that men may of you say,  
 ' A goodly childe ther passith be the way.' 70

## [11]

Whan ye come to the chirche, my lytyll chylde,  
 Holy watir ye schull vppon you caste 72  
 Be-fore the crosse wyth [chere] moste meke and mylde ;  
 Than knelyth doune and knocketh on youre breste,  
 Thankyng the lorde that on the crosse did rest,  
 And there for you suffred his hert to blede,  
 Seyth or ye ryse Pater, Aue, and A crede. 77

- ¶ And as ye walke & passe by *the* strete, [Hill's Text.]  
 Be ye not Nyce of chere & covntenavnce,  
 but loke, my child, to folkis *that* you mete,  
 60 & loke ye speke fayere *with* wordis of plesavnce,  
 Demvre, & curtoys of your Demenavnce.  
 To hym *that* ys yowre fellow & pere,  
 Geve you fayre langage & a ffrendly chere.
- 64 ¶ Cast no styke ne stone at fowle ne beste ;  
 & wher ye walke, be ware ye ne rage.  
 ffor yff ye do ye shaft to brecheles feest.  
 Terre not *with* hovndis in fyld ne in vilage ;



## [9]

And as ye walke / and passe by the strete  
 Be ye not nyce of chere / and countenaunce  
 But loke my child / to folkes that ye mete  
 Ye speke fayr / with wordes of plesaunce  
 Demure and curtoys / of your demenaunce  
 To hym that is your felawe ande pere  
 Gyue ye fair langage / and a frendly chere

As you walk,  
 look pleasantly  
 at folk,

59

and greet your  
 fellows friendly;

63

## [10]

Caste no styck ne stone at fowle ne beest  
 And where ye walke / bewarre ye ne rage  
 For yf ye doo / ye shal to brecheles feest  
 Terre not with hounde in felde ne in vilage  
 Go forth your waye / demenyng your viage  
 In sobre wyse / that men may of you saye  
 A goodly chyld / ther passeth by the waye

[Leaf 2 b.]  
 don't shy stones  
 at bird or beast,

66

or quarrel with  
 dogs.

70

## [11]

And whan ye come to þ<sup>e</sup> chirche my litil child  
 Holy water / ye shal vpon you caste  
 Byfore þ<sup>e</sup> crosse / with chere meke & mylde  
 Knele adoun / and knocke on your breste  
 Thankyng the good lord þ<sup>t</sup> on it dide reste  
 And there / for you suffryd his sides to blede  
 Saye ye or ye rise / pater noster / aue / & a crede

At church, holy-  
 water yourself,

73

kneel before the  
 cross, knock on  
 your breast,

77 and say prayers.

68 Go furth your way, Demenyng your viage  
 In sober wyse, *that* men maye of you saye,  
 "A goodly chyld ther passith by the way."

[Hill's Text.]

¶ And when ye cum to *the* churche, my litiſt child,  
 72 holy water ye shaft vpon you caste.  
 be-fore *the* crosse with chere meke & mylde  
 knele a-downe, & knoke on your brest,  
 Thankyng *that* good lord *that* on yt dyde reste,  
 76 & ther for you suffred his sydys to blede;  
 Saye ye, or you ryse, pater noster / aue / & a  
 crede.

## [12]

A vise you well Also for eny thyng,  
 The schirche of prayer is the house and place ;  
 Be ware there-fore of clappe or Ianglyng, 80  
 For in the schirche that is full gret trysspace,  
 And A token of hem that lacken grace ;  
 Ther beth demure and kepeth youre sylence,  
 And serueth god wyth all youre deligence. 84

## [13]

TO helpe the prest whan he shall sey the masse,  
 T Whan hit shall happen you or be-tyde,  
 Remeue not ferre ne from his *presence* passe, 87  
 Kneleth or stondesth deuoutly hym be-syde,  
 And not to nyghe ; youre tounge mooste be applied  
 To Answer hym wyth <sup>1</sup> v[o]ice full moderate ; <sup>1</sup> MS. wyth hym  
 Avyse you well, my lityll childe, Algate 91  
 wyth.

## [14]

TO mynystre wyth de-voute Reuerence,  
 T Loke that ye do youre humble obseruaunce  
 Debonarly wyth [dewe] obideence, 94  
 Cyrcum-spectly, wyth euer[y] circumstaunce  
 Of porte, of chere, demevire of countenaunce,  
 Remembryng, the lord aboue is he  
 Whom to serue is grettest liberte. 98

¶ Avyse you well also for any thyng, [Hill's Text.]  
 The chyrche, of prayer ys howse & place ;  
 80 be ware *therfor* of clappe or Iangelynge,  
 ffor in the chyrche yt ys a full gret trespas,  
 & a token of suche as lacketh *grace*.  
 Ther be ye demvre, & kepe ye scilence,  
 84 And *serve* ye god with all your delygence.  
 To helpe the Preest whan he sayth masse, [H C 1xj.]  
 whan yt shaft happen you or betyde,  
 Remeve not fer, ne from his *presence* passe ;  
 88 knele or stonde you devovtly hym besyde,

## [12]

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| Auyse you wel also / for ony thinge                        |                    |
| The chirche of prayer / is hous and place                  |                    |
| Beware therfore / of clappe or Iangelynge                  | 80 Don't chatter,  |
| For in þ <sup>e</sup> chirche / it is a ful grete trespaas |                    |
| And a token of suche / as lackyth grace                    |                    |
| There be ye demure / and kepe ye seilence                  | but be silent, and |
| And serue ye god / with al your diligence                  | 84 serve God.      |

## [13]

|   |   |
|---|---|
| To helpe the preest / whan he saith masse   |   |
| Whan it shal happen you or betyde           |   |
| Remeue not fer / ne from his presence passe | 87  |
| Knele or stonde ye / deuoutly hym besyde    | [Leaf 3 a.]<br>When you help<br>the priest at<br>Mass,<br>kneel or stand<br>near him, |
| And not to nygh your tonge muste be applide |   |
| Tanswere hym / with voys ful moderate       |   |
| Auyse you wel / my lityl childe algate      | 91 and answer him<br>in a moderate<br>tone.   |

## [14]

|  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| To mynstre / with deuoute reuerence        |                         |
| Loke ye do / youre humble obseruañce       | Minister<br>reverently  |
| Debonairly / with due obedyence            | 94                      |
| Circumspectly / with euery circumstaunce   |                         |
| Of poort and chere / of goodly countenañce | and circum-<br>spectly. |
| Remembrynge wel the lorde / a boue is he   |                         |
| Whom to serue / is grettest liberte        | 98                      |

& not to nygh : your tonge mvst be applyde  
To answee hym with woyce moderate.  
Avyce you weft, my lytiff child, algate

[Hill's Text.]

92 ¶ To mynyster with devout reverence ;  
loke ye do your humble observaunce  
Debonerly wyth dewe obedyence,  
Circumspectly with euery circumstavnce  
96 Of poort, & chere of goodly covtenaunce,  
Remembryng well the lorde a-bove ys he,  
whome to serve ys grettest lyberte.

[15]

And whan ye speke, loketh men in the face <sup>1</sup> 1 MS. visage.  
 Wyth sobre chere and goodly semblaunce;  
 Cast not youre eye asyde in odir place, 101  
 For that is a tokyn of wantowne inconstaunce,  
 Which wolle appeyre youre name, and disauaunce;  
 The wyse man seyth, 'who hathe this signes thre  
 Ne is not like a good man [for] to be— 105

[16]

Yn hert,' he seyth, 'who that is inconstaunte,<sup>2</sup> 2 MS. inconstaunce  
 A waveryng eye, glyddryng but sodenly  
 From place to place, and A fote<sup>3</sup> variaunte<sup>4</sup> 108 <sup>3</sup> MS. fore.  
<sup>4</sup> MS. variaunce.  
 That in no place abydeyth stabully—  
 Thes ben signes,' the wyse man seyth sekerly,  
 'Of suche a wyght as is vnmanerly nyce,  
 And is full like dissposed be to vice.' 112

[17]

And wayte, my childe, whan ye stond at the table,  
 Of souereyne or maister whether hit be,  
 Applieth you [for] to be sermysable, 115  
 That no defaute in you may founde be;  
 Loke who doth best and hym envyeth ye,  
 And specially vseth attendaunce,  
 Whiche is to souereyne thyng of gret plesaunce. 119

¶ And whan ye speke, loke men in the face [Hill's Text.]  
 100 with sobre chere & goodly semblaunce;  
 Caste not eye a-side in no othere place,  
 ffor that ys a token of a wanton constavnce  
 which wilf apayre your name, & dysavance.  
 104 The wyse man sayth, 'who hath these  
 thyngis iij,  
 ys not lyke a good man for to be :

¶ 'In herte,' he sayth, 'who that ys Inconstavnte,  
 A waverynge eye, glydyng sodenly  
 108 ffro place to place, & a foote varyavnte  
 that in no place a-bydyth stabli,

## [15]

|  |     |  |
|--|-----|--|
| And whan ye speke / loke men in the face       |     | When you speak<br>to men, look 'em<br>in the face. |
| With sobre chere / ande goodly semblaunce      |     |  |
| Caste not your eye a syde / in other place     | 101 |  |
| For that is a token of wantouñ inconstaunce    |     |  |
| Whiche wil appeyre your name & disauaunce      |     |  |
| The wise man saith who hath these thingis thre |     | The Wise Man<br>says                               |
| Is not lyke a goode man for to be              | 105 |  |

## [16]

|   |     |   |
|---|-----|---|
| In herte he seith / who that is inconstaunte                |     | [Leaf 3 b.]   |
| A waueryng eye / glydyng sodeynly                           |     | an inconstant<br>man with a<br>wavering eye and<br>a wandering foot |
| Fro place to place / & a foot variaunte                     | 108 |   |
| That in no place / abydeth stably                           |     |   |
| These ben þ <sup>e</sup> signes / the wiseman seith sikerly |     |   |
| Of suche a wight / as is vnmanerly nyce                     |     |   |
| And is ful likely disposid vnto vyce                        | 112 | will turn to vice.  |

## [17]

|  |     |                                |
|--|-----|--------------------------------|
| Awayte my chylde / whan ye stande atte table |     | When you serve<br>at table,    |
| Of maister or scuerayn / whether it be       |     |                                |
| Applye you for to be seruysable              | 115 | be attentive and<br>ndy,       |
| That no defaute in you founden be            |     |                                |
| Loke / who doth best / and hym ensiewe ye    |     |                                |
| And in especial / vse ye attendaunce         |     | specially to well-<br>off men. |
| Wherein ye shal your self best auaunce       | 119 |                                |

---

Thyse bene *the thyngis,* the wysman sayth  
sekerly, [Hill's Text.]  
112 'Off suche a wayghte *that* be vnmanerly nyce,  
& be full lykely dysposed vnto vyce.'

¶ Awayte, my chylde, whan ye stonde at table,  
Off mayster or soverayne whether yt be,  
116 Applye you for to be servysable  
That no defawte in you fownden be ;  
loke who dothe best, & hym folow ye,  
& in especiall vse ye attendaunce  
wheryn ye shalt your selfe best auaunce.

## [18]

A[s] ye be comaundyd, so ye do algate,  
 Beth not wyth-oute cause from the tabul absent ;  
 Hit is plesaunce vnto the gret astate 122  
 To se theyre saruaunt about them present ;  
 Haunteth no halkes, for then ye woll be schent.  
 Lette maner and Mesure be youre guydes twey,  
 So shall ye best please, I dare well sey. 126

## [19]

Rewarde all-way the loke and countenaunce  
 Of youre master, or of youre souereine,  
 Ther shall ye best preue what is plesaunce, 129  
 And what displesaunce ; this is the soth serteyne,  
 The chere discureth often tyme both twayne,  
 And eke the chere may some tyme you addresse  
 In thyng that langage may not þan expresse. 133

## [20]

And what ye here there, loke ye kepe hit secre,  
 Besy report of mystrust is cheff norice ;  
 Mekell langage may not all fautes be ; 136  
 Than doth, my childe, as teicheth you the wyse,  
 Whiche vnto you this wysdome dothe devise,  
 'Here and see, be still in euery prees,<sup>1</sup>  
 Passe forth youre way in silence and in pees.'

<sup>1</sup> MS. 'in euery place and in prees.' *Place* was to have been the last word ; and *in prees* was carelessly added, instead of striking out *place*.—Sk.

- 
- 120 ¶ As ye be comavnded, so do ye algate ; [Hill's Text.]  
 be not caveles fro the table absente ;  
 yt ys a grete pleasure to the high estate <sup>1</sup> [1 noble, lord.]  
 To se his *servaunttes* abowte hym presente.  
 124 havnte no halke, for then ye will be shente ;  
 lette manere & mesure be your gydes twayne ;  
 so shaft ye best please, I dare savely sayne.  
 ¶ Reward also thy loke & contenavnce,  
 128 Off your master or of your soverayne,  
 so shaft ye best preve what ys his plesavnce  
 or ellis his dysplesavnce : this ys sertayne,

## [18]

|  |     |                   |
|--|-----|-------------------|
| As ye be comandede / so do ye algate           |     | Don't absent      |
| Be not causeles / fro the table absent         |     | yourself from     |
| It is a grete plesure / to the hyghe estate    | 122 | table,            |
| To see his seruantis aboute hym present        |     |                   |
| Haunte, no halke / for thezne ye wil be shente |     | or stick yourself |
| Lete maner & mesure / be your gydes tweyne     |     | in a corner.      |
| So shal ye best plesse / I dar sauely seyne    | 126 | Let Manners and   |
|  |     | Moderation guide  |
|  |     | you.              |

## [19]

|   |     |                 |
|---|-----|-----------------|
| Rewarde also the loke ande contenance                     |     | [Leaf # a.]     |
| Of your maister / or of your souereyne                    |     | Look at your    |
| So shal ye best preue. what is his plesaunce              | 129 | master's face;  |
| Or els displesaunce / this is soth serteyne               |     | that'll show    |
| The chere discoverith / often bothe tweyne                |     | whether he's    |
| And eke þe chere / somtyme may you addresse               |     | pleased or not. |
| In thingis / þ <sup>t</sup> langage may not them expresse | 133 |                 |

## [20]

|   |     |                   |
|---|-----|-------------------|
| Ande that ye her loke / kepe alway secrete    |     | Keep secret all   |
| Besy reporte / of mischief is chief noryse    |     | you hear.         |
| Mykyl langage / may not al fawtles bee        | 136 |                   |
| Thenne do my childe / as techeth you the wyse |     |                   |
| Whiche vnto you / this lesson doth deuyse     |     |                   |
| Here and see / ande be styll in euery prees   |     | Hear, see, and go |
| Passse forth your way in seilence & in pees   | 140 | your way.         |

|     |   |                |
|-----|---|----------------|
| 132 | The chere discovereth oftyn both[e] twayn,<br>& eke the chere sumtyme may yow addresse<br>In thyngis the langage may not then expresse. | [Hill's Text.] |
|-----|---|----------------|

|     |   |                  |
|-----|---|------------------|
| ¶   | And <i>that</i> ye here, loke ye kepe alway seere ; | [m C lxj, back.] |
|     | besy reporte, of myschefe ys chefe noryse ;         |                  |
| 136 | Mykyl langage may not all fawtles be ;              |                  |
|     | Then do, my chylde, as techeth you <i>the</i> wyse  |                  |
|     | whiche vnto you <i>this</i> lesson doth deuyce :    |                  |
|     | here & see, & be styll in euery prees,              |                  |
| 140 | passse forthe your way in seilence & in pees.       |                  |

## [21]

And yit in Aventure ye, if the caase require,  
Ye most speke as hit may doo percase ;<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> MS. precase.

Seuen condicions obserue as ye shall hire, 143  
Avisé you well what ye sey and in what place,  
Of whom, and to whom, in youre mynde compace ;  
Howe ye shall speke, and whan, taketh good hede,  
This counseilleth the wyse man wyth-outen drede.

## [22]

Awayte, my childe, ye haue you manerly,  
Whan at youre mete ye sittyn at youre table ;

In euery pres, in euery company, 150  
Disposeth you to be so componable,  
That men may you reporte for comendable ;  
For tristeth well, vppon youre bering  
Men woll you blame or yeven you preysing. 154

## [23]

And printeth chiefly in youre memorie,  
For A principalle poynt of feire norture,

Ye depraeue no man absent especially ; 157  
Seint Austyn Amonishith wyth besy cure,  
Howe at the table men shull them assure,  
That there escapeth them no suche langage,  
As myght turne other folke to disparage. 161

¶ And yet in aduventure, yf the caas requyre,  
ye may speke, but ye must percaas

[Hill's Text.]

Seven<sup>1</sup> condycions observe, as ye may here :

144 Avyce ye well what ye say, & in what place,  
Off whom, & to whom, in your mynd compace ;  
how ye shaft speke, & whan, take good hede :  
this cow[n]syled the wyse man withowten  
drede.

[1 Six they are at  
p. 358, *Babees  
Book*, of the Wise  
Man.]

148 A-wayte, my chylde, ye behaue you manerly  
whan at your mete ye sytte at the table ;  
In euery prees & In euery company



## [21]

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| And yet in auenture / yf the caas require      |     |
| Ye may speke / but ye muste thenne percaas     |     |
| Seuen condicions obserue / as ye may now hyre  | 143 |
| Auyse you wel / what ye saye / & in what place |     |
| Of whom / & to whom in your mynde compace      |     |
| How ye shal speke / & whan take good hede      |     |
| This counceelith the wise man withoute drede   | 147 |

If you must  
speak,  
observe the seven  
conditions.

## [22]

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Awayte my chylde / ye be haue you manerly   |     |
| Whan at your mete / ye sitte at the table   |     |
| In euery prees and in euery company         | 150 |
| Dispose you to be so compenable             |     |
| That men may of you reporte for commendable |     |
| For trusteth wel / vpon your berynge        |     |
| Men wil you blame or gyue preysynge         | 154 |

[Leaf 4 b.]

When you're at  
meals,

be companionable

## [23]

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| And prynte ye trewly your memorie         |     |
| For a princypal point of fair noretur     |     |
| Ye deprau no man absent especyally        | 157 |
| Saynt austyn amonessheth with besy cure   |     |
| How men atte table / shold hem assure     |     |
| That there escape them / no suche langage |     |
| As myght other folke hurte to disparage   | 161 |

and don't run  
down absent men.  
St Austin

---

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| 152 | Dyspose you to be so cumpenable<br>that men may of you reporte for commendable;<br>ffor, trustyth well, vpon your beryng<br>Men will you blame or gyve praysynge. |
|-----|---|

[Hill's Text.]

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| ¶   | And prynte ye truly this in your memorye   |
| 156 | for a pryncypall poynt of fayer noretvre,<br>that ye deprave no man absente specyally.<br>Saynt Austyne amonessheth with besy cure,<br>howe men att table shulde them assure |
| 160 | that ther escape them no suche langage<br>As myght hurte or bryng folke to disparage.  |

## [24]

This curteise clarke writeth in ryght this wyse,  
 Rebukynge the vice of vile detraccioun ;  
 'What man hit be that of custome and guise 164  
 Hurteth wyth his tounge wyth foule corrosioun  
 The absent wight, for that abusioun  
 Suche detractoure [wayue]<sup>1</sup> from this table  
 As vn-worthe, not to be reprocheable. 168

1 A word lost.

## [25]

Whan ye sitten therfor at youre repaste,  
 Annoyethe no man present nor absent,  
 But speketh feyre, for and ye make waste 171  
 Off [large] langage, for soth ye most be schent ;  
 And wan ye speke, speketh wyth good entent  
 Of maters appendyng to myrth and plesaunce,  
 But nothyng that may causen men greunaunce. 175

## [26]

Eschewe also taches of foule rauenyng,  
 Of gredy lust the vncurteyce appetite ;  
 Pres not to sone to youre viaunde, restraine 178  
 Yourre handis a while wyth manerly respytte ;  
 Fedith for necessite, not for delite,  
 Demeneth you in mete and drink soo sobrelly,  
 That ye be not infecte wyth gloteny. 182

- ¶ This curteys clerke wryteth in *this* wyse, [Hill's Text.]  
 Rebukynge the vyce of vyle detraccion :  
 164 what may yt be *that* of custum & gvyse  
 hurteth *with* tonge or by fowle colusyon  
 The absente / weyne<sup>1</sup> ye for *that* abusyon [1 or weyue]  
 Suche a detractowre from the table  
 168 As vnworthy & also reprocheable.  
 ¶ Whan ye sytte *therfor* at your repast,  
 Annoye ye no man present nor absente,  
 but speke ye fewe ; for yff ye make wast  
 172 of large langage, for soth ye must be shent.

## [24]

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| This curtoys clerk / writeth in this wise |     |
| Rebukynge the vice / of vyle detraccion   |     |
| What man it be / that of custom & gnyse   | 164 |
| Hurteth with tunge / or by foule colusion |     |
| Thabsente / weyue ye for that abusioñ     |     |
| Suche a detractour / from the table       |     |
| As vnworthy / and also reprochable        | 168 |

rebukes the vice  
of detraction,and bids you turn  
all backbiters  
from the table

## [25]

|   |     |                         |
|---|-----|-------------------------|
| Whan ye sitte therfore at your repaste        |     | [Leaf 5 a.]             |
| Annoye ye noman presente nor absente          |     |                         |
| But speke ye fewe / for yf ye make waste      | 171 | Speak little,           |
| Of large langage / for sothe ye must be shent |     |                         |
| And whan ye speke / speke ye with good entent |     | and that<br>pleasantly. |
| Of maters acordynge vnto plesance             |     |                         |
| But nothing / that may cause men greuañce     | 175 |                         |

## [26]

|   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
| Eschewe also tacches of foule Raueyne                 |     | Don't be<br>ravenous,                                |
| Of gredy luste / with vncurteys appetyte <sup>1</sup> |     |  |
| Prece not to sone / fro your viand restreyne          | 178 | but keep your<br>hands from your<br>food for a time. |
| Your honde a while / with manerly respite             |     |  |
| Fede you for necessite / & not for delite             |     |  |
| Demene you with mete / & drynke so sobrelly           |     |  |
| That ye not ben enfecte with glotony                  | 182 |  |

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* appetyce.

---

& whan ye speke // speke with good Intent  
Off maters accordyng vnto plesavnce,  
but no thyng *that* may caverse men grevaunce.

[*Hill's Text.*]

- ¶ Eschewe also tacches of fowle ravayne,  
177 of gredy luste ; with vncurteys appetyte  
prece not to sone ; fro your vyande restrayne  
your hand a while with manerly respyte ;  
180 ffede you for necessity, & not for delyte.  
Demene you with mete & drynke so soberly  
That ye not be Infecte wyth glotony.

## [27]

**E**mbrewe not your vessel ne your cuppe <sup>1</sup> 1 Sto. Read "napery."  
 Ouer mesure and maner, but saue them clene ;  
 Ensoyle not your cuppe, but kepe hit clenely, 185  
 Lete no fatte ferthyng of your lippe be sen.  
 For that is foule ; wotte you what I mene ?  
 Or than ye drinke, for your owne honeste,  
 Your lippis wepe, and klenly loke they be. 189

## [28]

**B**lowe not in your drinke ne in your potage,  
 Ne farsith not your disshe to full of brede,  
 Ne bere not your knyf toward your vysage, 192  
 For there-in is parell and mekell drede.  
 Clawe not your face ne touche not your hede  
 Wyth your bare hande, sitting at the table,  
 For in norture that is reprouable. 196

## [29]

**L**owse not your gyrdyll syttyng at your table,<sup>2</sup> 2 Sic. Read "mete."  
 For that is a tache of vncurtesye,  
 But and ye seme ye be enbrasyde streite, 199  
 Or than ye sitte amende hit secrely,  
 So couertly that no wyght hit espie.  
 Be ware also no breth from you rebounde  
 Vppe ne downe, be ware that shamefull sounde.

¶ Enbrewe not your vessell ne your naprye [Hill's Text.]  
 184 over maner & mesure, but kepe them clene ; [M C lxij.]  
 Ensoyle not your cuppe, but kepe yt clenly,  
 lete no farsyone on your lyppis be sene,  
 ffor that ys fowle ; ye wott what I mene.  
 188 Or than ye drynke, for your own honeste  
 your lyppys wepe, & clenly loke they be.  
 ¶ Blowe not in your drynke ne in your pottage,  
 Ne ferce not your disshe to full of brede ;  
 192 bere not your knyf toward your vysage,  
 ffor theryn ys peryll & mykell drede ;

## [27]

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Enbreme not your vessel / ne your naprye      | Don't dirty your cloth or cup.   |
| Ouer maner & mesure / but kepe hem clene      |                                  |
| Ensoyle not your cuppe / but kepe it clenlye  | 185                              |
| Lete no fat farssine / on your lippes be sene |                                  |
| For that is fowle / ye wote what I mene       |                                  |
| Or than ye drynke / for your owen honeste     | Wipe your lips before you drink. |
| Your lippes wye / and clenly loke they be     | 189                              |

## [28]

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Blowe not in your drinke ne in your potage   | [Leaf 5 b.]                         |
| Ne farse not your dishe to ful of brede      | Don't blow on your food,            |
| Bere not your knyf / to warde your visage    | 192 or put your knife to your face, |
| For therin is parelle / and mykyl drede      |                                     |
| Clawe not your visage / touche not your hede | or scratch it or your head.         |
| With your bare honde / sitting atte table    |                                     |
| For in norture / suche thing is reprouable   | 196                                 |

## [29]

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Lose not your gyrdel / sitting at your mete | Don't undo your girdle at table;                   |
| For that is a tacche / of vncurtesye        |  |
| But yf ye seme / ye be embraced streite     | 199 if it's tight, let it out before you sit down. |
| Or then ye sytte / amende it secretly       |  |
| So couertly that no wight you espye         |  |
| Beware also / no breth fro you rebounde     | Don't break wind up or down.                       |
| Vp ne douñ / leste ye were shameful founde  | 203  |

---

|     |  |                |
|-----|--|----------------|
| 196 | Clawe not your visage, touche not your hede<br>with your bare honde syttyng at the table,<br>ffor in norture suche thyng's be reproveable. | [Hill's Text.] |
|-----|--|----------------|

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| ¶   | Lose not your gyrdyll syttyng at your mete,<br>ffor that is a tache of vncurtesye ;<br>but yff ye seme ye be embrased streyte,<br>or than ye sytte, amend yt secretly<br>So wysely that no wyght you aspye.<br>be ware also no breth fro you rebownd<br>Vp ne downe, lest ye were shamfull fownd. |
| 200 |   |

## [30]

Beth huste in chambre, cilent in the halle,  
 Herkenyth well, yeueth good audience ;  
 Yef vsher or marchall for eny romour calle, 206  
 Putting Ianglers to rebuke and cilenec,  
 Beth mylde of langage, demure of eloquence ;  
 Enforcith you to them confourmyde be,  
 That can most good and haue humanyte. 210

## [31]

Touche not wyth mete salt in the saler,  
 Lest folke Appoynt you of vncunynngnesse,  
 Dresse hit apparte vppon a clene tranchere ; 213  
 Force not youre mouth to fulle for wantannesse,  
 Lene not vppon the table, that is but rudesse,  
 And yf I shall to you so playnly say,  
 Ouer the table ye shull not spette convey 217

## [32]

Yif ye be seruid wyth metis delicate,  
 Departith wyth youre fellowys in gentyl wyse,  
 The clarke seith, ' nature is content and sariate 220  
 Wyth meane diete, and lytill shall suffice.'  
 Departyth therfore, as I to you devise ;  
 Engrosith not vnto youre silven all,  
 For gentilnesse will ay be lyberall. 224

¶ Be ye husht in chambre, scylente in hall ;  
 205 herkyn well, & geve good audyence  
 yff vsshare or marchall for any rymowre call ;  
 putt ye yanglers to rebuke for scilence.  
 208 Be ye myld of langage, demvure of eloquence ;  
 Enforce you vnto hym conformed to be  
 that can most good, & hathe humanyte.

[Hill's Text.]

¶ Towch not with your mete salte in the saler,  
 212 leest folke apoynte you of vncounynngnesse ;  
 Dresse yt aparte vpon a clene trenshere.  
 ffarste not your mouth to full for wantonnesse ;

## [30]

|  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Be ye husht in chambre / seylent in halle    | Be silent,                       |
| Herken wel ande gyue goode audience          |                                  |
| Yf vssher or marchal for ony Rumour calle    | 206                              |
| Put ye Ianglers to rebuke for silence        | and put chatters<br>to rebuke.   |
| Be ye mylde of langage / demure of eloquence |                                  |
| Enforce you vnto hym conformed to be         | Imitate him who<br>has humanity. |
| That can moste good / ande hath humanyte     | 210                              |

## [31]

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Touche not with your mete / salt in the saler | [Leaf 6 a.]<br>Don't dip your<br>meat in the<br>saltcellar, |
| Lest folk apoynte you of vnconnyngnesse       |   |
| Dresse it aparte / vpon a clene trencher      | 213   |
| Farse not your mouth to ful / for wantonesse  |   |
| Lene not vpon the table / for that rude is    | lean on the table,  |
| And yf I shal to you playnly saye             |   |
| Ouer the table / ye shal not spetel conueye   | 217 or spit over it.  |

## [32]

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Yef ye be serued / with metes delicate        | Share dainties<br>with your fellows: |
| Depart with your felowe / in gentil wise      |                                      |
| The clerke saith / nature is content & sciate | 220                                  |
| With mene diete / and litil shall suffyse     |                                      |
| Depart therefore / as I you deuyse            |                                      |
| Engrose not / vnto your self alle             |                                      |
| For gentilnes / wil aye be liberalle          | 224 gentleness is<br>liberal.        |

|     |   |                |
|-----|---|----------------|
| 216 | lene not on <i>the</i> table, for <i>that</i> ryde ys ; | [Hill's Text.] |
|     | & yff I shaft to you playnly saye,                      |                |
|     | over <i>the</i> table ye shaft not spetell conueye.     |                |

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| ¶   | Yff ye be <i>seruede with metis delycate,</i>   |
|     | Depart with <i>your</i> felawe in gentil wyse ;   |
| 220 | <i>the</i> clerke seyth, ' nature ys content & sacyate<br>with mene dyete, & lytill shaft suffice ; ' |
|     | Depart therfor, as I you deuyce,  |
|     | Engrose not vnto yowre selfe aft,   |
| 224 | fior gentylnesse wilt ay be lyberaft.   |

## [33]

And wan *perceace* youre seruice is not large,  
 Grucchith not wyth frownyng countenaunce,  
 Ne maketh not ther-of to mekell charge, 227  
 Disposeth you to goodly sufferaunce,  
 And what ye haue, take hit for suffisaunce ;  
 Holde you pleased wyth that god hath you sent,  
 He hath Inough<sup>1</sup> that can hold hym content. 231 <sup>1 MS. Inough.</sup>

## [34]

Burnysh no bonys wyth youre tethe, be ware,  
 That houndis tecche fayleth of curtesie ;  
 But wyth youre knyff make the bonys bare ; 234  
 Handell youre mete so well and so clenly,  
 That ye offenden not the company  
 Where ye be sette, as ferre-forth as ye can ;  
 Remembre well that maner maketh man. 238

## [35]

And whan your teeth shall cutte youre mete small,  
 Wyth open mouth be ware that ye not ete,  
 But loke youre lippis be closede as a wall, 241  
 Whan to &<sup>2</sup> fro ye trauers youre mete ; <sup>2 MS. a.</sup>  
 Kepe you so close that men haue no conceite  
 To seyn of you langage of vilonye,  
 Be cause ye ete youre mete vnma[n]rly. 245

- ¶ And whan *percaas* your *servyce* ys not large, [Hill's Text.]  
 Groge not *with* frownyng covntenavnce,  
 Ne make ther of not to mykyl charge ;  
 228 Dyspose you to goodly suffraunce,  
 & what ye haue, take yt in suffysavnce ;  
 be you plesid *with* suche as god hath you sent ;  
 he hath ynowgh þat can hold hym contente.  
 232 Burnysshe no bonys *with* your teth, be ware, [M C lxij back.]  
 Suche howndis tacches fallen of vncurtesye,  
 but *with* your knyfe make the bonys bare.  
 Handle your mete so well & so clenly



## [33]

|  |     |                    |
|--|-----|--------------------|
| And whan percaas your seruise is not large   |     | If your helping is |
| Gruccheth not / with frownyng contenaunce    |     | not large, don't   |
| Ne make therof / not to mykyl charge         | 227 | grumble,           |
| Dispose you to goodly suffraunce             |     |                    |
| And what ye haue / take it in suffysaunce    |     |                    |
| Be ye plesid with suche as god hath you sent |     | but be content.    |
| He hath ynough / that can holde hym content  | 231 |                    |

## [34]

|  |     |                  |
|--|-----|------------------|
| Burnysshe no bones / with your teth / beware |     | [Leaf 6 b.]      |
| Suche houndis tacches / falle of vncurtesye  |     | Don't burnish    |
| But with your knyf / make the bones bare     | 234 | bones with your  |
| Handle your mete / so wel and so clenly      |     | teeth.           |
| That ye offende not the company              |     | Handle your food |
| Where ye be sette / as ferforth as ye can    |     | cleanly,         |
| Remembryng wel / that manners make man       | 238 | for Manners make |
|  |     | Man.             |

## [35]

|   |     |               |
|---|-----|---------------|
| Ande whan that / ye ete your mete smalle      |     |               |
| With open mouth / beware ye not ete           |     | Eat with your |
| But loke your lippes / be closed as a walle   | 241 | lips closed   |
| Whan to ande fro / ye trauerse your mete      |     |               |
| Kepe you so cloos / that men haue no conseite |     |               |
| To say of you / ony langage or vilonye        |     |               |
| Bicause ye ete your mete / vnmanerly          | 245 |               |

|     |   |                |
|-----|---|----------------|
| 236 | That ye offende not the company           | [Hill's Text.] |
|     | wher ye be sette, as ferforthe as ye can, |                |
|     | Remembryng wel that maners make man.      |                |

|     |  |  |
|-----|--|--|
| ¶   | And whan <i>that</i> ye ete your mete small,       |  |
| 240 | with open mouth be ware ye not ete,                |  |
|     | but loke / your lypes be closed as a wall ;        |  |
|     | whan to & fro ye traverse your mete,               |  |
|     | kepe you so cloos <i>that</i> men haue no conceyte |  |
| 244 | To saye of you any langage or vylonye              |  |
|     | by cawse ye ete your mete so vnmanerly.            |  |

[36]

Be ware, my child, of laughing *ouer* mesure,  
 Ye shall not Also at the borde *youre* naylis pare,  
 Ne pike not *youre* teth wyth *youre* knyff, I you ensure,  
 Ete at *youre* messe, and odir folkes spare ; 249  
 A glottoun can but make dissches bare,  
 And of Inough he taketh *neuer* hede,  
 He fedith for lust more than <sup>1</sup> he doth for nede.

<sup>1</sup> MS. that.

[37]

And whan the borde is then [as] of *seruice*, 253  
 Not replenyshide wyth gret diuercite,  
 Of mete and drinke good chere may than suffice,  
 Hit is A signe of gret humanite, 256  
 Wyth gladsom chere than fulsom for to be ;  
 The poet seyth howe that the poure borde  
 Men may encrese wyth cherefull wille and worde.

[38]

And o thing, my childe, I warne you vndirstonde,  
 Specially for *youre* owne honeste,  
 In the water wasschith so clene *youre* hande, 262  
 That *youre* towell neuer ensoyled be  
 So foule that hit be lothely vnto se ;  
 Wasschith wyth watire till *youre* handis be clene,  
 And in *youre* clothe ther shall no spotte be sene.

¶ Beware, my chyld, of laughynge *ouer* mesure ; [Hil's Text.]  
 Ne at *the* borde ye shall no nayles pare,  
 248 Ne pyke *your* teth *with* knyff, I you ensure.  
 Ete at *your* messe, & othere *folk's* spare ;  
 A gloton *can* but make *the* bonys bare,  
 & of ynowgh he takyth *nevere* hede,  
 252 he ffedyth more for lust than for nede.

¶ And whan *the* borde ys thyn as of *serveyce*,  
 Nowght replenysshed *with* gret dyversite  
 of mete & drynke, gud chere may than suffice,  
 256 *with* honest talkyng ; & also owght ye

## [36]

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Beware my childe / of laughyng ouer mesure   |     |
| Ne at the borde / ye shall no naylis pare    |     |
| Ne pyke your teth / with knyf / I you ensure | 248 |
| Ete at your messe / and other folkes spare   |     |
| A gloton can but make the bones bare         |     |
| Ande of ynough / he taketh neuer hede        |     |
| He fedith more for lust / than for nede      | 252 |

Don't pare your  
nails at table, or  
pick your teeth  
with a knife.

## [37]

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| And whan þ <sup>e</sup> borde is thynne / as of seruyse |     |
| Nought repleneshed with grete diuersite                 |     |
| Of mete & drinke good chere may then suffise            | 255 |
| With honest talkyng / and also ought ye                 |     |
| With gladsom chere / thenne fulsom for to be            |     |
| The poete saith / hou that a poure borde                |     |
| Men may enriche / with cheerful wil & worde             | 259 |

[Leaf 7 a.]  
When there are  
not many dishes,

be satisfied with  
chatting cheerily.

## [38]

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| And one thyng my chylde / ye vnderstonde  |     |
| In especyalle / for your owne honeste     |     |
| In the water / wasshe so clene your honde | 262 |
| That your towel / neuer enfoyled be       |     |
| So fowle / that it be lothsom on to see   |     |
| Wasshe with water / your hondes so cleene |     |
| That in the towel shal no spotte be sene  | 266 |

Wash your hands  
clean in the water,  
so as to leave no  
dirt on your  
towel.

---

|     |   |                |
|-----|---|----------------|
|     | <i>with gladsum chere then fulsome for to be :</i>  | [Hill's Text.] |
|     | The poete seyth how <i>that</i> 'a powre borde      |                |
| 259 | Men may enryche <i>with</i> cherfull wylt & worde.' |                |

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| ¶   | And on thyng, my child, ye vnderstond,     |
|     | In especyall for your own honeste :        |
|     | In the water wasshe so clene your hond     |
|     | that your towelf never ensoyled be         |
| 264 | So fowle that yt be lothsome on to see ;   |
|     | wasshe with water your hondis so clene     |
|     | that in the towelf shaft no spote be sene. |

## [39]

**L**eue not youre sponc in youre dissche standyng,  
 Ne vpon the brede hit shall not lie ;  
 Lette youre trenchoure be clene for eny thyng,      269  
 Yif ye haue no chaunge, yit as honestly  
 As ye can, maketh avoydie,  
 So that no fragment from youre trenchoure falle ;  
 Do this, my childe, in chambre and in halle.      273

## [40]

**W**han Another speketh at the table,  
 Be ware ye interrupte <sup>1</sup> not is tale nor langage,      <sup>1</sup> MS. corruptly  
 For that is a thing discommendable,      has nattripte.      276  
 And hit is no signe of folkes sage  
 To ben of wordis besy and outrage ;  
 For the wyse man seyth plainly in sentence,  
 'He shall be wyse that yevith Audience.'      280

## [41]

**V**ndre-stondeth ther-fore or than ye speke,  
 Printyng in youre mynde clerely the sentence,  
 He that vseth A mannes tale to breke      283  
 Lettyth vncurtesly the Audience,  
 And hurtyth hym-sylf for lacke of silence ;  
 He may not yeue answere conveyent  
 That herith not fynally what is ment.      287

¶ lete not your sponc in youre disshe stond,  
 268 Ne vpon *the* table yt shuld not lye ;  
 lete your trenchowre be clene for any thyng,  
 & yf ye haue, change yet as honestly  
 As ye can ; make avoyde manerly  
 272 So *that* no fragment fro your trenchere fall :  
 Do thus, my child, in chambere & in hall.

[Hill's Text.]

¶ And whan a-nother man spekyth at *the* table,  
 be ware ye interrupte not his langage,  
 276 for *that* ys a thyng on-comendable,  
 & yt ys not no signe of folkis sage

## [39]

|   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
| Lete not your spone / in your disshe stonding |     | Don't leave your spoon in your dish or on the table. |
| Ne vpon the table / it shold not lye          |     |  |
| Lete your trenchour / be clene for any thing  | 269 | Keep your trencher clean.                            |
| And yf ye haue chañge / yet as honestly       |     |  |
| As ye can / make a voyde manerly              |     |  |
| So that no fragment / fro your trencher falle |     |  |
| Do thus my childe / in chambre & in halle     | 273 |  |

## [40]

|   |     |                                  |
|---|-----|----------------------------------|
| And whan another man / spekith atte table |     | [Leaf 7 b.]                      |
| Beware ye enterrupte not / his langage    |     | Don't interrupt man in his talk. |
| For that is a thinge discomendable        | 276 |                                  |
| Ande it is no signe of folkes sage        |     |                                  |
| To be of langage / besy ande outrage      |     |                                  |
| For the wyse man saide / in his sentence  |     |                                  |
| He sholde be wyse / that gyueth audience  | 280 |                                  |

## [41]

|   |     |                              |
|---|-----|------------------------------|
| Vnderstonde therfore or than ye speke       |     | Before you speak,            |
| Prynte in your mynde / clerly the sentence  |     | settle in your mind what you |
| Who that vsith / a mannes tale to breke     | 283 | have to say.                 |
| Letteth vncurteysly / alle the audyence     |     |                              |
| Ande hurteth hym self / for lack of science |     |                              |
| He may not gyue answeye conuenyente         |     |                              |
| That herith not fynally / what is mente     | 287 |                              |

|     |   |                                      |
|-----|---|--------------------------------------|
|     | To be of langage besy & owtrage ;                       | [Hill's Text.]                       |
|     | ffor the wyse sayd in his sentence                      |                                      |
| 280 | 'he shuld be hold [& be wyse]' <sup>1</sup> that gevyth | [1 In a later hand, above the line.] |
|     | audyence.'  |                                      |

|     |  |               |
|-----|--|---------------|
| ¶   | Vnderstond therfor or than ye speke ;      | [M C lxiiij.] |
|     | prynt in your mynde clerly the sentence ;  |               |
|     | who that vsyth a manys tale to breke,      |               |
| 284 | lettyth vncurteysly all the audyence       |               |
|     | And hurteth hym self for lake of scyence ; |               |
|     | he maye not geve answeye conuenyente       |               |
|     | that heryth not fynally what ys mente.     |               |

## [42]

Be ware Also, my childe, of rehersaille  
 Of materis whiche ben at the table mevide ;  
 Hit grevith ofte and dothe men disavaylle, 290  
 Full many a man that vice hath mysschevide,  
 Of evill thyng saide is wors often contrivide ;  
 Suche reportis alway loke ye esschewe,  
 As may of olde frendis make enemyes newe. 294

## [43]

A vise you well whan ye take youre disporte,  
 Honest games that ye haunte and vse,  
 And suche as ben of violente reporte, 297  
 I counsell you, my childe, that ye refuse ;  
 For trustith well ye shall nout you excuse  
 From berchely fest, yef I may you aspie  
 Playng at <sup>1</sup> eny game of rebaudie. 301 <sup>1</sup> MS. or.

## [44]

Itt is to A goodly childe well syttyng,  
 To vse disportis of myrth and plesaunce,  
 To harpe and lute, or lustely to syng, 304  
 And in the pres ryght manerly to daunce ;  
 When men se A childe of suche gouernaunce,  
 They seyn, ' gladde may this [childes] frendis be  
 To haue a sone soo manerly as he.' 308

¶ But beware, my child, also of rehersayle  
 289 Off maters whiche be at *the* table meved ;  
 It greweth <sup>1</sup> ofte, & doth men dysavayle ;  
 ffull many a man *that* vyce hathe myscheved ;  
 292 Off evyll thynke sayd, ys worse contryved ;  
 Suche reportes alwaye, my child, eschewe,  
 As may of olde frendis make enmyes newe.

[Hill's Text.]

[<sup>1</sup> The line is over  
the *th.*]

¶ Aveye you well whan ye take your dysporte,  
 296 honeste games *that* ye hawnt & vse ;  
 & suche as bene of vyleyns report,  
 I counsell you, my child, *that* ye refuse ;

## [42]

But beware my childe / also of rehersaylle  
 Of maters / whiche ben atte table meuide  
 It greuith ofte / ande doth men disauayle 290  
 Ful many a man / þ<sup>t</sup> vice hath myscheuide  
 Of euyl thinge saide / is werse contryuide  
 Suche reportis / alway my childe eschewe  
 As may of olde frendis / make enemyes newe 294

Don't repeat  
 what you hear at  
 table.

## [43]

Advise you wel whan ye take your disporte  
 Honest games / that ye haunte ande vse  
 And suche as ben of vylayns reporte 297  
 I counceyl you my chyld / that ye refuse  
 For truste ye wel / ye shal you not excuse  
 From brecheles feste / and I may you espye  
 Playnge at ony game of Rybawdrye 301

[Leaf 8 a.]  
 Play only at  
 proper games.

## [44]

It is to a godly chyld wel syttynge  
 To vse disportes of myrthe & plesaunce  
 To harpe or lute / or lustely to synge 304  
 Or in the prees right manerly to daunce  
 Whan men se a chyld of suche gouernance  
 They saye / glad may this chyldis frendis be  
 To haue a chyld / so manerly as is he 308

You should  
 harp, lute,  
 sing, or dance.

---

300      ffor truste ye welþ ye shaft you not excuse  
           ffrom brecheles feste, & I may you espye  
           Playenge at any game of rebawdrye.

[Hill's Text.]

¶ Ytt ys to a goodly child welþ syttyng  
 To vse dysportes of myrth & plesavnce,  
 304 to harpe, to lute, or lustyly to synge,  
       Or in the prees right manerly to davnce.  
       whan men se a child of suche governavnce,  
       thei saye, 'glade may this childis frendys be  
 308 To haue a child so manerly as ys he.'

## [45]

Exersice youre-selfe also in redyng  
 Of bokys enournede wyth eloquence ;  
 Ther shall ye fynde both plesaunce and lernyng, 311  
 And so ye may in euery good presence  
 Some [what] fynde and see as in sentence,  
 That shall accorde the tyme to ocupie,  
 That ye not nede to stondyn idelie. 315

## [46]

It<sup>1</sup> is fare to be comynycatyfe 1 MS. hit  
 In matires vnto purpoos accordyng,  
 So that a wight sume not excessyfe, 318  
 For trusteth well, hit is tedious thyng  
 For to here a childe multiplie talkyng,  
 Yif hit be not to the purpose applied,  
 And also wyth goodly termys aleyde. 322

## [47]

Redith Gower in his writyng moralle,  
 That auñcient faders memorie,  
 Redith his bokis clepide 'confessionalle,' 325  
 Wyth many anodir vertuous tretie,  
 Full of sentence sette so frutuously,  
 That them to rede shall yeue you corage,  
 So is he fulle of sentence and langage. 329

¶ Excersyse also your selfe in redyng [Hill's Text.]  
 Off bokes enorned with eloquence,  
 ther shaft ye fynde both plesyre & lernynge,  
 312 so that ye may in euery good presence  
 Some-what fynde as in sentence  
 that shaft accorde the tyme to occupye,  
 That ye not nede to stonde ydellye.

¶ It ys fayer to be comynycatyfe  
 317 In maters vnto purpose accordyng,  
 So that a wyghte seme exersyfe ;  
 for trustyth well yt ys a tedyovs thyng



## [45]

Excercise your self also in redynge  
 Of bookes enornede with eloquence  
 Ther shal ye fynde / bothe plesir & lernynge 311  
 So that ye may / in euery good presence  
 Somwhat fynde / as in sentence  
 That shal acorde / the tyme to occupy  
 That ye not nede / to stonden ydelly 315

Practise reading  
 of eloquent  
 books.

## [46]

It is fayr / for to be comynycatyf  
 In maters vnto purpose acordynge  
 So that a wyght seme excersyf 318  
 For trusteth wel / it is a tedyous thyng  
 For to here a chylde / multeplye talkyng  
 Yf it be not to the purpose applyede  
 Ande also with / goodly termys alyede 322

[Leaf 8 b.]  
 It is right to talk  
 pertinently,

but a bore if the  
 talk is irrelevant.

## [47]

Redeth gower in his wrytynge moralle  
 That auneyent<sup>1</sup> fader of memorye  
 Redeth his bookes / callede confessionalle 325  
 With many another vertuous trayttee  
 Ful of sentence / set ful fructuosly  
 That hym to rede / shal gyue you corage  
 He is so ful of fruyt. sentence and langage 329

Read Gower's  
 1 Orig. anueyent.  
 325 *Confessio*  
*Amentis,*

320 ffor to here a child multiply talkyng  
 yf yt be not to the purpose applyed,  
 & also with goodly termes alyed.

[Hull's Text.]

¶ Redyth gover in his wrytyng morallt,  
 324 That Auncyente flader of memorye,  
 Redyth his bookes called confessyonallt,  
 with many a-nothere vertuvs tretye  
 full of sentence sett full fructuously,  
 328 That hym to rede shaftt geve you covrage,  
 he ys so full of frute, sentence, & langage.

## [48]

O Fader and Founder of eternate eloquence,  
 That cluminede all this oure britaigne ;  
 To sone we lost his lauriate presence, 332  
 O lusty licoure of that fulsome fountaigne ;  
 Cursed deth, why hast thou this poete slayne,  
 I mene Fadir chaucers, mastir Galfride ?  
 Allas ! the while, that euer he from vs diede. 336

## [49]

Redith his bokys fulle of all plesaunce,  
 Clere in sentence, in longage excellent,  
 Brefly to wryte suche was his suffesaunce, 339  
 What-euer to sey he toke in his entent,  
 His longage was so feyre and pertinent,  
 That semed vnto mennys heryng,  
 Not<sup>1</sup> only the worde, but verrelly the thing. 343

1 MS. But.

## [50]

Redith, my child, redith his warkys all,  
 Refuseth non, they ben expedient ;  
 Sentence or langage, or both, fynde ye shall 346  
 Full delectable, for that fader ment  
 Of all his purpos and his hole entent  
 Howe to plese in euery audience,  
 And in oure toung was well of eloquence. 350

¶ O fader & fownder of ornate eloquence  
*that* Illumyned hast all owre bretayne !  
 332 To sone we loste thy lavreat science,  
 O lusty lyqvoivre of *that* fulsum fontayne !  
 O cursed deth ! why hast *thou that* poete slayne,  
 I mene fader chavucer, mayster galfryde ?  
 336 Alas *the while that* ever he from vs dyed !

[Hill's Text.]

[ff C lxiiij back.]

¶ Redyth his werkes full of plesavnce,  
 Clere in sentence, *In* langage excellent :  
 Bryeffly to wryte, such was his suffysavnce,  
 340 What-evere to say he toke *in* his entente,

## [48]

|   |  |
|---|--|
| O fader and founder of ornate eloquence                   | and the Father<br>and Founder of<br>Eloquence, |
| That enlunened hast alle our bretayne                     |  |
| To soone we loste / thy laureate seyence                  | 332 [Leaf 163, back.]                          |
| O lusty lyquour / of that fulsom fontayne                 |  |
| O cursid deth / why hast thou þ <sup>t</sup> poete slayne |  |
| I mene fader chaucer / maister galfryde                   | mayster Galfryde<br>Chawcer,                   |
| Alas the whyle / that euer he from vs dyde                | 336  |

## [49]

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Redith his werkis / ful of plesaunce         | [Leaf 9 a.]<br>whose works are<br>full of plesaunce, |
| Clere in sentence / in langage excellent     |  |
| Briefly to wryte / suche was his suffysaunce | 339  |
| What euer to saye / he toke in his entente   |  |
| His langage was so fayr and pertynente       | whose language                                       |
| It semeth vnto mannys heerynge               | seems not only<br>words, but truly                   |
| Not only the worde / but verely the thyng    | 343 things.  |

## [50]

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Redeth my chylde / redeth his bookes alle      | Read <i>all</i> his<br>books; refuse<br>none : |
| Refuseth none / they ben expedyente            |  |
| Sentence or langage / or bothe fynde ye shalle | 346  |
| Ful delectable / for that good fader mente     | he is delightful.                              |
| Of al his purpose / and his hole entente       |  |
| How to plesse in euery audyence                |  |
| And in our tunge / was welle of eloquence      | 350  |

|     |  |                |
|-----|--|----------------|
|     | his langage was so fayere & pertynente,<br>yt semeth vnto manys heryng | [Hill's Text.] |
| 343 | Not only the worde, but verely <i>the</i> thyng.                       |                |

|     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
|     | ¶ Redyth, my child, redyth his bookes aft,<br>Refusith Non, they ben expedyente ;<br>sentence or langage, both fynd ye shaft ;<br>ffull delectable that good fader mente, |  |
| 348 | for aft his purpose & his hole entente<br>[was] how to please in euery audyence,<br>& In owre tonge was well of Eloquence.  |  |

## [51]

Beholde Oelyff in his translacion,  
 In goodly langage and sentence passing wyse,  
 Yevyng the prince suche exortacion 353  
 As to his highnesse he coude best devyse.  
 Of trouth, peace, of mercy, and of Iustice,  
 And odir vertuys, sparing for no slouth  
 To don his devere, and quiten hym, as trouth 357

## [52]

Required hym, anenste his souereyne,  
 Most dradde and louyd, whos excellent highnesse  
 He aduertysede by his writing playne, 360  
 To vertue perteynyng to the nobles  
 Of a prince, and berith wyttensse  
 His treti entitlede 'of regyment,'  
 Compyled of most entier true entent. 364

## [53]

Loketh Also vppon dan Iohn lidgate,  
 My mastire, whilome clepid monke of bury,  
 Worthy to be renownede laureate, 367  
 I pray to gode, in blis his soule be mery,  
 Synging 'Rex Splendens,' the heuenly 'kery,'  
 Among the muses ix celestially,  
 Afore the hieghest Iubiter of all. 371

¶ Behold Oeklyf in his transslacion,<sup>1</sup>  
 352 In goodly langage & sentence passyng wyse  
 howe he gewyth his prince such exortacion  
 As to the hieste he could best devyse  
 Off trowth / pees / mercy / & Iustyse,  
 356 & vertu, lettyng for no slowth  
 To do his devoyre & qvyte hym his trowth.

[Hill's Text.]

[<sup>1</sup> transflacion]

¶ Requyre hym As Agaynst his soverayne,  
 moste Drade & loved, whose excellent hyenes  
 360 he advertysed by his wrytyng playne  
 To vertu apertheynyng to nobles

## [51]

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| Beholde Ocklyf in his translacion           | Read Occleuetoo, |
| In goodly langage / & sentence passyng wyse |                  |
| How he gyueth his prynce / suche exortacion | 353 who gave his |
| As to the hyst / he conde best deuyse       | Prince such wise |
| Of trouthe. pees. mercy. and Iustise        | advice           |
| And vertues / leetyng for no slouth         |                  |
| To do his deuoir & quite him of his trouthe | 357              |

## [52]

|  |   |
|--|---|
| * Requirede hym / as ayenst his souerayne  | [Leaf 9 b.]                                 |
| Most drade & louyde / was excellent hyeues |   |
| He aduertysede / by his wrytynge playne    | 360   |
| To vertu / apperteynyng to nobles          |   |
| Of a prynce / as bereth goode witnes       |   |
| His traytye / entitlede of regymente       | in his treatise                             |
| Compyled of entyer trewe entente           | 364 <i>De Regimine</i><br><i>Principum.</i> |

## [53]

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| Loke also / vpon dan Iohn lydgate            | John Lydgate,        |
| My maister whylome / monke of berye          | too, my master.      |
| Worthy to be renomed / as poete laureate     | 367                  |
| I praye to gode in blysse his soule be mercy | (I pray God his      |
| Syngynge Rex splendens that heuenly kyrye    | soul is singing      |
| Amonge the muses nyne celestyalle            | <i>Rex splendens</i> |
| Byfore the hyst Iubyter of alle              | 371                  |

|                                       |                |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|
| Off a prince, as beryth god wytnes,   | [Hill's Text.] |
| hys treatye entytled of regemente,    |                |
| 364 Compyled of entyer trewe entente. |                |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| ¶ Loke also than vpon Iohan lydgate,           |  |
| My mayrster, whylom monke of bury,             |  |
| worthy to be renomed As poetæ lavreate ;       |  |
| 368 I pray to god in blysse his sowle be mery, |  |
| Syngyng / Rex splendens / that heuenly Kyrye,  |  |
| Amonge the muses nyne celestyall               |  |
| be-fore the hyghest Iubyter of all,            |  |

## [54]

I not why deth my mastire dide envie,  
 But for he shulde chaunge his habite ;  
 Pety hit is that suche a man shulde die ! 374  
 But nowe I trist he be a carnylite ;  
 His amyse blacke is chaunged into white,  
 Among the muses ix celestiall,  
 Afore the hieghest Iubiter of all ; 378

## [55]

Passing the muses all of elicone,  
 Where is ynymparable of Armonye,  
 Thedir I trist my mastir-is soule is gone, 381  
 The sterrede palays aboue dappelde skye,  
 Ther to syng ' sanctus ' incessantly  
 Among the muses ix celestiall,  
 Affore the highest Iubiter of all. 385

## [56]

Redith is volumes that ben so large and wyde,  
 Souereynly sitte in sadnesse of sentence,  
 Elumynede wyth colouris fresshe on euery syde, 388  
 Hit passith my wytte, I haue no eloquence  
 To yeue hym lawde aftir his excellence,  
 For I dare say he lefte hym not on lyue,  
 That coude his cunnyng suffisantly discreue. 392

372

[Omitted. See Preface, p. ii.]

[Hill's Text.]

376

¶ Passyng the mvses nyne of elycon,  
 380 Wher ys no pareyft of Armonye ;  
 Thyder I trust my Maysters sowle be gon,  
 The sterred paleys above the dappled skye,

[54]

[Omitted. See Preface, p. ii.]

374

378

[55]

Passynge the muses nyne of Elycoñ

Where is non pareyl of armonye

Thider I truste my meistres soule begone

The steride paleys / aboute the dapplyd skye

There to synge sanctus incessantly

Amonge the muses ix celestyalle

Byfore the hyst / Iubiter of alle

381 in the starred  
palace above the  
dappled sky,  
before the385 highest  
Jupiter of all.)

[56]

Redeth his volumes / that ben large &amp; wyde

Seuerly set / in sadnes of sentence

Enlumyned with colours fressh on euery side

Me lacketh witte / I haue none eloquence

To gyue hym lawde / after his excellence

For I dar saye / he lefte hym not a lyue

That coude his connyng / sufficiently discriue

[Leaf 10 a.]  
Read his large  
volumes388 illuminated with  
fresh colours.

392

384 Ther to syng sanctus incessantly  
Emonge the myses nyne celestyall,  
Before *the* hyste Iubyter of all.

*Hill's Text.]*

¶ Redyth hys volumes *that* be large & wyde,  
Seuerly sette in sadnes of sentence,  
388 Enlumined with colovres fresshe on euery side.  
Me lakketh wytt, I haue non eloquence,  
To geve hym lawde after his excellence,  
ffor I dare saye he lefte hym not alyve  
392 That coude his cunying ssufficiently discryve.

[M C lxiii.]

## [57]

But his werkys his laude moste nede conquere,  
 He may neuer oute of remembrance die,  
 His werkys shall his [name<sup>1</sup>] conuey and bere 395 <sup>MS. here repeats  
werkys.</sup>  
 Aboute the world all-most eternallie ;  
 Lette his owne werkys prayse hym and magnifie ;  
 I dare not preyse, for fere that I offende,  
 My lewde langage shuld rather appeyre than amend.

## [58]

Loo, my childe, thes good faders Auneient  
 Repide the feldis fresshe of fulsumnesse,  
 The floures feyre they gadderid vp and hent, 402  
 Of siluereus langage the tresoure and richesse ;  
 Who wolde hit haue, my litle childe, doutelesse  
 Must of hem begge, ther is no more to say,  
 For of oure tounge they were bothe locke and key.

## [59]

There can no man there fames nowe disteyne,  
 Thanbawmede tounge and aureate sentence,  
 Men gette hit nowe by cantelmele, and gleyne 409  
 Here and there wyth besy diligence,  
 And fayne wolde riche the crafte of eloquence ;  
 But be the glaynes is hit often sene,  
 In whois feldis they glayned haue and bene. 413

¶ But his werkes his lavde must nede conquere ; [Hill's Text.]  
*thei* may never owt of remembravnce dye ;  
 hys werkes shaft his name conveye & bere  
 396 Abowte *the* world almoste eternelly.  
 lete his owne *werkis* prayse hym, & magnifye ;  
 I dare not prayse, leest for fere I offende ;  
 My langage shuld rathere apayere than amend.

¶ Loo, my child, this faders avneyente  
 401 Repen *the* fylde fresshe of fulsomnes ;  
*the* flowres fresshe thei gadered vp, & hente.  
 Off syluer langage *the* greate ryches



## [57]

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| But his werkis / his laude / must nede <i>conquere</i> | His works          |
| They may neuer / out of remembraunce dye               |                    |
| His werkis shal his name conueye & bere                | 395 shall bear his |
| Aboute the worlde / almost eternely                    | name about the     |
| Lete his owen werkis preyse hym & magnefie             | world almost       |
| I dar not preyse / for fere lest I offende             | eternally.         |
| My langage / shold rather apeyre than amende           | 399                |

## [58]

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| Loo my childe / these faders auneyente       | [Leaf 10 b.]       |
| Repen the feldes fresshe of fulsomnes        | These ancient      |
| The flours fresh they gadred vp & hente      | fathers reaped the |
| Of siluer langage / the grete riches         | 402 fields,        |
| Who wil it haue my lityl childe doutles      | and gathered the   |
| Muste of hem begge / ther is no more to saye | flowers.           |
| For of our tunge / they were both lok & kaye | 406 He who wants   |
|  | silver words       |
|  | must beg of them.  |

## [59]

|   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| Ther can nomañ now her werkis disteyne        |                      |
| The enbamed tunge / and aureate sentence      |                      |
| Men gete it now / by cantelmele & gleyne      | 409 Now we only      |
| Here and there by besy diligence              | glean,               |
| And fayne wold reche / her craft of eloquence |                      |
| And by the gleyne / it is ful oft sene        | and by the           |
| In whos felde / the gleyners haue bene        | 413 gleanng one sees |
|   | in whose fields the  |
|   | gleaners have        |
|   | been.                |

---

404 who wil yt haue, my child, dowlles [Hill's Text.]  
 Muste of them bege: there ys no more to saye,  
 ffor of owre tonge *thei* were both loke & keye ;

¶ Ther can no man *ther* werkes dysteyne :  
 408 The enbamed tonge & avreat sentence,  
 Men gete yt now by cantelmele, & glene  
 here & there by besy delygence,  
 & fayne wold reche *ther* crafte of eloquence ;  
 412 & by *the* gleyne ytt ys full ofte sene  
 In whose fylde the gleners haue bene.

## [60]

As vnto me Age hath bede good morowe,  
 I am not able clerly for to gleyne,  
 Nature is feyne of crafte here eien to borowe, 416  
 Me fayleth clerenesse of myn eien tweyne ;  
 Begge I may, I can no gleyne certeyn,  
 Ther-for that werke I wolle playnly remytte  
 To folke yong, more persaunt clere of wytte. 420

## [61]

And syke also, and in case ye fynde  
 Suche gleyne fresch as hath some apparence  
 Of fayre langage, yet take them and vnbynde, 423  
 And preueth what they beth in existence,  
 Coloured in langage, savory in sentence,  
 And dou[te]th not, my childe, wythoute drede,  
 Hit woll profite such thyng to se and rede. 427

## [62]

Yit eft-sonnys, my childe, let vs resorte  
 To the intente of oure fyrst matiere  
 Digresside, somewhat fulle we wolld reporte, 430  
 And reuyue the lawde of them that were  
 Founders of oure langage, thilke fadyrs dere,  
 Who-is soulis god [aboue] in b[li]esse inhaunce  
 That lusten so oure langage to Avaunce. 434

¶ And vnto my age bot good morowe  
 I am not able clerly for to gleyne,  
 416 Nature ys fayne of crafte her eyen to borow ;  
 Me lakketh clernes of myne eyen twayne ;  
 Begge I may / gleyne I may not certeyne ;  
 therfore that werke I wilt playnly remytte  
 420 To folkis yong, more passyng clere of wyte.

[Hull's Text.]

¶ Seche ye therfore, & in caas ye fynde  
 suche glenars fresshe as haue sum apparens  
 Off fayer langage, yet take them, & vnbynde,  
 424 & preve ye what thei be in existence

## [60]

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| And vnto me / age hath bode good morowe                |                             |
| I am not able clenly / for to gleyne                   | I cannot glean,             |
| Nature is fayn of craft / her eyen to borowe           | 416                         |
| Me lacketh clerenes / of myn eyen tweyne               |                             |
| Begge I maye / gleyne I can not certeyne               | I can only beg:             |
| Therefore þ <sup>t</sup> werck / I wil playnly remytte | gleaning I give             |
| To folkis yong / more passyng clere of witte           | 420 up to younger<br>folks. |

## [61]

|   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| Seche ye therfore / and in caas ye fynde                    | If you find such              |
| Such gleynors fressh as haue soñ appareñce                  | gleaners,                     |
| Of fayr langage / yet take hem & vnbynde                    | 423 unbind their<br>sheaves : |
| And preue ye / what they be in existence                    |                               |
| Colourd in langage / sauerly in sentence                    | their fair speech             |
| And doubte not my childe / withoute drede                   |                               |
| It wil prouffite to see suche thingis & red[e] <sup>1</sup> | 427 will profit you.          |

## [62]

|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| Yet eft sones my childe / lete vs resorte   | [Leaf 11 a.]      |
| To thentente of yur first matere            | But let us return |
| Degressed somewhat / for we wold reporte    | to our first      |
| And reuine the laude of hem that were       | subject.          |
| Famous in our langage / these faders dere   | 430               |
| Whos sowles in blysse / god eternal auauñce |                   |
| That lysten so our langage to enhaunce      | 434               |

<sup>1</sup> A hole in the paper.

---

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| Colovred in langage, saverly in sentence,     | [Hill's Text.] |
| & dowte not, my child, with-owt drede         |                |
| 427 yt wil profet to se such thyngis, & rede. |                |

|  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| ¶ Ye, efte-soones, my child, let vs resorte            |                 |
| To the yntent of your fyrst matere                     |                 |
| Degressed somewhat, for we wolde reporte               |                 |
| & revyue the lawde of them that were                   |                 |
| 432 famovs in owre langage, thise faders dere          |                 |
| whos <sup>1</sup> sowles in blis, god eternal avaunce, | 1 The s is by a |
| that lysten sone owre langage to enhavnce !            | later hand.     |

[63]

**T**han, litle childe, I councele you that ye  
 Take hede vnto the norture that men vse,  
 Newe founden or Auncient whet[h]er lit be, 437  
 So shall no man youre curteyse refuse ;  
 The guise and custome shall you, my childe, excuse ;  
 Mennys werkys haue often entirchaunge,  
 That nowe is norture, sumtyme had ben full straunge.

[64]

**T**hinges whilome vside ben layde aside,  
 And new fetis dayly ben contryvyde,  
 Men[nys actes] can in no plight abyde, 444  
 They ben chaungeable and oft mevide,  
 Thing some-tyme alowide is nowe reprevide,  
 And aftir this shall thingis vppe aryse,  
 That men sette nowe but [at] litle a prise. 448

[65]

**T**hus mene I, my childe, that ye shall vse and haunte  
 The guise of them that don most manerly,  
 But be ware of vnthrefte ruskyn galaunte, 451  
 Counterfetoure vncunnyng of curtesie,  
 His tecches ben infecte wyth vilonye,  
 Vngerde, vnblesside, seruyng at the table,  
 Me semeth hym *seruaunt* full pendable. 455

¶ Then litiſt Iohn, I consayle you *that* ye  
 436 Take hede to *the* nortvres *that* men vse,  
 newe fownd or avncyent, *whether* yt be ;  
 So shaft no man *your* curtesye refuse ;  
*the* gyse & *custum*, my child, shaft you excuse.  
 440 Menys werkes haue oftyn enterchavnce ;  
*that* nowys norture, *somtyme* hath be stravnge ;

[Hill's Text.]

[fol C lxiiiij back.]

¶ Thyngis whylom vsed be now layd a-syde,  
 & newe fetes dayly be contryved :  
 444 Menys actes *can* in no plyte abyde,  
 They be chavngable & ofte meved ;

## [63]

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| Thenne lityl Ioĥn / I counceyl you that ye        | Little Jack,     |
| Take hede to the norture / that men vse           | take heed to the |
| Newe founde / or auneynt whether it be            | manners of your  |
| 437 So shal no man / your curtoisye refuse        | time,            |
| The guyse & custom / my child shal you excuse     |                  |
| Mennys werkis / haue often enterchañge            | for customs      |
| 441 That nowe is norture / somtyme had be strañge | change,          |

## [64]

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| Thingis whilom vsed / ben now leyd a syde |                |
| And newe feetis / dayly ben contreuide    | new ways are   |
| Mennys actes / can in no plyte abyde      | invented every |
| 444 They be changeable ande ofte meuide   | day,           |
| Thingis somtyme alowed / is now repreuid  |                |
| And after this / shal thinges vp aryse    | and will be    |
| That men set now / but at lytyl pryse     | hereafter.     |
| 448                                       |                |

## [65]

|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| This mene I my childe / þ <sup>t</sup> ye shal haunte | [Leaf 11 b.]      |
| The guyse of them / that do most manerly              | Imitate the well- |
| But beware of vnthryft Ruskyn galañte                 | mannered, and     |
| 451 Counterfeter of vnconnyng curtoisye               | beware of ruskyn  |
| His tacchis ben enfecte with vilonye                  | gallants          |
| Vngyrte. vnblyssed. seruyng atte table                | of bad habits,    |
| Me semeth hym a seruauñt nothing able                 | serving ungirt,   |
| 455   |                   |

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| thynges sumtyme alowed be now repreved ;    | [Hill's Text.] |
| & after this shaſt thynges vp a-ryse        |                |
| 448 that men sett now but at lytill pryse : |                |

¶ This mene I, my child, *that* ye shaſt havnte  
*the* gyse of *them that* do most manerly ;  
 452 but be ware of onthryft <sup>1</sup> ruskyn gallavnte,  
 Conterfetter <sup>2</sup> of vnconnyng curtessy,  
 hys taches ben enfecte *with* vylonye ;  
 Vngerte / vnblessed / *servyng* at table,  
 Me semeth *hym* a *servavnte* no thyng able ;

<sup>1</sup> A later hand has added *y*.  
<sup>2</sup> The *r* is by a later hand.

[66]

Wynter ne somer to his souerayne  
 Chappron hardy no bonet lust avale,  
 For euery worde yeuyng his maister tweyne, 458  
 Vaunparlere in euery mannes tale,  
 Absolon wyth the disculede heres smalle ;  
 Lyke to A presener of seint Malouse,  
 A sonny bush myght cause hym to goo louse. 462

[67]

O I passe norture ! fy ! fy ! for schame !  
 I shuld haue seide he myght go hauke and hunt,  
 For that schuld be A gentilmannys game, 465  
 To suche disportis thes gentis folkys be wounte ;  
 I seide to ferre, my langage was to blounte,  
 But of this galaunte, loo ! loke a while & fele,  
 He feccheth his compace whan he shall bowe or knele,

[68]

Braced so straytly th[at h]e <sup>1</sup> may not plie, <sup>1</sup> MS. the.  
 But gaderith hit in by maner of wyndlese,  
 And ȝif he wrenche aside or lytil wrye, 472  
 His gere stonte all in pertous <sup>2</sup> case, <sup>2</sup> Read perious ?  
 The scho, the hose, the point, doublet, and lace ;  
 And if ought breke, somme thinges <sup>3</sup> that ben badde <sup>3</sup> Read tounes.  
 Shall sey anon, ‘ a knaue hath broke a ladde.’ 476

¶ Wynter & somer to his soverayne [Hill's Text.]  
 457 Capron hardy, no bonet lyst to avayle,  
 For euery worde geveyng his mayster twayne,  
 avantparler In euery manys tale,  
 460 Absolon with disheveld heres smale,  
 lyke to a prysoner of saynt malowes,  
 A sonny busshe able to the galowes.

¶ O ! I passe nortvre ! fy, fy, for sham !  
 464 I myght haue said he shuld go havke & honte,  
 ffor that shuld be a gentylman[i]s game,  
 To suche dysportis gentilt folkis be wonte ;

## [66]

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Wynter and somer to his souereyne          |     |
| Capron hardy / no bonet lyste to auale     |     |
| For euery word / gyuing his maister tweyne | 458 |
| Auauntparler / in euery mannys tale        |     |
| Absolon with disheueled heeris smale       |     |
| Lyke to a prysoner of seynt malowis        |     |
| A sonny busshe / able to go to the galowis | 462 |

not doffing his  
cap to his master,

forward in speech,  
rough-haired,

and lousy-headed,

## [67]

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| O I passe norture fy fy for shame              |     |
| I myght haue said he shold go hauke & honte    |     |
| For that shold be a gentilmans game            | 465 |
| To such disportes / gentil folkes be wonte     |     |
| I sayd to ferre / my langage was to blonte     |     |
| But yet sir galante whan ye shal bowe or knele |     |
| He goth by compace round as doth a whele       | 469 |

(though it's  
hardly good man-  
ners to say so.)

When he tries to  
kneel, he works  
round like a  
wheel,

## [68]

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Braced so strayt / that he may not plye         |     |
| But gaderith it / by maner of a wyndelas        |     |
| And he ought wrenche a syde / or a litil wrie   | 472 |
| His geer stondesth thenne / in ful parlous caas |     |
| His sho / his hose / doblet / point & laas      |     |
| And yf ought breke / somme tinges þt be bade    |     |
| Wil mocke & saie / a knaue hath broke a lad     | 476 |

[Leaf 12 a.]  
being braced so  
tight that he  
can't bend.  
If he twists, a  
lace is like to  
crack.

---

|     |   |                |
|-----|---|----------------|
| 468 | I sayd to ferre, my langage was but blonte ;<br>but yet, sir gallavnt, whan ye shaft bowe or<br>knele<br>he goth by compasse rovnd as doth a whele. | [Hill's Text.] |
|-----|---|----------------|

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| ¶   | Braced so streyte þat he may not plye,<br>but gaderyth yt by manere of a wyndlas ;   |
| 472 | & he awght wrench a-side, or a litil wrye,<br>hys gere stondyth them in full parlovs caas,<br>hys sho // his hose / doblet, poynt & laas ;<br>& yff owght breke, sum tonges that be bade |
| 476 | wilf moke & say, "A knave hath broke a<br>lade."   |

## [69]

**L**at galaunte go, I mene, recheles ruskyn ;  
 Take hede, my childe, to suche as ben cunnyng,  
 So shall ye wyrship best conquere and wyne, 479  
 Enforsith you in all youre demenyng  
 To sewe vertu, and<sup>1</sup> from foly declynyng ;  
 And, my childe, that ye loue of honeste,  
 Which is accordyng wyth humanyte. 483

<sup>1</sup> Omit and.

## [70]

**T**hat is, to you to vndirstond And knowe,  
 That youre aray be manerly and resonable,  
 Not appeisssh knawen<sup>2</sup> and to mowe, 486  
 I[n] nyse aray that is not couenable,  
 Fetis founde be folkys vnprofitable,  
 That maketh this worlde so pleylnly transformate,  
 That men semen almost effeminate. 490

<sup>2</sup> Sic.

## [71]

**P**ley not Iakke mAlaperte, that is to sey,  
 Be ware of presumpcioun, be ware of pride,  
 Take not the fyrst place, my childe, be no way, 493  
 Till odir be sette manerly abyde,  
 Presomcion is often sette asyde,  
 And Avalith f[r]om his highe<sup>3</sup> de-gre,  
 And he sette vppe that hath humanite. 497

<sup>3</sup> MS. hight.

¶ Lete gallant go ! I mene, recheles ruskyn :  
 Take hede my child to suche as be cunnyng,  
 so shaft ye best worship conquere & wyne ;  
 480 Enforce you in all your demenyng  
 To folowe vertu, & fro foly declynnyng ;  
 & weyte well that ye love honeste  
 which ys accordyng vnto humanyte.

[Hill's Text.]

¶ That ys for you to vnderstond & knowe,  
 485 that your araye be manerly resonable,  
 Not apysshe vnto moke ne to mowe ;  
 To nyce araye that ys not commendable.

[thū 1503 per  
 Richard hill ¶ ff  
 C lxx]



## [69]

|   |     |                            |
|---|-----|----------------------------|
| Lete galante go / I mene recheles ruskyn      |     | Let Reckless<br>Ruskyn go! |
| Take hede my chyld to suche as be connyng     |     | You follow                 |
| So shal ye best worship conquere & wyne       | 479 | skilful men,               |
| Enforce you in al your demenyng               |     |                            |
| To folowe vertu / & fro folye declynyng       |     | virtue and                 |
| And waite wel that ye loue honeste            |     | honesty.                   |
| Whiche is acordyng <sup>1</sup> vnto humanyte | 483 |                            |

## [70]

|  |     |               |
|--|-----|---------------|
| That is for you / to vnderstonde & knowe                 |     | [Leaf 12 b.]  |
| That your araye / be manerly resonable                   |     | Don't dress   |
| Not apysshe / on to mocken ne to mowe                    | 486 | apishly       |
| To nyce araye / that is not commendable                  |     | or foppishly. |
| Fetis newe founden <sup>2</sup> by foolis vnprouffitable |     |               |
| That make þe world so plainly transformate               |     |               |
| That men semen almoste enfemynate                        | 490 |               |

## [71]

|  |     |                                    |
|--|-----|------------------------------------|
| Playe not Iack malapert / that is to saye            |     | Don't play Jack<br>Malapert,       |
| Beware of presumpcion / beware of pryde <sup>3</sup> |     | that is, don't be<br>presumptuous. |
| Take not þe first place my child by the waye         | 493 |                                    |
| Tyl other be sette / right manerly abyde             |     | Wait till others<br>are seated.    |
| Presumptuous ben often set a syde.                   |     |                                    |
| Ande alleday aualyde / as men may see                |     |                                    |
| And he is sette vp / that hath humylyte              | 497 |                                    |

<sup>1</sup> Orig. acerdynge.<sup>2</sup> Orig. fonuden.<sup>3</sup> Orig. pryte.

---

|     |  |                |
|-----|--|----------------|
| 488 | ffetys, newe fonden by foolis vnprofytable,<br>that make the worlde so playnly transformate<br>that men semen Almost enfemynate. | [Hill's Text.] |
|-----|--|----------------|

|     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
| ¶   | Playe not Iacke maleperte, that ys to say,  |  |
| 492 | be ware of presumpcion, be ware of pryde ;<br>take not the first place, my child, by the waye ; |  |
| -   | tillt oder be sette, ryght manerly a-byde,<br>presumtvous be ofte sette a-syde                  |  |
| 496 | & all day aualed, as men may see,<br>& he ys sette vp that hath humylyte.                       |  |

## [72]

To <sup>1</sup> *cunnyng* persones regarde ye take,  
 Where ye be sette in right atentif wyse,  
 Connyng folke *cunnyng* folke shulde make, 500  
 To theire goodnesse ye shalle make your *summise*,  
 And as thei do, ye mosten deuysen;  
 For this, my childe, is as the gospell treue,  
 Whoo wolle be *cunnyng* muste the *cunnyng* sewe.

<sup>1</sup> MS. The.

## [73]

And o thing I charge you special[ie],  
 To womanhode good kepe you take alway,  
 And them to serue loke that ye haue an eie, 507  
 Ther comaundementis, my childe, loke ye obey,  
 Plesant wordis to them I warne you saye,  
 And in all wyse do your dilligence,  
 To do them plesure, honoure, and reuerence. 511

## [74]

As at this tyme this tretice shall suffice,  
 Disposeth you to kepe in your mynde  
 The doctrines whiche for you I deuysen, 514  
 And douteth not, fulle welle ye shall hit fynde;  
 To your honoure enrolle hit vp and bynde  
 Ryght in your brest, and in your ryper age  
 I shall wryten you here-of the surplusage. 518

¶ To *connyng* persones regarde ye take,  
 wher ye be sette, right in ententyf wyse;  
 500 *Connyng* folke *connyng* men shaft make;  
 to *ther* *connyng* ye shaft make your surmyse,  
 & as *thei* do, ye must your selfe deuysen;  
 ffor this, my child, ys as *the* gospell trewe,  
 504 'who wiff be *connyng*, he must *connyng* sewe.'

[Hill's Text.]

¶ And on thyng I warne you speccially:  
 to womanhede take awe alway,  
 & them to *serve* loke ye haue an eie,  
 508 & *ther* *comavndmentis* that ye obeye;

## [72]

|  |                         |     |
|--|-------------------------|-----|
| To connynde person's regarde ye take                     | Watch knowing folk, and |     |
| Where ye be sette / right in ententyf wyse               |                         |     |
| Connyng folk / connyng men shal make                     |                         | 500 |
| To their connyng ye shal make your surmise               | their skill.            |     |
| And as they do / ye muste your self deuyse               |                         |     |
| For this my childe / is as the gospel trewe              |                         |     |
| Who wil be connyng / he must þ <sup>e</sup> connyng sewe |                         | 504 |

## [73]

|   |                                |     |
|---|--------------------------------|-----|
| And one thing / I warne you specyally   | Specially attend to women, and |     |
| To womanhede / take awe alweye          |                                |     |
| And them to serue / loke ye haue an eye |                                | 507 |
| And theire commandementis that ye obeye |                                |     |
| Plesant wordes I auyse you to them seye | speak pleasant words to them.  |     |
| And in alle wyse / do ye your diligence |                                |     |
| To do them plesure / and reuerence      |                                | 511 |

## [74]

|  |  |     |
|--|--|-----|
| And at this tyme this tretye shal suffice    | This is enough for the present.                |     |
| Dispose you / to kepe it in your mynde       | Mind you attend to it,                         |     |
| The doctrine whiche for you I deuyse         |  | 514 |
| And doubteth not / ful wel ye shal it finde  |  |     |
| To your honour / enrolle it vp and bynde     |  |     |
| Right in your breste / and at your riper age | and when you're older I'll write you the rest. |     |
| I shal wryte to you / herof the surplusage   |  | 518 |

|     |   |                |
|-----|---|----------------|
|     | Plesaunt wordis I avyse you to them saye, | {Hill's Text.} |
|     | & in all wyse do ye your delygence        |                |
| 511 | To do them plesyre and reverence.         |                |

|     |   |
|-----|---|
|     | ¶ And at this tyme <i>this</i> treatise shaft suffice ; |
|     | Do pose you to kepe it in your mynde,                   |
|     | <i>the</i> doctryne which for you I devyse ;            |
|     | & dowlth not, full well ye shaft yt fynde               |
| 516 | To your honowre ; enrolle yt vp & bynde                 |
|     | Right in your brest, & at your ryper age                |
|     | I shaft write you here-of the surplusage.               |

## [75]

Goo, litle childe, and who doth you Appose,  
 Seying, youre quaire kepeth non accordaunce,  
 Tell [hym], as yite neyther of ryme ne prose 521  
 Ye be experte ; pray hym of sufferaunce ;  
 Childer must be of childly gouernaunce,  
 And they must also entredet <sup>1</sup> be 1 Read entreted.  
 Wyth esy thyng, [and not] of subtilte. 525

## [76]

Your lytil quaier summitteth enery where  
 To coreccion and beneuolence,  
 But where enuie is, loke hit come not there, 528  
 For eny thing kepith youre trefte thense ;  
 Enuie is full of frowarde reprehense,  
 And howe to hurte liethe euere in awayte,  
 Kepeth youre quaiere, that hit be not her baite.

EXPLICIT.

DOMINE, SALUUM FAC REGEM.

¶ Go, litiff Iohn, & who doth you oppose, [Hill's Text.]  
 520 sayenge your quaire, kepeth non accordaunce ;  
 Tell hym as yet neythere in ryme ne prose  
 ye ben experte ; pray hym of suffraunce.  
 Chyldren <sup>1</sup> muste be of childly gouernavnce, 1 MS. Clyldren.  
 524 & also thei muste entredet be  
 With easy thyng, & not with subtilte.

## [75]

Go lytyl Iohn / and who doth you appose  
 Sayng your quayer / kepe non accordance  
 Telle hym as yet / neyther in ryme ne prose  
 Ye ben expert / praye hym of suffraunce  
 Chyldren muste be / of chyldly gouernaunce  
 And also they muste entretyde be  
 With esy thing / and not with subtylte

Whoever  
 questions you,  
 521 say you are not  
 yet up in rime or  
 prose.

525

## [76]

Go lytil quayer / submytte you euery where  
 Vnder correccion of benyuolence  
 And where enuye is / loke ye come not there  
 For any thinge / kepe your tretye thens  
 Enuye is ful of froward reprehens  
 And how to hurte / lyeth euer in a wayte  
 Kepe your quayer / that it be not ther bayte

Little book,  
 I submit you to  
 correction :

528

but go not where  
 envy is.

532

Explicit the book of curtesye.

- 
- ¶ Go, lytill quayer, submyte you euery where  
 vnder correccion of beneuolence ;  
 528 & wher envy ys, loke you cum not there,  
 ffor any thyng kepe your treatye thens ;  
 Envye ys full of froward reprehens,  
 & how to hurte lyeth ever in a-wayte ;  
 532 kepe your quayre that yt be not ther bayte.

[Hill's Text.]

Here endyth A lytyll treatyse  
 called the boke of curtesy or litill Iohan.

# INDEX.

H. stands for Hill's MS. at the bottom of the pages, O. for the Oriel MS. on the even pages. Cot. is for Cotgrave's Dictionary.

- Absolom with dissheveled hair, l. 460.
- Amyse, l. 376, amice. Fr. *amict*, an Amict or Amice, part of a massing priest's habit. Cot. From L. *amicire*, to throw round; *am* and *jacere*. Mahn.
- Annoy no man, l. 170.
- Apayer, l. 399 H., appeyre, O., worsen, impair.
- Apish, don't let your dress be, l. 486.
- Appose, l. 519, question. See Oppose.
- Avale, l. 457, lower, take off.
- Ave Maria, say, l. 27, 77.
- Avoyde, l. 271, emptying.
- Austin, St, tells men how to behave at table, l. 158.
- Author is old, l. 414-18.
- Authors, the right ones to read, l. 323, 335, 351, 365, 393.
- Bearing, men praised or blamed for their, l. 153.
- Belch not, l. 202.
- Beware of ruskyn, l. 451.
- Birds and beasts, don't throw stones at, l. 64.
- Blow not in your drink, l. 190.
- Brecheles, l. 300, without breeches, of flogging.
- Breth, l. 203, wind.
- Capron, H., chappron, O., l. 457. O. Fr. *Chaperon*, "habillement de tête." Roquefort. Provençal, *capayron*, from Lat. *caput*. Skeat. *Chaperon* . . . any hood, bonnet . . . *Un Chaperon fait à i'en veux*, A notable whipster or twigger; a good one I warrant her. Cotgrave. 'Capron hardy' must then be 'a bold or saucy young scamp.'
- Cantelmele, l. 409, piecemeal : *cantel*, a corner, bit.
- CHAUCER, read his works full of pleasance, l. 335-350.
- Chere, l. 131, face, expression on it.
- Childly, *adj.* l. 523, O., childy, H., fitted for children.
- Children are like wax, l. 6.
- Church, how to behave at, l. 71-98.
- Clappe, l. 80, noise.
- Claw not your visage, l. 194.
- Comb your head, l. 36.
- Communicative, be, l. 316.

- Compace, l. 469. Fr. *compas*, a compasse, a circle, a round.
- Constaunce, l. 102. Fr. *constance*, stabilitie, firmenesse. Cot.
- Couenable, l. 487. Fr. *convenable*, apt, fit, meet for, beseeching, seemlie, &c. Cot.
- Crede, say it, l. 77.
- Cross yourself on rising, l. 25.
- Cumpenable, l. 151. Fr. *compagnable*, companable, friendlie, sociable.
- Cunning, (knowing) men, take heed to them, l. 478, l. 498-504.
- Cup, soil not yours, l. 186.
- Dancing, right for a child, l. 305.
- Deprave, l. 157, backbite, run down. Fr. *despraver*, spoyle, marre, make crooked, wrest, wry to bad purposes. Cot.
- Detraction, the vice of, l. 163.
- Disauayle, l. 290, harm, damage.
- Discreue, l. 392, describe.
- Disculede, l. 460, O., dissheveled.
- Disteyne, l. 407, stain, spot.
- Dogs, don't irritate them, l. 67.
- Dress, to be manerly, l. 47, 52 ; to be reasonable, l. 485.
- Ears, clean yours, l. 37.
- Entredet, l. 524, O., entretyde, H., taught.
- Envy, keep clear of, l. 528.
- Estate, l. 122, lord noble.
- Exerceyse, excersyfy, l. 318, ? practised, able to handle a subject. Fr. *exercer*, to handle, manage. Cot.
- Eye, cast not yours aside, l. 101.
- Face, have no spots on it, l. 38.
- Farsyone, l. 186, H., stuffing : *furse* (or *ferce*, l. 191), to stuff ; *fursure*, stuffing. Cp. Chaucer's *ferthyng*, of the Prioress, *Prolog. Cant. T.*, and the Oriel text.
- Fetis, l. 443, O., fashions. Fr. *faict*, feat, pranke, part. Cot.
- Fewe, l. 171, little, few words.
- First place, don't take it, l. 493.
- Follow virtue, l. 481.
- Founders of our language ; revive their praise, l. 431.
- Fulsom, l. 257, ? full, satisfied ; or helpful, A.S. *fylst*, help, assistance.
- Fulsomnes, l. 401, fulness, plenty. 'Fulnesse or plente (fulsumnesse, K. H. P.) *Habundancia, copia.*' Promptorium.
- Games, play only at proper ones, l. 296.
- Girdle, don't loose yours at table, l. 197.
- Glaynes, l. 412, O., gleynes, l. 422, O., gleanings. Fr. *glane*, a gleaning ; also the corne thats gleaned or left for the gleaner. Cot.
- Gluttonous, don't be, l. 180.
- Good cheer, make it serve for a scanty table, l. 253-5.
- GOWER'S moral writings, read them, l. 323 ; and his *Confessio Amantis*, l. 325.
- Halke, l. 124, generally means corner ; A.S. *heal*, an angle, a corner ; but another *heal* is a hall, place of entertainment, inn, which may be the meaning here.
- Hands, wash yours, l. 43 ; wash 'em clean at table, l. 262-5.
- Hanging, the servant that deserves it, st. 65, O.
- Harping recommended, l. 304.
- Head, don't scratch it at table, l. 194.
- Holy water, l. 72.

- Humanite, l. 497, Fr. *humanité*, courtesie, ciuilitie, gentlenesse. Cot.
- Inhaunce, l. 433, put forward, up. Lat. *in antea*, Prov. *enansar*, to advance, exalt. Wedgwood.
- Interrupt no man's talk, l. 275, 283.
- Is, l. 386, O., his.
- Iubiter, l. 371, 378, God.
- Jangelynge, l. 80, chattering.
- Kery, l. 369, *κυριε*, Lord, [have mercy upon us!]
- Knife, don't put it near your face, l. 192.
- Ladde, l. 476, O., lade, H., a thong of leather, a shoe-latchet. Halliwell.
- Language, silver, is to be learnt only from our old poets, st. 58, l. 400-6.
- Lewed (ignorant), he must be who will not learn, l. 21.
- Lips, wipe yours before drinking, l. 186, 189.
- Look men, you speak to, in the face, l. 99.
- Louse, l. 462, catching lice.
- Luting recommended, l. 302.
- LYDGATE, John, my master, l. 365; read his volumes large and wide, l. 379.
- Malapert, Jack, don't play, l. 491. Fr. *Müere*, malapert, outrageous, ever doing one mischief or other. *Marmiton*, a saucie, malapert, or knauish fellow. Cot.
- Malouſe, l. 461, Malo's.
- Manner & measure should guide you, l. 125.
- Manners make man, l. 238.
- Mass, help the priest at, l. 85.
- Matins, our Lady's, l. 32.
- Mouth, eat with it shut, l. 241.
- Multiply talking, don't, l. 320.
- Nails, clean yours, l. 44; don't pare them at table, l. 247.
- Norture, l. 436, deportment, manners.
- Nose, clean it, l. 39; don't pick it, l. 41.
- OCKLYF; read his translation of *De Regimine Principum*, l. 351-64.
- Oppose, l. 518, 'I oppose one, I make a tryall of his lernyng, or I laye a thyng to his charge, *ie appose*.' Palsgrave. See Towneley Mysteries, pp. 193-95. Way, in Promptorium. We may bi oure law examyne hym fyrst . . .  
. . . let me *oppose* hym . . .  
*T. Myst*, p. 195.
- Outrage, l. 278, outrageous, beyond bounds, too talkative. See Malapert.
- Owers, l. 34, see *pryme*.
- Pater noster, say yours, l. 26, 77.
- Pendable, l. 455, O., Fr. *pendable*, hangable, that deserves hanging, thats fit to be hanged. Cot.
- Poor table, men to be cheerful at, l. 258.
- Presumption, beware of, l. 492.
- Pride, beware of, l. 492.
- Print your words in your mind before you speak them, l. 282.
- Pryme & owers, l. 34. 'The *prime* and other *hours* are the services *Ad primam horam*, *Ad tertiam*, *Ad sextam*, and *Ad nonam*, found in the Primer, or layman's prayer-book. They are sometimes called the middle hours, as distinguished



- from Matins and Vespers.' H. Bradshaw.
- Quaire, l. 520, 526, 532, quire, pamphlet, treatise.
- Ravenous, don't be, l. 176.
- Read eloquent books, l. 310.
- Rehersaylle, l. 288, rehearsal, repetition.
- Repeat conversations, don't, l. 288.
- Report (tale-telling) is the chief nurse of mischief, l. 135.
- Reward, l. 127, look at, watch.
- Rising, what to do on, l. 23.
- Secret, keep what you hear, l. 134.
- Sewe, l. 481, follow, pursue.
- Silence, keep, l. 140; in hall, l. 204.
- Siluerous, l. 403, O., silvern.
- Singing lustily is good for a child, l. 304.
- Speak fair to folks, l. 60.
- Speaking, the conditions to be observed in, l. 143.
- Spoon, don't put it in your dish or on the table, l. 267.
- Surplusage, l. 518, rest, remainder.
- Syttyng, l. 302, fit, suitable.  
'Syttyng or conveyent—m. *asse-ant* .. *aduenant*.' Palsgrave.
- Table, how to wait at, l. 113.
- Tacches, l. 176, tache, l. 198; Fr. *tache*, a spot, staine, blemish. Cot.
- Taches, H., teches, O., l. 453, manners.
- Teeth, don't pick 'em with your knife, l. 248.
- Terre, l. 67; *tar*, to set on, provoke; O. Fr. *atarier*. They have *terrid* thee to ire. Wiclif, Psalms. Sc. *tirr*, to snarl; quarrelsome, crabbed. Wedgwood.
- Thewed, l. 20, mannered.
- Towel, don't soil it, l. 263, 266.
- Traverse, l. 242, change from side to side.
- Trencher; keep yours clean, l. 269.
- Trety, l. 529, treatise.
- True as the gospel, l. 503.
- Weyne, l. 166, A.S. *wanian*, to diminish, take away.
- Wind, break not, up or down, l. 202.
- Wise man, the; his marks of a youth likely to be bad, l. 104;—his counsel as to speaking, l. 137, 147.
- Women, always take good heed to them, l. 506.
- Wyndlese, l. 471, windlass.
- Yanglers, l. 207, chatterers.
- Ydellye, l. 315, idly.
- Ynymparable, l. 380, unequalled, L. *par*, Fr. *pareil*, equal, like.

BUNGAY:  
CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS,  
THE CHAUCER PRESS.





# The Qurial

made by maystere Alain Charretier.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, No. LIV.

1888.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

The Curial  
made by maystere Alain Chartier.

Translated thus in Englyssh by

William Caxton.

1484.

COLLATED WITH THE FRENCH ORIGINAL BY

PROF. PAUL MEYER,

AND EDITED BY

FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL,

M.A., TRIN. HALL, CAMBRIDGE; HON. DR. PHIL. BERLIN.



LONDON:

PUBLISHT FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXVIII.

Dedicated  
TO  
MY FRIEND AND HELPER,  
F. S. ELLIS.  
F. J. F.

Extra Series,  
LIV.

---

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.



## FOREWORDS.

OF this book printed by Caxton in 1484 (no doubt), in his type No. 4\*, Mr. Blades says, in his *Biography and Typography of William Caxton*, 2nd edition, 1882, p. 297 :—

“Caxton translated the Curial from the French ‘for a noble and virtuous Erle,’ probably Lord Rivers, who was beheaded at Pomfret, on June 13th, 1483.

“Alain Chartier, born in Normandy about 1386, earned for himself the appellation of ‘excellent orateur, noble poète, et très-renommé rhétoricien.’ He held the office of ‘Secrétaire de la Maison’ to both Charles VI and Charles VII. He died about 1457. The most complete editions of his works are those by Galiot du Pré, 16mo, Paris, 1529; and by Duchesne, 4to, Paris, 1617. In the former, however, is an error which has led to some confusion, as ‘Livre de l’Esperance’ is there entitled ‘Le Curial,’ the real Curial being a much shorter piece, and totally different in design. By the ‘Curial’ being addressed to his brother, it is supposed to have been written by Alain to Jean Chartier, known as the author of ‘Histoire de Charles VII.’

“As an instance of the great repute in which the writings of Chartier were held in his age, it is reported that Margaret, the wife of the Dauphin of France, afterwards Louis XI, finding him one day asleep in his chair, kissed his lips, to the great astonishment of her attendants. ‘Je ne baise pas la personne, mais la bouche dont estoient sortés tant de beaux discours,’ she exclaimed. There is a painting in Add. MS. No. 15,300 (in the British Museum) vividly depicting this scene.”

The above statement about the Dauphiness kissing Alain Chartier, is left as Mr. Blades wrote it; but he cannot have seen the one illumination in the Addit. MS. 15,300. That pictures a big-headed crown'd lady standing up with her arms spread, as if in astonishment, with a stout man lying on the ground before her, possibly asleep,—his left hand covers part of his face,—while at her left is an armed

man leaning on a 2-handed sword; and on his left, a seated scribe writing. In the background is the city wall, with a turreted gate, and towerd and turreted buildings inside. The MS is one of Alain Chartier's *Quadrilogus Invecivus*, written because he thought the hand of God was upon France, inasmuch as "en l'an mil CCCC, vint et deux, le veisse le Roy anglois, ancien aduersaire de ceste seigneurie, soy glorifier en *nostre* ignominieux reproche, Enrichir de noz despoilles, et desprisier noz faiz et noz courages" (leaf 5, back). (lf. 6) "Et le, meu de compassion pour ramener a memoire l'estat de *nostre* infelicite, & a chascun ramenteuoir ce que lui en touche, Ay composé ce present traictie *que* l'appelle [lf. 6, bk.] 'quadrilogue', pource que, en quatre personnages est ceste euure comprise. Et est dit 'Inuectif', en tant qu'il procede par maniere d'enuaisement de paroles, et par forme de reprendre."

Of the *Curial*, says Mr. Blades, only two copies are known; one is in the British Museum (here reprinted), and the other at Althorpe, Lord Spencer's Library. The Collation is

"A 3<sup>n</sup>1, signed j, ij, iij, without any blanks: In all, six leaves. There is no title-page. The type is entirely No. 4\*. The lines, which are spaced to an even length, measure  $4\frac{1}{8}$  inches, and there are 38 to a full page. Without catchwords or folios. The Text begins on sig. .j. recto . . . The 'Curial' finishes on the sixth recto . . . On the verso, Caxton has given us the translation of a ballad, written by Alain Chartier, consisting of 28 lines. It has a burthen:—'Ne chyer but of a man Joyous.'"

In itself, the *Curial* or Letter has little literary worth; but Caxton englisht it, and that fact justifies its reprint. Moreover, short books are always handy for the E. E. T. Soc. The subject is the old one which afterwards interested Shakspeare;—compare the Duke, Touchstone &c. in *As You Like It*, and Belisarius in *Cymbeline*, III. iii.;—the disadvantages of the intriguing restless life at Court, compared with the quiet and restfulness of the country. Two books on this topic which are well worth reading, were reprinted by Mr. W. C. Hazlitt in his *Roxburghe Library*, 1868:

<sup>1</sup> A *Ternion* is 6 leaves, 12 pages. A 4<sup>n</sup> is a *Quaternion*, 8 leaves. A 5<sup>n</sup> or *Quinternion*, is a section of 5 sheets folded together in half, making 10 leaves or 20 pages.—*ib.*, p. 168.

1. *Cyuite and Vncyuite Life*, as its headlines call it, tho' the full title is

"The English / Courtier, and the / Cuntrey-gentleman: / A pleasaunt and learned Disputation, / betweene them both: very profitable and ne- / cessarie to be read of all Nobilitie / and Gentlemen / Wherein is discoursed, vvhat / order of lyfe, best bescemeth a Gentleman, (aswell for e- / ducation, as the course of his whole life) to make him a / person fytted for the publique seruice of his Prince and / Countrey. / Imprinted at London, by / Richard Iones: dwelling at the signe / of the Rose and Crowne neere / vnto Holborne Bridge. 1586. / An earlier Qto. 1579.

2. [by Nicholas Breton.] The / Court and Country, / or / A Briefe Discourse betweene the / Courtier and Country-man; / of the Manner, Nature, and Condi- / tion of their liues. / Dialogue-wise set downe betwixt a / Courtier and Country-man. / Conteyning many Delectable and Pithy / Sayings, worthy Observation. / Also, necessary Notes for a Covrtier. / Written by N. B. Gent. / London / Printed by G. Eld for Iohn Wright, and are to / be Sold at his Shoppe at the Signe of the Bible / without Newgate. / 1618. /

Alain Chartier's sketch of the French courtier of his time is not a cheering one. But it differs little from those of the English Elizabethan courtier by Spenser in his *Colin Clout*, and by Harrison in his *Description of England*.

Both were the necessary consequence of despots being the sole sources of honour, and their whims being law. And though Society and Fashion still breed Flunkeyism and Falseness, and some Demagogues pander to the base prejudices of all classes from the highest to the lowest, we may surely believe that our Victorian time is better, in this regard, than the Caroline in France, or the Elizabethan here.

The headlines, side-notes, and modern stops of the Text are mine. Caxton's tagd ð and g are not reproduced.

July, 1888.

---

P.S. Oct. 1888. My chance sending of a proof to my old friend Prof. Paul Meyer, induced him, in the kindest possible way, to set aside all his own pressing work, and not only collate for us Caxton's English with the French original, and give us many most valuable corrections and explanations of Caxton's text—see the footnotes,—but also to hunt out and copy for us the original of the supposed

Balade by Alain Chartier which Caxton englisht and printed at the end of his *Curial*. Prof. P. Meyer has also written an Introduction to the Balade, which will be found on p. 17 below, and the following comments on Alain Chartier's *Curial*, and Caxton's englishing of it.

All our Members will join with me in thanking Prof. Meyer for his great kindness, and his admirable enrichment of the present little Text.

#### COMMENT BY PROF. P. MEYER.

The French *Curial* has been printed several times since the first edition of Alain Chartier's works (Paris, Le Caron, 1489), until Du Chesne's much improved edition (Paris, 1617).<sup>1</sup> The manuscripts are not scarce, but those which I have seen are very corrupt. So are, and even worse, the ancient editions, previous to Du Chesne. Chartier writes, particularly in his *Curial*, a refined and elaborate style which has often been misunderstood by the copyists. We must not wonder if Caxton's translation is not free from mistakes. Some of these are to be traced to the MS. which he used, some to mere misreadings, some to excusable misunderstandings. A due allowance being made for the difficulties of the task, the translation cannot be pronounced to be wanting in force and intelligence. One noticeable peculiarity in Caxton's anglicizing of the *Curial* is the habit of rendering some of the words of the original by two consecutive synonyms,<sup>2</sup> one of them being the very word of Chartier, the other a more generally accepted English word. For example, p. 5, l. 19, "ewrous and happy," for the Fr. *heureux*; l. 23, "rendre and yelde," for the Fr. *rendre*; p. 7, l. 22, "the dore . . . of the chambre or wythdraught," Fr. *l'uyz du retrait*; p. 8, l. 21, "the ryghtes and droytes," Fr. *les droits*; p. 9, l. 27, "rendrid and gafe," Fr. *rendoient*, etc.

Whenever Caxton's translation has been found defective or erroneous, the French text has been quoted from Du Chesne's edition; the MSS. having been resorted to only in special cases.—P. M.

<sup>1</sup> For a full description of the editions, see Brunet, *Manuel du libraire*, under CHARTIER (*Alain*).

<sup>2</sup> This practice is known also in the English Bible and Prayer-book.—F. J. F.

[The  
Curial of Alain Charretier.]

4 Here foloweth the cople of a lettre whyche maistre  
Alayn Charetier wrote to hys brother / whyche desired  
to come dwelle in Court / in whyche he reherseth many  
myseryes & wretchydnesses therein vsed<sup>1</sup> / For tadyse  
8 hym not to entre in to it / leste he after repente / like  
as hier after folowe / and late translated out of frensshe  
in to englysshe / whyche Cople was delyuerid to me  
by a noble and vertuous Erle / At whos Instance &  
12 requeste I haue reduced it in to Englyssh.

[sign. j.]  
The Letter that  
Alain Chartier  
wrote to dissuade  
his Brother from  
coming to Court.  
Englisht by  
Wm. Caxton.

Yght welbelouyd brother, & persone Eloquent /  
r thou admonestest and exhortest me to prepare &  
make redy, place and entree for the vnto the lyf  
16 Curiall / whyche thou desirest / And that by my helpe  
and requeste thou myghtest haue therein offyce / And  
herto thou art duly<sup>2</sup> meuyd by comyn error of the  
people / whiche repute thonours mondayne & pompes of  
20 them of the courte / to be thynges more blessyd & happy  
than other / or to thende that I Iuge not wel<sup>3</sup> of thy  
desyre / Thou wenest paraenture / that they that wayte  
on offices / ben in vertuous occupacions, & reputest them  
24 the more worthy for to haue rewardes & merites / And  
also thou adioustest other causes that mene the therto /

Dear Brother,  
you ask me to  
get you a place  
at Court,

thinking that  
men in office are  
virtuous,

<sup>1</sup> Nearly every final d is ð in the original, and every final g has a like curl to it.

<sup>2</sup> French *indeuement*, but the MS. used by Caxton may have had *deuement*.—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> The French has: "ou ain que je ne juge *mal* de ton desir."—P. M.

and that you  
will be in the  
company of me,

your old friend.

I too long for you.

But when I suffer  
daily in the  
public service,

I feel happy that  
you escape my  
troubles at Court.

[\* sign. j. baek]

You want to be  
with me at Court.  
I wish more to be  
alone with you.

by the example of me / that empesse my selue for to  
serue in the courte Ryall / And to thende that thou  
myghtest vse thy dayes in takyng companye wyth me /  
and that we myghte to-gidre enioye the swettenes 4  
of frendshyppe / whyche longe tyme hath ben bytwene  
vs tweyne / And thys knowe I wel / that thy courage  
is not wythdrawen fer from my frendshyppe / And the  
grace of humanyte is not dreyed vp in the / whyche 8  
compryseth hys frendes as presente, And leueth not at  
nede to counseyle & ayde them absente to hys power /  
And I trowe that thyn absence is not lasse greuous to  
me / than myn is to thy self / For me semeth, that 12  
thou beyng absente, I am there where the places and  
affayres desioyne vs / But by cause god of fortune hath  
so departed our destyne / that thou awaytest frely on  
thyn owne pryuate thynges / And that I am occupied 16  
on thynges publycque, & seruys in sorowful passions /  
that whan I haue on my self compassion / Thenne am  
I enioyed of thyn ease / & take grete playsir / in this,  
that thou auoydest the myserries that I suffre euery 20  
day / And yf I blame or accuse fortune for me / I  
preyse and thanke her on that other parte for the / For  
so moche as she hath exempte the fro the anguysshes  
that I suffre \*in the courte / And that she hath not 24  
made vs bothe meschaunte /

Thou desirest, as thou sayst, to be in the courte wyth  
me / And I coueyte yet more to be pryuely and syngulerly  
wyth the / And also for me thou woldest gladly leue thy 28  
fraunchyse and pryuate lyf / I ought more gladly for the  
loue of the, leue thys seruytude mortell / For as moche  
as loue acquyteth hym better in humble tranquyllyte than  
in orguyllous myserye / late hyt suffyse to the & to 32  
me / that one of vs tweyne be Infortunat / And that  
by my meschaunte lyf thou mayst see and knowe more  
certainly that one and that other fortune / But what  
demaundest thou / Thou seechest the way to lese thy 36



*Keep away from Court! It is full of Liars and Ill-doers.* 3

self / by the example of me / And wylt lepe fro the  
hauen of sewerte / for to drowne thy self in the see  
of peryl and myserye / Repentest thou the to haue  
4 lyberte / Art thou annoyed to lyue in peas / humayne  
nature hath suffred suche unhappynes / that she ap-  
petyteth and desireth to haue that thyng / whyche she  
hath not / Thus misprysest thou the peas of thy corage /  
8 and the sure estate of thy thought / And by therroure  
of mesprysement whyche thou hast gotten / the thynges  
whyche of theyr owne condicion ben more to be mes-  
prised / than they that ben shewde by the lyf of  
12 another<sup>1</sup> / I meruaylle me moche / how thou, that art  
prudent and wyse of goodes<sup>2</sup> / art so ouerscen and fro  
thy self, for to dar expose thy self to so many perillis.  
And yf thou wylt vse my counseyl / Take none  
16 example by me for to pursue the courtes / Ne the  
publycque murmures of hye palaysis / But alleway late  
my perylle be example to the for to fle and eschewe  
them / For I dar not afferme / that emonge the bruyt  
20 of them that torne / be ony thyng stedfast ne hol-  
somme / Thou shalt wene & hope to fynde / exercite of  
vertu / in myserye thus commune & publiclycque / And  
so certaynly shalt thou fynde / yf thou makest thy view<sup>3</sup>  
24 to fight constauntly agenst alle vices / But be ware &  
make good watche that thou be not the fyrst that shal  
be ouercome / For I saye the / that the courtes of hye  
prynces be neuer disgarnysshed of peple deceyuyng by

Why will you  
jump from the  
Hauen of Security  
into the Sea of  
Misery?

Human Nature  
always longs for  
what it hasn't.

But take my  
advice: Don't  
come to Court.

Courts are full  
of deceivers,  
bullies, flatterers,  
hinderers of good.

<sup>1</sup> Caxton's phrase seems to be unfinished. The Fr. has: "Les choses qui de leur mesme condition (that is, on account of their very condition) sont plus a mespriser que par vices (var. *que par la vie*, Caxton's reading) d'autrui a priser, *tu loues et exaltes*." The last words, "thou praisest and exaltest," seem to have been left out.—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> *of goods* has no meaning. The French has: "... qui es prudent et saige *deviens* si forsené." Caxton may have misread *de biens* instead of *deviens*, becomest.—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> Caxton's *view* is a mistake for *vow*, Fr. *veu*: "se tu fais veu de batailler," if thou vowest, or takest a pledge, to be constantly fighting.—P. M.

Our poor  
humanity follows  
bad examples.

[\* sign. ij.]

If you keep  
virtuous,

you'll be mockt  
and hated;

your life 'll be in  
danger,

and you'll be  
worse off than  
before.

Corruption is the  
only way to  
success at Court.

fayr langage / or feryng by menaces / or stryuyng by  
enuye / or corrupte by force of yeftes / or blandyssh-  
yng by flaterers / or accusyng of trespasses / or enpessh-  
yng & lettyng in somme maner wyse / the good wyl of 4  
true men ; For our poure humanyte is lyghtly enclyned  
to ensiewe & folowe<sup>1</sup> the maners & condycions of other /  
And to doo as they doo. \* And vnnethe may he escape  
that is asseged and assaylled of so many aduersaryes / 8  
Now late vs graunte that thou woldest perseuere in  
vertue / And that thou sholdest escape the vycyous and  
the corrupeion of suche vycyous persones / yet in thys  
caas thou haddest vaynquysshed none but thy self / 12  
But thys had ben better that thou haddest don it in  
thy owne secrete pryue place. And be thou certayn,  
that for thy vertue thou shalt be mocked, and for thy  
trouthe thou shalt be hated / or that thy dyscrecion 16  
shal cause the to be suspecte / For ther is nothyng  
more suspecte to euyl peple / than them whom they  
knowe to be wyse and trewe /

The reste thenne is thys / that thou shalt haue 20  
labour wythoute fruyt / And shalt vse thy lyf in  
peryll / And shalt gete many enuyous at the / And yf  
thou stryue at theyr enuye / or that thou takest venge-  
ance / I telle to the, that thy vengement shal engendre 24  
to the, more greuous aduersytees<sup>2</sup> than thou haddest  
tofore / And by the contrarye / they that comne dys-  
symyle, ben preysed, and vse better theyr tyme in  
courtes than the other peple / The abuses of the 28  
courte / And the maner of the peple curyall or courtly  
ben suche that a man is neuer suffred tenhaunce hym  
self / but yf he be corruptable / For vertue whyche is  
in so many maners enuyed<sup>3</sup> / yf she be not prowde / 32  
she is mesprysed / yf she bowe not / she is by force  
sette abacke / yf she be broken or hurte, she is by force

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* folo-lowe

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *adversaires*.—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> Another mistake of Caxton's: the French is '*environnée*.'—P. M.



hunted away / who is he thenne that may kepe hym  
 that he be not corrupt or coromped / or who is he that  
 shall escape without hauyng harme / Suche be the  
 4 werkes of the courte, that they that be symple ben  
 mesprysed / the vertuous enuyed / And the prowde  
 arrogaunts in mortel peryllis / And yf thou be sette  
 down and put aback vnder the other courtiours /  
 8 Thou shalt be enuyous of theyr power / yf thou be in  
 mene estate / of whyche thou hast not suffysaunce /  
 thou shalt stryue for to mounte and ryse hyer / And yf  
 thou mayst come vnto the hye secrets whyche ben  
 12 strongly for to doubte and drede / in the doubtful  
 courteynes of the most hye prynces / Thenne shalt thou  
 be most meschaunt / Of somoche as thou wenest to be  
 most ewrous<sup>1</sup> and happy / so moche more shalt thou be  
 16 in grete perill to falle / lyke to hym that is mounted in  
 to the most hye place / For to them whom fortune the  
 variable hath most hyely \*lyfte up / and enhaunsed /  
 resteth nomore but for to falle fro so hye down / by  
 20 cause she oweth to them nothyng but ruyne / yf thou  
 haste take of her alle that thou myghtest / and that  
 she wold gyue / thenne art thou debytour of thy self /  
 To thende that she rendre and yelde hym meschaunt  
 24 whom she had enhaunsed / And that she mocque hym  
 of hys meschef whom she had made blynde of vayn  
 glorye of hys enhaunsyng / For the grete wyndes that  
 blowe in hye courtes ben of suche condicion / that they  
 28 only that ben hiest enhaunsed / ben after theyr des-  
 poyntement / as a spectacle of enuye / of detraction /  
 or of hate vnto alle peple / and fynde them self sub-  
 gettes tyl they be shamed and put down among the  
 32 peple<sup>2</sup> / And that they that tofore poursiewed to them  
 and flattered / Reporte of them more gretter blames and  
 dyvyisions<sup>3</sup> than the other / For multytude of peple

The simple are  
despised, the  
virtuous envied.

When you seem  
most happy,  
and in high  
position,

[\* sign. ij. back]

then Fortune  
will ruin you

and make you  
miserable.

As soon as  
Courtiers reach  
the highest posts,  
they are envied  
and hated till  
they are abased.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. *eureux*: *heur* of *bonheur*, *malheur*

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "entre les populaires," viz. among the mob, low people.  
—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> Misprint? Fr. *derisions*.—P. M.

Fortune

laughs and claps  
her hands when  
great lords fall  
into trouble.Men of high and  
whole hearts  
disregard  
Fortune.The Court thinks  
too much of  
Fortune.

[\* sign. iij.]

mespryse alwaye them / that fortune hath most aualed<sup>1</sup>  
 and throwen down / And also is envyous of them that  
 she seeth enhaunsed and lyft vp / Fortune gladly hath  
 sette hys eyen on hem that ben in hye degree, and on 4  
 the soueraynes yet more / And whan she pleyeth wyth  
 smale and poure folkes / that is no certayn / for of the  
 meschief of poure peple she retcheth not / ne doth but  
 smyle / But she lawgheth wyth ful mouth, and smyteth 8  
 her paulmes to gydre, whan she seeth grete lordes falle  
 in to meschyef / she retcheth but lytel for tessaye and  
 preue her fortune in lytyl and lowe places / But for to  
 make the grete and myghty to falle and ouerthrowe, 12  
 she setteth gladly her gynnes / And them that ben  
 poure & caste down, maketh she oftymes to ryse &  
 mounte fro certaynte to Incertaynte, and fro good  
 rewle to euyl rewle / Them deceyue she gladly / 16  
 whom she fyndeth esy to deceyue / and variable as  
 she is / But she doth the custommes & strength to them  
 that setteth by her.<sup>2</sup> And whan she seeth her despysed  
 & nought sette by / thenne she leneth them in peas / 20  
 But she flateryth and lawgheth for nought vnto them  
 that haue hye and hole courage / Now she essayeth to  
 Inste ayenst them that ben most stronge / And now  
 she enhaunseth them that ben most feble / now she 24  
 lawheth to one / and she grymmeth to other / But the  
 man that hath grete corage & vertuous, mespriseth her  
 lawhynges and mowes / And nothyng doubteth her  
 menaces / <sup>3</sup>But the courte maketh ouer moche compte 28  
 of thys fortune / that draweth the peple lyghtly to  
 her / \*forgetyng theyr poure estate / And forgetyng

<sup>1</sup> From *à val*; orig. Fr. *rauellés*, cast down.—P. M.<sup>2</sup> What does this mean? The French has (in MS. texts, for Du Chesne's edition is corrupt here): "Mais elle *hait* les constans et vertueulx qui elle ne fount compte." Caxton seems to have read "*Mais elle fait les coustumes.*"—P. M.<sup>3-3</sup> This passage was completely misunderstood by Caxton. He ought to have translated "maketh moche more compte of thys fortune . . . *than* she doth of the wyse men." French :

and not knowyng them self as sone as they ben en-  
 haunced / whyche the wyse men do not / whiche for  
 none anauncement ne hauyng of good, enpayre not them  
 4 self<sup>3</sup> / There assaye thou for to mounte / yf thou wylt  
 leue thy lyberte and franchyse / Thenne oughtest thou  
 to knowe / that thou shalt haue habundaunce thy self /  
 whan thou shalt wyll to poursewe the court / whyche  
 8 maketh a man to leue hys propre maners / And to applye  
 hym self to the maners of other. For yf he be veryt-  
 able / men shal holde hym atte scole of fayntyse / yf  
 he loue honest lyf / men shal teche hym to lede dys-  
 12 honest lyf / yf he be pacyent / & sette by no prouffyt<sup>1</sup> /  
 he shal be left to haue suffraunce / For yf he can  
 nought / men shal demaunde him nothyng / And also  
 he shal fynde none / that shal gyue hym ony thyng<sup>2</sup> /  
 16 yf he entre Inportunatly / They that be Inportune shal  
 put hym abacke / yf he be acustomed to ete soberly /  
 and at a certayn houre / he shal dyne late, and shal  
 soupe in suche facoun that he shal disacustomme hys  
 20 tyme and hys maner of lyuyng / Yf he haue be  
 acustomed to rede and studye in bookes / he shal muse  
 ydelly alday, in awaytyng that men shal open the dore  
 to hym, of the chambre or wythdraught of the prynce /  
 24 yf he loue the rest of his body, he shal be ennoyed<sup>3</sup>  
 now here / nowe there / as a courroux or renner per-  
 petuell / yf he wil erly goo to his bedde, and Ryse late  
 at his playsir, he shal faylle therof / For he shal wake  
 28 longe and late / and ryse ryght erly / and that ofte he

But wise men  
rest content.

The Court makes  
you give up your  
own morals for  
worse ones,

and your own  
habits for other  
folk's.

At Court, the  
Student must  
turn Idler and  
Place-hunter.

“Mais la court fait trop plus grant compte de celle fortune . .  
 . . . . . qu'elle ne fait des (*ed. les*) sages qui, pour bien avoir,  
 ne se empirent.”—P. M.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. “Et non chalang d'avoir prouffit,” viz. “and cares  
 not to have profit.”—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> Mistranslation arising from a bad text. Fr. “S'il ne  
 sçait ou ne veut riens demander, aussi ne trouvera il qui riens  
 luy donne.”—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> Unless Caxton printed “*ennoyed*” for *enuoyed*, envoyed,  
 he must have read *ennuyé*; but the French has *envoyé*, sent  
 on an errand.—P. M.

8 *The dependence of Court life: the independence of Country life.*

Every one must  
lose his natural  
rest,

and yet not gain  
favour.

The Courtier is  
always lodgd in  
another's house,

and must eat,  
and sleep at  
another's will.

[\* sign. iij. back]

A country house-  
holder is a King  
in his own house.

Contrast the ills  
of the Court and  
the good of the  
Country,  
in eating,

sleeping,

shal lese the nyght wythout slepyng / yf he studye for  
to fynde frendshyp / he<sup>1</sup> shal neuer conne<sup>2</sup> trotte so  
moche thurgh the halles of the grete lordes that he  
shal fynde her / but she holdeth her wythoute, and 4  
entreth not wyth ony / For she is moche better knowen  
by them that vsen her, whyche ben experte of reffuse /<sup>3</sup>  
throwen down by fortune / than by them that entre  
ygnoraunt / and not knowen her tornes / Now beholde 8  
thenne / and see, whyche of the two thou shalt chese /  
or that in my yssuyng and goyng out / I drawe the to  
our comune prouffyt, or in thyn entryng thou brynge  
me to our comune damage and hurte / And forgete 12  
not that who serueth in the courte / Alway hym be-  
houeth to be a gheste / and herberowed in another  
mannes hows / And also he muste ete after thappetyte  
of other / and otherwhyle wythoute hungre, and fayn 16  
he maye / And in lyke wyse he muste wake otherwhyle  
atte \*the wylle of other / after that he hath begonne to  
slepe, and by grete gryef,<sup>4</sup> what thyng is more domageus  
than to sette vnder fortune the vertues of nature / and 20  
the ryghtes and droytes of lyf humayne / seen that it is  
[not]<sup>5</sup> a thyng more free in a man / than to lyue naturelly.  
emong vs seruantes of courte / we doo nothyng but  
lyue after thordonance of other / And thou luyest in 24  
thyn hous lyke an Emperour / thou regnest as a kyng  
paysyble / vnder the couerte of thyn hous / And we  
tremble for drede to dysplayse the lordes of hye houses /  
Thou mayst ete whan thou hast hungre / at thyn 28  
houre and at thy playsir / And we ete so gredyly &  
gloutonously, that otherwhyle we caste it vp agayn  
and make vomytes / Thou passest the nyght in slepyng

<sup>1</sup> *he* means friendship; Fr. "jamais elle ne seet troter."—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> be able to, know how to

<sup>3</sup> *reffuse* is evidently wrong. The French has "expers des ruses (ed. *jeux*) de fortune," its tricks.—P. M.

<sup>4</sup> Fr. "par grief sommeil," heavy sleep.—P. M.

<sup>5</sup> Fr. "veu qu'il n'est chose plus franche."—P. M.

as long as it playseth the / And we, after ouermoche  
drynkyng of wyne and grete paynes, lye down ofte in  
beddes ful of vermyne / & somtyme wyth stryf and

and beds.

4 debate<sup>1</sup> /

Retourne, brother / Retourne to thy self / And  
lerne to know the felicity / by the myseryes that we  
suffre / But no-man preyseth ynough the ayses that he

Recognise the  
happiness of  
private life.

8 hath in his pryuate and propre hous / but he that to-  
fore mespryseth thanguysshes that he hath suffred in  
admystryacion publyeque / Arystotle the phylosophre

Neither Aristotle

12 of kyng Alysandre / And had leuer to leue there hys  
discyple Calistenes / than there lenger to dwelle /  
Dyogenes also, whiche in hys tyme, aboue alle other  
men lound lyberte and fraunchyse, Refused the grete

nor Diogenes  
cared for courts  
or wealth.

16 rychesses and wordly Ioyes to whyche he was callyd /  
he fledde them for to enhalyte and dwelle frely wythin  
the tonne / wherin he slepte / And also durst somoche  
aunaunte hym / that he was more puyssaunt prynee, in  
20 that he myght more reffuse of goodes, than the said  
Alysandre hath power to gyue hym. For the veray  
phylosophre / that can wel mespryse thambycious  
vanyte of the peple of the court / techeth to his coun-

24 seyllours<sup>2</sup> / that ther is more of humanyte in smale  
thynges and eases<sup>3</sup> / than in the courtes of prynees /  
And the benes of Pictagoras / And the wortes that  
Orace ete / rendrid and gafe better sanour / than that  
28 Sardanapalus fonde in the grete and delycious wyne  
Aromatyques that he dranke / for as moche as the  
deleyces were medled with the galle of poyson / Feures /  
& anguysshes mondaynes / that he had alway vpon hys  
32 herte / not only our lyf / but the exaction of our lyf /  
hys tormentis adioyne to our lyf in suche wyse that

There is more  
Humanity in  
private life than  
in Princes' courts.

<sup>1</sup> Fr. "atout le bast," means harnessed, dressed.—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> French, "Car vraye Philosophie est quand on scait mes-  
priser . . . et apprendre a ses escolliers,"—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> French *cases*, poor houses, not *causes*.—P. M.

[\* leaf iij.]

Folk think much  
of a Courtier's  
rich dress; but  
they don't know  
the cost and  
trouble of it.

\*she ne hath glorye mondayne / ne pompe caduque  
wythoute aduersyte / Oftymes the peple make grete  
wondrynges of the Ryche robe of the courtyour<sup>1</sup> / but  
they knowe not by what labour ne by what dyffyeulte 4  
he hath gotten it /

Courtiers' deck-  
ings are not won  
by merit.

The peple otherwhyle honoureth and worshypeth  
the grete apparaylle of a puyssant man, But they  
acompte not the pryckkyng that he hath felte in the 8  
pourehassyng of it / Ne the greuys that he hath gotten  
in shewyng of yt / Othertymes beholde the peple  
thordynaunces and grete houshold of the hye and grete  
lordes / but they knowe not of what dyspence they ben 12  
charged for to nourysshe them / Ne consydre nothyng  
the tytle / of whyche they knowe certaynly / that they  
haue in them no merites / Yf we calle an hare / a lyon /  
or saye that a fayr mayde is fowle<sup>2</sup> / or a fowle / croke- 16  
backed / haltyng / or euyll shapen, to be as fayre as  
Helayne / that shold be a grete lesynge / and worthy  
of derysion / And allewaye emonge vs courtyour's en-  
fayned / we folowe more the names of thoffyces / than 20  
the droytes and ryghtes / we be verbal / or ful of  
wordes / and desyre more the wordes than the thynges /  
And in thys we ben contrarye to the wyse Cathon /  
whyche desired more to excersise hym self vertuously 24  
in comune offyce and publycque / than to haue the  
name / And in suche wyse gouerneth he hym self /  
that whan he was called / he was allewaye founde  
worthy to haue better than he was callyd to / And 28  
somoche more was he honowred / as whan he fledde  
most the worldly honours / But by the contrarye we  
coueyte to be honowred / how wel that we ben not  
worthy / And so take the honours as by force and 32

They desire  
Honour, tho' they  
know they arn't  
worthy of it.

<sup>1</sup> French, "De la riche robe d'un pautonnier." Evidently Caxton did not understand *pautonnier*, a vagabond, a contemptible man.—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> French, "que une jeune fille laide, bossue, ou mal atournée, fust aussi belle comme Helene."—P. M.



strengthe / er we ben called therto. And herof foloweth  
that we lese by good ryght / that whyche we Iuge<sup>1</sup> to  
our self, and that we dar demande indewly / And to  
4 saye trouthe, the honours flee fro vs / whyche we  
poursewe ouer folyly /

Therefore, brother, I counseyll the / that thou So, Brother,  
delyte the / in thy self / of thy vertue / For she  
8 yeldeth Ioye and preysynge to them that lyue wel /  
late thy grete suffysaunce<sup>2</sup> reteyne the wythin thy lytyl stay at Home!  
Cenacle / And repute not thy self vertuous by heryng  
saye, as done men of the courte / But do payne to be  
12 verytable by theffecte of the werke / wherto coueytest  
thou the gloryes of palayses, whyche for theyr wretched  
myserye haue nede that men haue pyte \*on them / Ne [\* leaf iiij. back]  
poursewe it not in fayt / But by the playnt of myn  
16 unhappynes / folowe not me / by cause I am<sup>3</sup> oftymes Do not follow me  
cladde wyth the beste<sup>4</sup> / But haue pyte and compassion  
of the peryls / of whyche I am asseged / and of  
thassaultes of whyche I am enuyronned nyght and who am sur-  
20 day / For I haue nede to beholde on what foot that rounded with  
euery man cometh to me / And to note and marke the traitors, and must  
paas and the peryl of euery worde that departeth fro watch my every  
my mouth, to thende that by my vtterance I be not word.  
24 surprysed / and that in spekyng vnpourueydly, I ne  
gyue mater to ouy man to make false relacion / ne to  
interprete euyl my worde / whyche I maye neuer  
reuoke ne put in agayn / For the courte is the nourysshe The Court breeds  
28 of peple / whyche by fraude and franchyse / studye for men who study  
to drawe from one and other<sup>5</sup> suche wordes / by whyche to entrap you in  
talk,

<sup>1</sup> French, "ce a quoi nous *ingerons*," arrogate, claim falsely, misread *jugerons*.—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> French, *souffrance*, patience, endurance.—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> Abridged or translated from a corrupt text. French, "mais par la plainte de mon malheur te chastie (viz. change thy mind), ne ne regarde ou ayes consideration a ce que je suis . . ."—P. M.

<sup>4</sup> Rather, "with the beste-cladde"; French, "avec les mieux vestuz."—P. M.

<sup>5</sup> "Les uns des autres," the one from the other.—P. M.

## 12 *Competition for places at Court. Uncertainty of success.*

that they may,  
by disclosing it,  
curry favour of  
the great.

You are soon  
supplanted by a  
new-comer,

or, if you keep  
your Place,

envious men

will give bribes to  
get it from you;  
and then you  
must bribe too.

But in private  
life, in your own  
house, you are  
free.

[\* leaf v.]

they may persecute them / by that / whyche by the  
perylles<sup>1</sup> of other / they may entre in to the grace of  
them that haue auctoryte to helpe / or to annoye / And  
whyche take more playsyr in false reportes / than in 4  
verytable and trewe wordes / yf thou haue offyce in  
courte / make the redy to fyghte / For yf thou haue  
ony good / other shal desyre to take it fro the / and  
thou shalt not escape wythout debate / Somme shal 8  
machyne by somme moyen to deceyue the / And the  
behoueth to tormente thy self to resist hym / And  
after whan thou shalt haue employed thy body / thy  
tyme and thy goodes for to deffende the / Another 12  
newe one cometh to the courte, & shal supplante thy  
benediction / And shal take it gylefully fro the / Thus  
shalt thou lese wyth grete sorowe / that whyche thou  
haste gotten wyth grete labour / Or yf thyn offyce 16  
abyde wyth the / so shal thou not abyde longe wythout  
drede and fere of hym, or of other enuyous whyche shal  
laboure to take it fro the / Tofore that thou hast ony  
offyces Thou boughtest peas and moderacion to lyue / 20  
And as sone as thou shalt haue it / thou shalt be  
deffyed of an other / which shal enforce hym for to  
gyue largely for to take it fro the ; And the behoueth,  
maulgre thy self / that thou gyue as moche as he / to 24  
thende that thou kepe it / And that it abyde wyth the /

Beholde thenne, brother, beholde / how moche thy  
lytyl hous gyueth the liberte and franchyse / And  
thanke it that it hath receyuyd the as only lorde / 28  
And after that thy dore is shette and closed, ther  
entreth none other but suche as pleseth the / Men  
knocke oftymes atte yates of ryche and hye palayses /  
Ther is alleway \*noyse and murmure / In grete places 32  
ben grete and moche peples / of whyche somme ben  
harde pressyd / The halle of a grete prynce is comunely

<sup>1</sup> French, "ad ce que, au moyen des parolles d'autrui qu'ils rapportent."—P. M.



Infecte and eschaufed of the breeth of the peple / The  
 vssher smyteth wyth hys Rodde vpon the heedes of  
 them that ben there / Somme entre by forse of threst-  
 4 yng / And other stryue for to resyste / Somme tyme a  
 poure man meschaunt that hath to-fore be sore sette  
 abacke, is further sette forth than an other / And the  
 most fyers and prowde whom a man durste not tofore  
 8 touche / is put further aback, and is in more gretter  
 daunger / There knoweth noman in certayn yf hys  
 astate be sure or not / But who someuer it be, alway he  
 is in doubte of hys fortune / And whan thou wenest to  
 12 be most in grace / Thenne remembre the [wordes] of the  
 poete that sayth / that it is no grete preysynge / for to  
 haue ben in the grace of a grete prynee<sup>1</sup> / And to thende  
 that thou mayst the better knowe now the courte / I  
 16 wyl dyscrysue and dyffyne it to the /

A Prince's hall  
 is infected with  
 people's breath.  
 The Usher hits  
 them on the head  
 with his rod.

No one is safe in  
 his situation.

There's no merit  
 in having a  
 Prince's favour.

The courte, to thende that thou vnderstande it / is  
 a couente of peple that, vnder fayntyse of Comyn wele,  
 assemble hem to gydre for to deceyue eche other / For  
 20 ther be not many of them but that they selle, bye / or  
 eschange somtyme theyr rentes or propre vestementis /  
 For emonge vs of the courte / we be meschaunt<sup>2</sup> and,  
 newfangle / that we bye the other peple / And somm-  
 24 tyme for theyr money we selle to them our humanyte  
 precyous / we bye other / And other bye vs / But we  
 can moche better selle our self to them that haue to  
 doo wyth vs / how moche thenne mayst thou gete /  
 28 that it be certayn / or what sewrte / that it be wythout  
 doubte and wythout peryll / wylt thou goo to the  
 court for to selle or lese / the goodnes of vertues whyche  
 thou haste gotten wythoute the courte / I saye to the,  
 32 whan thou enforceest the to entre / thenne begynnest  
 thou to lese the seynorye of thy self / And thou shalt

The Court is an  
 assemblage of  
 mutual deceivers,

who buy and sell  
 one another.

Any one who  
 enters it, loses the  
 rule of himself,

<sup>1</sup> Principibus placuisse viris non ultima laus est.—Horat.  
 Epist. I, xvii. 35.—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "marchans affaictiez," tricky dealers.—P. M.

14 *Court-Life is evil. The Court is deceitful and ungrateful.*

and gets only  
lies, burdens,  
and troubles.

[\* leaf v. back]

nomore enioye the droytes and ryghtes of thy franchyse  
and liberte / Certes, brother, thou demandest that /  
whyche thou oughtest to deffye / And fyxest thyn  
hope in that / that shal drawe the to peryl and 4  
perdicion / And yf thou come / the courte shal serue  
the with so many contryued lesynges on that one  
parte / And on that other syde, she shal delyuere to  
the so many cures and charges / that thou shalt haue 8  
wythin thy self contynuell bataylle / thought / and  
anguysshes / And for certayn a man may<sup>1</sup> not \*wel  
saye / that he is wel happy / that in tyme of tempeste  
is bought, and in so many contrarytees assayced and 12  
proued /

Court life is  
unstable, and evil.

Keep clear of it !

Stand on the  
bank, and see us  
wilfully drown  
in it.

The Court draws  
simple men to it  
like a Harlot does,  
by false promises.

And yf thou demandest / what is the lyf of them  
of the courte, I answere the, brother / that it is a poure  
rychesse / An habundance myserable / an hyennesse that 16  
falleth / An estate not stable / A sewrte tremblyng /  
And an euyl lyf<sup>2</sup> / And also it may be called of them  
that ben amoureuse, a deserte lyberte<sup>3</sup> / Flee, ye men, flee,  
and holde and kepe you ferre fro suche an assemblee / 20  
yf ye wyll lyue wel and surely / and as peple wel  
assured vpon the Ryuage / beholde vs drowne by our  
own agreement / And mespryse our blyndenes / that  
may ne wylle knowe our propre meschyef / For lyke as 24  
the folysshe maronniers / whyche somtyme cause them  
self to be drowned / by theyr dyspourueyed aduyse-  
ment / In lyke wyse the courte draweth to hym and  
deceyueth the symple men / and maketh them to desire 28  
and coueyte it / lyke as a Rybaulde or a comyn  
womman wel arayed / by her lawhyng and by her  
kyssynge / The courte taketh meryly them that comen  
therto / in vsyng to them false promesses / The courte 32

<sup>1</sup> *Orig.* man.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. "ainsi comme un *pillier* tremblant et une moureuse  
(*al. mortelle*) vie."—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> French, "de ceux qui sont amoureux de sainte liberté."  
Caxton read *deserte* instead of *de sainte*.—P. M.

- lawheth atte begynnyng on them that entre / And  
 after she grymmeth on them / And somtyme byteth  
 them ryght aygrelly / The courte reteyneth the caytyuys  
 4 whiche can not absente and kepe them fro thene / and  
 alday adnewe<sup>1</sup> auctoryse and lorshippe vpon suche as  
 they surmounte / The courte also by errour forgetteth  
 ofte them that beste seruen / And dyspende follyly her  
 8 propre good for tenryche them that ben not worthy /  
 and that haue ryght euyl deseruyd it / And the man is  
 vnhappy that is taken in / and had leuer to perysshe /  
 than to yssue and goo out / And ther to lose hys cours  
 12 of nature / wythout euer to haue hys franchyse and  
 lyberte vntyl hys deth / Beleue surely, brother, and  
 doubte nothyng, that thou excersysest ryght good and  
 ryght prouffitable offyce yf thou canst wel vse thy  
 16 maystryse that thou hast in thy lytyl hous / and thou  
 art and shal be puyssaunt as longe as thou hast, and  
 shal haue of thy self, suffysaunce / For who that hath  
 a smal howshold and lytle meyne, and gouerneth them  
 20 wysely & in peas / he is a lorde / And somoche more is  
 he ewrous & happy as he more frely maynteneth it /  
 As ther is nothyng so precious vnder heuen / as for to  
 be of sufficient comynycacion wyth franchyse<sup>2</sup> /  
 24 O fortunyd men / O blessyd famyllye, where as is  
 honeste \*pouerte that is content with reson, without  
 etyng the fruytes of other mennes labour / O wel happy  
 howse, in whyche is vertue wythout fraude ne barat /  
 28 and whyche is honestly gouerned in the drede of god  
 and good moderacion of lyf / There entre no synnes /  
 There is a true and ryghtful lyf / where as is remorse  
 of euery synne, and where is no noyse / murmure ne  
 32 enuye / of suche lyf enioyeth nature / and in smale<sup>3</sup>  
 eases lyueth she longe / and lytyl and lytyl she cometh

When they come,  
it bites them.

It forgets those  
who serve it,  
and spend their  
money on it.

Be sure, Brother,  
that you are doing  
right in keeping  
to your own  
house.

Freedom is the  
most precious  
thing under  
heaven.

[\* leaf vj.]

Private life is  
rightful,

and comes to an  
honest old age.

<sup>1</sup> French *adroue*, asserts his authority.—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> Absurd! French, "*commutation contre franchise*," exchangeable value for freedom.—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> French *telles*, such.—P. M.

Courtiers get  
weary of life;  
they haste to  
their death.

If, Brother, you  
have begun an  
honourable life,  
don't lose it by  
coming to Court!

to playsaunt age and honeste ende / For as seyth  
Seneke in his tragedyes / Age cometh to late to peple  
of smale howses / whyche lyue in suffysaunce / But  
emong vs courtiours that be seruantes to fortune / we 4  
lyue disordynatly / we wexen old more by force of  
charges than by the nombre of yeres / And by defaulte  
of wel lyuyng, we ben wery of the swetenes of our lyf /  
whyche so moche we desire, and haste to goo to the 8  
deth, the whyche we somoche drede and doubte /  
Suffyse the thenne, broder, to lyue in peas on thy  
partye / & lerne to contente the by our meschiefs / Ne  
mesprise not thy self so moche / that thou take the 12  
deth / for the lyf / <sup>1</sup>Ne leue not the goodes that thou  
shalt be constrayned to brynge / For to seche to gete  
them after wyth grete wayllynges and sorow / whych  
shal be to the, horryble and harde to fynde<sup>1</sup> / Fynably 16  
I praye the / counseylle and warne the / that yf thou  
hast taken<sup>2</sup> ony holy and honeste lyf / that thou wyl  
not goo and lese it / And that thou take away that  
thought, And despyse<sup>3</sup> alle thy wyl for to come to 20  
courte / And be content to wythdrawe the wythin  
thenclose of thy pryue hous / And yf thou haue not in  
tyme passed knowen that thou hast ben ewrous And  
happy / thenne lerne now to knowe it fro hens forth / 24  
And to god I comande the by thys wrytyng, whyche  
gyue the hys grace / Amen.

Thus endeth the Curial made by maystre Alain  
Charretier, Translated thus in Englyssh by Wyllyam 28  
Caxton.

<sup>1-1</sup> Caxton seems to have misunderstood the French: "Ne delaisse pas a faire le bien que tu serois contrainct de reparer par après a grans regrets pour querir ce que te seroit horrible a trouver.—P. M.

<sup>2</sup> French, "se tu prises," if thou appreciatest.—P. M.

<sup>3</sup> French, *disposes* (Du Chesne, *dissipes*), not *despises*.—P. M.

INTRODUCTION TO THE *BALADE*.

BY PROF. PAUL MEYER.

Caxton probably found in his manuscript of the French *Curial* the original of the ballad which he printed at the end of his translation. It is not, however, so far as I can ascertain, included in any manuscript or printed collection of Chartier's works. Thanks to my friend E. Picot's unparalleled knowledge of xv<sup>th</sup> century French poetry, I have been able to trace various copies of it. It seems to have been printed first about the end of the xv<sup>th</sup> cent., in the *Jardin de plaisance et fleur de réthorique* (first edition, Paris, Verard, 1499 or 1500).<sup>1</sup> It appears in Olivier Arnoullet's edition (1520—1530) at fol. 73 v<sup>o</sup>, among some ballads which recent editors have attributed to Villon. From the *Jardin de plaisance*, our ballad was transferred by Jannet to his edition of Villon (Paris, 1867, p. 142). It occurs also, printed from a Brussels MS., in *La danse aux aveugles et autres poésies du x<sup>e</sup> siècle, extraites de la Bibliothèque des Ducs de Bourgogne* (Lille, A. J. Panekoucke, MDCCXLVIII, 12<sup>o</sup>), p. 273, and has been recently edited from a Lyon MS., in a provincial periodical, *Lyon-Revue*, 1886, p. 307. The ballad is anonymous in all these texts, and so it is in MS. Bibl. Nat. Fr., 1881, fol. 218 (xv<sup>th</sup> cent.), and 2206, fol. 106 (early xvi<sup>th</sup>). But in the British Museum MS., Lansdowne 380, fol. 220, it is attributed to Alain Chartier.<sup>2</sup> Still the authorship remains doubtful. It has been supposed by Heer Bijvanck, in his *Specimen d'un essai critique sur les œuvres de François Villon* (Leyde, 1882, in 8<sup>o</sup>), p. 49, that our ballad was the model from which Villon composed his ballad, *Il n'est soing que quant on a faïn* (printed by Bijvanck, p. 219, from a Stockholm MS., and presenting Villon's name in acrostic), but it does not follow that the original is Chartier's, the attribution to this author resting only on the authority of the Lansdowne MS., and to a certain extent on Caxton, who seems to have considered it as Chartier's work. One thing is certain, viz. that it is not Villon's, notwithstanding a certain resemblance to his style, as it is by no means likely that the same poet composed two ballads on the same rhymes.

<sup>1</sup> See Brunet, *Manuel du libraire*, JARDIN.

<sup>2</sup> "Ballade faicte et composee par le doux poete, Maistre Alain Charretier," fo. 218, MS. 380, 8vo.—Catalogue of the Lansdowne MSS., p. 111, col. 2.

Here follows the text of the French ballad from the Paris MS., Bibl. Nat. 1881, with various readings from the *Jardin de plaisance*.<sup>1</sup> The text of MS. 2206 does not differ from that of the *Jardin*; both omit the same verse in the third stanza. The text of the *Danse aux aveugles* is incorrect, and diverges considerably from the one adopted here, as well as from Caxton.

|                                    |    |
|------------------------------------|----|
| Il n'est dangie[r] que de villain, |    |
| N'orgueil que de povre enrechiz,   |    |
| Ne [si] sur chemin que le plain,   |    |
| Ne secours que de vray ami,        | 4  |
| Ne desespoir que de jalousie,      |    |
| Ne hault vouloir que d'amoureux,   |    |
| Ne paistre qu'en grant seignorie,  |    |
| Ne chiere que d'omme joyeux.       | 8  |
| Ne servir que de roy souverain,    |    |
| Ne lait nom que d'omme ahonty,     |    |
| Ne mangier fors quant on a fain,   |    |
| N'emprise que d'omme hardi,        |    |
| Ne povreté que maladie,            | 12 |
| Ne hante[r] que les bons et preux, |    |
| Ne maison que la bien garnie,      |    |
| Ne chiere que d'omme joieux.       | 16 |
| Et n'est richasse qu'estre sain,   |    |
| N'en amours tel bien que mercy,    |    |
| Ne que la mort riens plus certain, |    |
| Ne meilleur chasty que de luy,     | 20 |
| Ne tel tresor que predomme         |    |
| N'engoise qu'en cuer convoiteux    |    |
| Ne puissance ou il n'ait envie,    |    |
| Ne chiere que d'omme joyeux.       | 24 |
| Que voulez vous que je vous die?   |    |
| Il n'est parler que gracieux,      |    |
| Ne louer gens qu' après leur vie   |    |
| Ne chiere que d'omme joyeux.       | 28 |

<sup>1</sup> Indicated as *J.* in the footnotes.

3 [si] from *J.*    5 The line has its proper length in *J.*, where *de* is left out.  
 6 *J.* *N'angoisse que euer convoiteux* (see l. 22).    7 *J.* *Ne puissance ou il n'ait envie.*    9 *J.* *qu' au roy.*    10 MS. *ahontey.*    17 *J.* *Ne r. que d'estre.*  
 20 MS. *chastey.*    22 This line is left out in *J.* (see v. 6).    23 *J.* *Ne paistre qu'en grant seigneurie.*



## [BALADE BY ALAIN CHARTIER.]

## (1)

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| Ther ne is dangyer / but of a vylayn,                | [leaf vj. back]    |
| Ne pride / but of a poure man enryched,              |                    |
| Ne so sure a way / as is the playn,                  | There is no road   |
| Ne socour / but of a trewe frende,                   | 4 so sure as a     |
| Ne despayr / but of Ialousye,                        | level one,         |
| Ne hye corage / but of one Amoureuse,                |                    |
| Ne pestilence <sup>1</sup> / but in grete seygnorye, |                    |
| Ne chyere / but of a man Ioyous.                     | 8 and no cheer but |
|  | a joyous man's.    |

## (2)

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| Ne seruyse / lyke to the kyng souerayn, |                  |
| Ne fowle name / but of a man shamed,    | There is no foul |
| Ne mete / but whan a man hath hungre,   | name, but of a   |
| Ne entrepryse / but of a man hardy,     | 12 man who is    |
| Ne pouerte / lyke vnto maladye,         | shamed.          |
| Ne to haunte / but the good and wyse,   |                  |
| Ne howse / but yf it be wel garnysshed, |                  |
| Ne chyere / but of a man Ioyous.        | 16               |

## (3)

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| Ne ther is no ryChesshe / but in helthe,              | There is no   |
| Ne loue / so good as mercy,                           | riches but in |
| Ne than the deth / nothyng more certayn,              | health.       |
| Ne none better chastysed / than of hym self,          | 20            |
| Ne tresour / lyke vnto wysedom,                       | There is no   |
| Ne anguysshe / but of ay herte coueytous,             | treasure like |
| Ne puyssaunce <sup>2</sup> / but ther men haue enuye, | Wisdom.       |
| Ne chyere / but of a man Ioyous.                      | 24            |

## [Envoy.]

|   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| What wylle ye that I saye?                |                      |
| Ther is no speche / but it be curtoys,    |                      |
| Ne preysyng of men / but after theyr lyf, |                      |
| Ne chyer but of a man Ioyous.             | 28 There is no cheer |
|   | but a joyous         |
|   | man's.               |

Caxton

<sup>1</sup> Caxton may have read *peste*.—P. M.      <sup>2</sup> orig. pnyssaunce

## GLOSSARY.

- adiousteſt, 1/25, urgeſt, bringeſt forward.  
 adnewe, 15/5, renew? But ſee footnote.  
 appetyteth, 3/5, Fr. *Appeter*. To couet, long for, luſt after . . . affect, fancie, deſire much.  
 aſſeged, 11/18, Fr. *Assiégué* . . . Beſieged, beleagnered.  
 aualed, 6/1, debaſed.  
 auctoryſe, *n.* 15/5, authority, oppreſſion. Fr. *vb.* *Autoriser, Authoriser*.  
 aygrely, 15/3, ſharply.  
 barat, 15/27, cheating.  
 benediction, 12/14, good name and fame; good place, office.  
 Caduque, 10/1, Fr. *Caduque*: com. Fraile, caduke, feeble, ruinous, readie to fall, vnable to ſupport it ſelfe.  
 Cenacle, 11/10, Fr. *Cenacle, Senacle*. A height, or ſtorie in a building.  
 conne, 4/26, 8/2, know how to, be able, can.  
 corage, 3/7, heart, ſpirit, mind.  
 courroure, 7/25, courier, ruiner, runner.  
 courtynes, 5/13, ? courts, or cabinets.  
 Curyall, or courtly, 4/29.  
 deffye, 14/3, Fr. *Deffier*. To miſtruſt.  
 deſpoyntement, 5/28, loſs of office, fall.  
 diſacustomme, *vt.* 7/19, put out of cuſtom or habit, change.  
 domageus, 8/19, hurtful.  
 droytes, 10/21, 14/1, Fr. *Droict* . . . right, law . . . equitie . . . a mans due . . . priuiledge . . . power  
 dyspourveyed, 14/26, unconſiderd, ill-considerd, Fr. *Despourueu*.  
 empesſhe, *vt.* 2/1, Fr. *Empescher*. To . . . peſter, trouble, diſturbe, incomber.  
 encloſe, 16/22, enclosure, walls.  
 enſayned, 10/20, hypocritical, untruſtworthy.  
 enhaunce, *vt.* 4/30, 5/18, 6/3, 24, advance, exalt; enhaunſyng, 5/26, 7/1.  
 enioyed, 2/19, glad, rejoiced at.  
 enpayre, 7/3, Fr. *Empirer*, make worſe.  
 enpeſſhyng, 4/3, Fr. *Empeschement* . . . a let, ſtop, hinderance, diſturbance, comber.  
 eſchaufed, 13/1, heated.  
 ewrouſ, 5/15, 15/21, Fr. *Eureux, Heureux* . . . Happie, bleſſed . . . proſperous, luckie, fortunate.  
 exercite, 3/21, Fr. *Exercice* . . . vſe, practiſe, action.  
 fayntyſe, 13/18, pretenſe.  
 fortuné, 15/24, Fr. *Fortané* . . . Fortunate, happie, luckie; alſo, made fortunate, bleſſed with good hap.  
 fraunchyſe, 2/29, 9/15, Fr. *Franchise* . . . freeneſſe, libertie, freedome.  
 fynably, 16/16, Fr. *Finablement, Finalement*. Finally . . . at the laſt; in ſumme, in conelusion, in the end.  
 grymmeth, 6/25, 15/2, looks grim, frowns at.  
 haunte, 19/14, Fr. *Hant r.* To . . . reſort vnto; to be familiar with; to conuerſe, or com-  
 merce with.  
 indewly, 11/3, unduly.  
 machyne, *vt.* 12/9, ſcheme; Fr. *Machine*. To machinate; frame; contrive, deuise; to  
 practiſe, plot, conſpire againſt.  
 meſchaunte, *a.* 2/33, 14/23, 13/22, Fr. *Meschant*. Who has no chancee, unlucky, miſerable.  
 meſchef, 5/25, miſhap, ill fortune.  
 meſpryement, 3/9, undervaluing, diſdain.  
 miſpryſeſt, 3/7, Fr. *Mespriser*. To diſeſteeme, contemne, diſdaine, deſpiſe, neglect, make  
 light of, ſet nought by.  
 mondaynes, 9/31, Fr. *Mondain* . . . mundane, worldlie, ſecular.  
 nouryſſhe, 11/27, Fr. *Nourrisse, Nourrice*: *f.* A Nurſe.  
 ouerſeen, 3/13, deceived, miſtaken.  
 ouerthrowe, *vt.* 6/12, tumble over, upſet.  
 pourewe, 3/16, 5/32, Fr. *Poursuivre* (an old word), as *Poursuivre* . . . eagerly to follow or  
 choſe; earneſtly to proceed in, or goe on with.  
 reffuſe, 9/20, Fr. *Refuser*. Refuſe.  
 reſteth, 5/19, there remains.  
 ſaye, *n.* 11/11, talk, goſſip; or *vb.* (hearing men) talk.  
 ſurmounte, 13/6, Fr. *Surmonter*. To ſurmount, ſurpaſſe, get before . . . to ſubdue, vanquiſh,  
 ouercome.  
 thene, 15/4, thence?  
 tonne, *n.* 9/18, barrel.  
 vnpourueydy, 11/24, without forethought, unpremeditatedly, Fr. *Pourueoir, Pourvoir*, to  
 provide.  
 verbal, or ful of wordes, 10/21.  
 vermayne, *n.* 9/3, bugs, &c.  
 wythdraught, *n.* 7/23, withdrawing-room.



492  
11

# Caxton's *Eneydos*

1490

ENGLISHT FROM THE FRENCH *LIURE DES ENEYDES*, 1483.

EDITED BY

THE LATE W. T. CULLEY, M.A., OXFORD,

AND

F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A., CAMB.,

HON. DR. PHIL. BERLIN,

WITH

A SKETCH OF THE OLD FRENCH *ROMAN D'ÉNÉAS*

BY

DR. SALVERDA DE GRAVE.

LONDON :

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

1890.

Extra Series,

LVII.

---

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

# CONTENTS.

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| PREFACE, BY THE LATE W. T. CULLEY ... ..  | v    |
| AFTERWORDS, BY F. J. FURNIVALL ... ..   | xx   |
| ON THE FRENCH PROSE <i>ENEYDES</i> AND THE OLD VERSE <i>ROMAN</i><br><i>D'ÉNÉAS</i> BY DR. SALVERDA DE GRAVE ... .. | xxiv |
| EXTRACTS FROM THE ITALIAN PROSE VERSION OF THE<br><i>ÆNEID</i> IN 1476 ... ..                                       | xxix |
| CAXTON'S <i>PROLOGUE</i> ... ..   | 1    |
| „ TABLE OF CONTENTS ... ..  | 5    |
| HIS <b>ENEYDOS</b> ... ..   | 10   |
| INDEX AND GLOSSARY, BY MR. THOMAS AUSTIN ... ..   | 167  |
| COLLATION OF CAXTON'S ENGLISH WITH ITS FRENCH ORIGINAL<br>AS SHOWN IN THE <i>LIURE DES ENEYDES</i> , 1483 ... ..    | 188  |



## PREFACE.<sup>1</sup>

THIS curious little book was printed by Caxton, and specially dedicated to Prince Arthur, eldest son of King Henry VII. It is a translation into English by Caxton himself of a French version of the 'Aeneid,' and is a folio, as usual without any title-page; but Caxton in his colophon at the end gives the date of the translation as June 22nd, 1490, that being probably the period at which he completed it. There are, according to Mr. Blades in his 'Biography and Typography of William Caxton,' eighteen or nineteen copies extant, of which three are in the British Museum, three at St. John's College, Oxford, one at Trinity College, Cambridge, one in the Hunterian Library, Glasgow, and the rest in private libraries. The first and eighth leaves out of a total of eighty-six are blank, but the first is not reckoned in the signature, and the Prologue begins on the second, signed **Aj**. The lines are spaced to an even length, measuring four and three-quarter inches, and thirty-one go to a full page. No other edition is known. Caxton englished his *Eneydos* either from the French '*liure des eneydes*' printed at Lyons by Guillaume Le Roy on Sept. 30, 1483, or from a more correct MS. of it. A fairly full collation of Mr. Alfred Huth's copy of the French print has been made by Dr. Furnivall—misprints and all—and will be found at p. 188-214 below.

As to the great English printer and his other works nothing need here be said, but we may add a few words on the work before us. It begins with a Prologue by Caxton himself, and ends with a colophon of his own as well, in which he gives the date of the translation. The Prologue is amusing, especially for his perplexity as to the style of words to be used in his translation. No doubt the English language was changing very rapidly in Caxton's time, but in his Prologue he uses most plain and excellent English, quite readable at the present

<sup>1</sup> By Mr. Culley, with a few corrections on pages v—vii by me.—F. J. F.

day, and very different to that in which 'Piers Plowman,' for instance, was written, not so very much over a century before. The same can hardly be said of the translation, but that seems to be (to some extent) the fault of his original. From a remark of Caxton's in his Prologue, the French version appears to have been written by a priest, who says that he translated it out of Latin into French. On the whole, Caxton adhered faithfully to his original, as in the latter part of the Prologue he states he has done, but he often put two words for one, and the language of the 'Eneydos' is frequently turgid and exaggerated, epithets being heaped on epithets in a marvellous and bewildering manner, and the tautological repetition of words is wonderful: see in *Capitulo* x. 39/9, "grete assaultes, effortes and bataylles;" in *Cap.* xiv. 52/9, "thondres, lyghtnynges, choruscaycions and merveyllouse tourmentes;" *Cap.* xv. 59/19, "had construed, edified and made" (*Fr. construit et edifie*). Though the book is not in a general way difficult to read, the construction is curious, as Caxton very often translates the French idiom literally,—as, by the bye, Lord Berners often does in his translation of the French Romances,—and he frequently uses the French words without rendering them into English at all. No better example of the former can be found than in *Cap.* xvi., p. 63-4, when Mercury addresses Aeneas as "Man effemynate wythout honour ravysshed in to dilectacion femynyne," or of the latter than the use (25/35) of "syncopysed" for fainted, or elsewhere (46/1) of "orages" for storms, and "suffounge" (87/26) for smoke or fumigate. It is needless to multiply examples which any reader can easily see for himself.

Though Caxton tells us that he translated his French original, the 'Eneydes,' most carefully into English, that French original was by no means a literal translation of Virgil's 'Aeneid,' but rather an extremely free paraphrase,—with importations from Boccaccio and other authors, omissions and abridgments,—not only telling the story of Aeneas in quite a different way to the 'Aeneid,' but occasionally giving an altogether different account. It is more or less interesting to trace these differences, and to do so will serve as a preliminary digest of the tale. Instead of being in twelve books like the 'Aeneid,' the 'Eneydos' is divided into sixty-five ill-arranged

chapters of varying length. Its story begins quite differently from the 'Aeneid,' the first book of which is occupied with the shipwreck of Aeneas, caused by Aeolus letting loose the winds at the instigation of Juno; the kind reception of him and his companions at Carthage by Dido, together with the promise made by Jupiter to Venus of Aeneas's future greatness in Italy; Venus's appearance to Aeneas after his shipwreck; her brief recital to him of Dido's story, and her changing Cupid into the form of Aeneas's son Ascanius to inspire Dido with love for Aeneas; while the second and third books are filled with Aeneas's recital to Dido of the story of the destruction of Troy, and of his six years' wanderings. In the 'Eneydos' (French, *les Eneydes*: Caxton turned this plural into a genitive singular), after a brief prologue by the unnamed author, the first subject handled is Troy, which is said to have been built by Priam. This is odd, as everywhere else Priam is stated to have been the last king of Troy. Here he is said to be son of Laomedon, and descended from Dardanus, son of Jupiter and Electra, which is the old Greek tradition, but it is not mentioned in the 'Aeneid.' Then comes a notice of the siege of Troy by the Greeks under Agamemnon, when Priam,—that his family should not become extinct in case of defeat,—sends his son Polydorus to Plasmator (Polymestor), King of Thracia (Thrace), who, on the decline of Priam's fortune, murders Polydorus and buries him in the sand by the seashore. The first chapter ends by the burning of Troy by the Greeks, only the gate Stex being left. In the second Cap. the gate Stex takes fire, and Eneas flies, bearing his father Anchises, leading his son Yolus (Iulus), and accompanied by Creusa his wife. (No mention is made of Simon and the wooden horse, Laocoon and the snakes, or the loss of Creusa, so particularly described by Aeneas to Dido.) Eneas and the Trojan refugees reach the port of Simois and put to sea, pass Anchandron (Antander) and the forest of Yde, and arrive in Thracia, where they begin to build a city, and because the building goes on slowly they hold a sacrifice. This is on the spot where Polydorus is buried; and on Eneas attempting to cut down some of the bushes to crown his altar with, blood issues from them; and on his trying to tear them up, Polydorus speaks, tells his sad fate, and informs

Eneas that he must not remain there, but that the gods have ordained Italy as his future home. The third, fourth, and fifth chapters are occupied by this and the obsequies of Polydorus, after which the Trojans go to sea. All is described much as by Aeneas himself to Dido in Book iii. of the 'Aeneid,' but at very much greater length, and a considerable portion of the story as told by Virgil is here omitted, namely, in the first place, that which recounts, as related by Aeneas himself to Dido, his voyages to Delos and Crete, the oracle of Delos and the prophecy of the Trojan gods, the visit to the Strophades, the Harpies, and the prophecy of Celæno, though this is referred to long after in Cap. xxxiv., where it is attributed to Anchises. No mention is made either of how Aeneas finds Andromache in Epirus, one of the most touching scenes in the 'Aeneid,' of his interview with Helenus, of the arrival of the Trojans in Sicily, or of the death of Anchises, though Anchises is evidently considered as being dead when the Trojans arrive in Italy, and his tomb in Sicily is mentioned in Cap. xxx. Aeneas is not mentioned again till the tenth Cap., and in Cap. vi. we come to Dido, leaving Aeneas at sea, and we are told of the two different stories, one by Boccaccio, the other by Virgil. Boccaccio's story occupies Caps. vi., vii., viii. It does not differ seriously from Virgil's, though told at much greater length, up to the foundation of Carthage; in both we are told of Dido's royal birth, her marriage to Acerbas, otherwise Sichæus, the murder of the latter by her avaricious brother the King Pygmalion, her exodus with a body of followers and her husband's riches, her arrival in Libya, her purchase of land, and the founding of Carthage. The principal differences are, that Dido is said by Virgil to have been made aware by a vision of the murder of her husband, which Pygmalion had long concealed, and that Virgil says nothing of Dido's visit to Cyprus on her way to Libya, which is told at length in "Jhonn bhocace's" story, as quoted by the writer of the 'Eneydos'; but then Virgil gives Dido's antecedents briefly. The two accounts of Dido's death, however, differ *in toto* as to the cause, though not quite so as to the manner, for that taken from Boccaccio relates that a neighbouring king asked Dido in marriage, threatening destruction to Carthage if he were refused, and Dido having been inveigled by



her subjects into a statement that it was noble for a person to die for his country, to solve her difficulties ascends an altar and sacrifices herself in public. (Her self-murder as described in the 'Aeneid' is of course secret.) This description of Dido's life and death is taken from Boccaccio's 'Falles of Princes.' The Latin copy of this work in the Bodleian Library is entitled "Johannis Bocacii de Certaldis historiographi prologus in libros de casibus virorum illustrium incipit," and is dated in MS. "Vlmæ 1473." It is not divided into books or chapters, nor are the pages numbered, but our story begins on or about page 46, and is headed "de Dydone regina." An early printed translation in the Bodleian is thus entitled, "Here begynneth the boke calledde John bochas deservinge the falle of princis princesses and other nobles trāslated ito Englissh by John ludgate mōke of the monastery of seint edmūdes Bury at the comāndemēt of the worthy prince humfrey duke of Gloucestre beginnyng at adam and endinge with kinge john take prisoner in fraunce by prince Edward." R. Pynson 1494. Our story comes in the second book, and is headed "Howe Dido quene of Cartage slough hir silf for conservaeyon of her chastitie." Wayland's later edition—(undated) beginning thus, "The Tragedies gathered by Jhon Bochas, of all such Princes as fell from theyr estates throughe the mutability of Fortune since the creacion of Adam until his time: wherein may be seen what vices bring menne to destruccion wyth notable warninges howe the like may be auoided. Translated into Englysh by John Lidgate, Monke of Burye. Imprinted at London by John Wayland, at the signe of the Sunne over against the Conduite in Fletestrete,"—gives the story at Book ii. Cap. xiii., "Howe Dydo quene of Cartage slough herself for conseruacion of her chastitie." The writer of the 'Eneydos' of course wrote from much earlier copies, probably manuscripts, but we seem to have no clue as to the period. The story given in the 'Eneydos' as Boccaccio's was taken by Boccaccio, or the authority Boccaccio followed, from Justin, who gives the story of Dido, otherwise Elissa, and the founding of Carthage, in the fourth, fifth and sixth chapters of Book xviii. of his 'Historiæ.' The facts are almost precisely the same as given by Boccaccio and quoted in the 'Eneydos,' but the terse Latin of Justin

contrasts strangely with the insufferable verbosity of the French writer, who exaggerates most monstrously the brief speeches of Dido as given by Justin. It may be remarked that Justin does not use the name Dido, but only Elissa; also that the writer of the '*Eneydos*' seems to mistake Fenycée as applied to Dido as being really her name, like Elissa. Virgil, of course, when he speaks of her as Phœnissa in Book iv. of the '*Aeneid*' merely refers to her race. Justin tells us that the African king who sought Elissa (Dido) in marriage was named Hiarbas, which name appears of course in the '*Aeneid*.' The '*Eneydos*' omits his name, and only tells us that he was King of the '*musitaynes* or *momydes*.' This may be thus explained: Justin calls him King of the Maxitani, probably a variation of Mauritani, and corrupted by the French scribe or the authority he followed into '*musitaynes*'; and Eustathius says that he was King of the Mazices, otherwise called Numidians, otherwise Nomades, the wandering tribes, which last appellation appears to have been mis-spelt as to the initial letter by the French author. The author of the '*Eneydos*,' too, in comparing the two accounts, seems to think that Virgil must have been right and Boccaccio wrong, and wonders why the latter should tell a different tale from Virgil. Of course if there is any truth at all in the story of Dido and her founding Carthage, Justin's account is far the more likely to be correct. He says that Carthage was founded seventy-two years before Rome, *i. e.* in the year B.C. 825, according to common computation. Velleius Patereulus puts the interval at sixty-five years; Livy, as we gather from the epitome of his fifty-first book, at ninety-three (for he says that Carthage was destroyed in the seven-hundredth year after its foundation, which would place the latter in the year B.C. 846); Solinus at one hundred and twenty-nine; and Josephus apparently at about one hundred and fifty. Against this testimony we can scarcely set Appian's story of the great antiquity of Carthage, which probably is either a myth or refers to an earlier settlement, for it would seem that that enterprising people the Phœnicians had at least one settlement earlier than Carthage on the Libyan coast. All dates in these periods are more or less uncertain, but that commonly accepted for the destruction of Troy is B.C. 1184; and the seventh year of Aeneas's wanderings, which is

that in which he comes to Africa, would be 1177; so it is plain that Virgil relegates Dido to those remote ages merely to make an interesting incident in his own tale without the smallest regard to history—if indeed the legends of those early days can be called history.

In Cap. ix., after a eulogium on Dido's chastity, we return to our former story. Juno's implacable hatred of the Trojans impels her to persuade Yolus (Æolus) and Neptunus to raise a dreadful storm around Aeneas's fleet. In the 'Æneid' it is only Æolus to whom Juno applies, and it is Neptune who, roused by the din, rebukes the winds and calms the storm. In Cap. x. the storm breaks on the Trojan fleet, apparently coming from Thrace, as no mention is made of the intervening events related by Aeneas to Dido, or of their visit to Sicily, and drives it shattered on the coast of Libya near Carthage, where Dido receives Aeneas and his shipwrecked comrades kindly. No mention is made of Aeneas's recital of his adventures contained in Books ii. and iii. of the 'Æneid,' but yet here the stories of the 'Æneid' and the 'Eneydos' unite, and they go along after this more or less side by side, with certain discrepancies, which it will be curious to observe. The fourth book of the 'Æneid' is of course occupied with Dido's unhappy love for Aeneas, his departure, and her melancholy death. The corresponding chapters of the 'Eneydos' are the eleventh to the twenty-ninth, and are very long, verbose, and exaggerated. For instance, Dido's confession of her love to her sister, and the encouraging reply of the latter, are most lengthily and exaggerated paraphrases of their words as told in the 'Æneid.' The events as told in the 'Eneydos' are pretty much the same as in the 'Æneid,' but are very differently described. The description of the hunt is much exaggerated, and like that of a mediæval gathering; and that of the storm is told at much greater length; while the lamentation of the nymphs when Aeneas and Dido meet in the cave, one of the most picturesque pieces in the 'Æneid,' is omitted. The account of Fame is much enlarged, and the prayer of Iarbas to Jupiter slightly extended. There is also a long account of the meeting of Mercury and Atlas, when the former is on his way to warn Aeneas that he must leave Carthage, which is very briefly noticed in the 'Æneid.' Mnestheus, Sergestus, and Cloanthus are called Nestor, Sergeste, and

Cloant. In Cap. xviii. Dido's entreaty to Aeneas is given with much verbosity and repetition, and Aeneas in his reply, when he puts the responsibility of his departure on Apollo, is made to say, "the god Appollo of the citee of tymbre," whereas the epithet used in the 'Aeneid' is "Grynæus" (v. 345); Thymbræus is, however, used as an epithet of Apollo in lib. iii. v. 85, which was perhaps in the French scribe's mind at the time. Dido's address to Aeneas, Caps. xix. and xx. ('Aeneid,' vv. 365-386), is again dreadfully exaggerated and elongated, as is the comparison of the Trojan sailors to ants, Cap. xxi., 'Aeneid,' v. 401. There is a curious mistake in the heading of Cap. xxii. which runs, "How eneas brake the oken tree for the grete love of Dido." It refers of course to the comparison of Aeneas to an ancient oak in a tempest, 'Aeneid,' v. 441; this is very fairly rendered in the 'Eneydos.' The same cannot be said of the description of the witch of Atlas and her incantations, briefly noticed in the 'Aeneid,' but given at immense length in the 'Eneydos,' and the same may be said of Dido's invocation of vengeance on the Trojans and prophecy of a future avenger, Cap. xxvii., 'Aeneid,' vv. 610-625. Dido's visions and delusions, too, are told at immense length compared with the original; and the comparison of her sufferings to those of Orestes in v. 471 is extended to many lines. The beautiful passage at the end of Book iv. of the 'Aeneid,' 693-705, where Juno sends Iris to cut the fatal lock and release Dido's struggling spirit, is transformed into a strange contest between Iris and Proserpine for the possession of Dido's soul, with a long description of Proserpine and her power over mortals, and a really ridiculous story about Proserpine's hair, nothing of which appears in the 'Aeneid,' and it would be difficult to say where the writer of the 'Eneydos' got hold of it. It looks as if he had read an edition of Virgil with copious notes on the superstition of Proserpine's cutting the fatal lock, and tacked them on to the story with his own additions and inventions! Iarbas appears in both Justin's story and Virgil's, and in both as a Moorish king and a suitor for Dido's hand; in the former he is a fierce suitor whose imperious conduct leads directly to Dido's death; in the latter he is merely "despectus Iarbas," despite his birth as son of Jove and Garamantis, and exercises little influence on the

tale. It is much the same where he appears in the 'Eneydos,' Cap. xv., etc. There he is said to be son of Jove and Nyuyse, goddess of fountains, and daughter of Eazymas. He is said, however, by Ovid ('Fasti,' iii. 553), and Silius Italicus ('de Bello Punico,' viii. 79), to have occupied Carthage forcibly after Aeneas's departure and Dido's death, when Anna fled and landed in Italy, where she was received by Aeneas then married to Lavinia, and finally became a goddess under the title of Anna Perenna. Ovid in his 'Heroides' (vii. 125), represents Dido as in fear of Iarbas. In Marlow's tragedy of 'Dido, Queen of Carthage,' Iarbas, in despair, commits suicide along with Dido, and Anna, enamoured of Iarbas, does the same, but this is probably only the invention of the playwright.

After the fourth book, events are told in the 'Eneydos' in pretty much the same sequence as in the 'Aeneid,' but still there are considerable differences in places. The fifth book of the 'Aeneid' is occupied by Aeneas's being driven by a storm on the coast of Sicily, his kind reception as before by Acestes, a very long detail of the games at the tomb of Anchises, the attempt of the Trojan women to burn the ships, the founding of a new Troy for the aged and infirm and those who wish to go no farther, the departure for Italy, and the death of Palinurus. Cap. xxx. notices the storm and the arrival in Sicily very briefly, and only just mentions the games which are described at such length and so interestingly in the 'Aeneid.' Cap. xxxi. begins with a brief notice of the attempt to burn the ships, the saving of which is attributed to Ascanius, whereas in the 'Aeneid,' though Ascanius is said to be the first to arrive on the scene, it is Aeneas who saves them by his prayer to Jove, who answers by a thunderstorm sufficiently violent to quench the flames. Four ships are said to be burned in the 'Aeneid,' three in the 'Eneydos.' Cap. xxxi. then briefly notices the foundation of New Troy, afterwards called Acestre, after Acestes, king of the country. In the 'Aeneid' the place is simply called Acesta, and it is to stand in the place of Ilium to those who remain in it: it seems afterwards to have been called Segesta. By the bye, the 'Eneydos' merely says that Acestes was of Trojan lineage, and does not mention his being the son of the river-god Criniscus and a Trojan damsel, as stated in the 'Aeneid,' v. 38. After



briefly noticing the departure from Sicily and the death of Palinurus, Cap. xxxi. says the Trojans landed on an isle called Tulyola, where was a city called Thetys, after a nephew of Eneas, who settled in it after conquering Italy. Here it says Dædalus took refuge when he flew from Crete, and here begins a long digression on the history of Dædalus, Minos of Crete, his wife (here called Pasyfa), the Labyrinth, Aegeus, Theseus, and Ariadne, here called Adryane, ending with the flight of Dædalus and the death of Icarus (here called 'sycarus'), only Dædalus at the end is said to have arrived in Sardayne. This occupies as well all Cap. xxxii., and this long story is all founded on a very few lines in the beginning of Book vi. of the 'Aeneid,' vv. 15—30, where Dædalus is briefly mentioned, and is said to have founded the temple of Apollo at Cumæ, and dedicated his wings there to the god.

The sixth book of the 'Aeneid' begins with Aeneas's arrival at Cumæ. This is called in the 'Eneydos,' Cap. xxxii., the "yle of Eulyola," as in xxxi. Tulyola. This may have some connection with "Euboicis Cumarum allabitur oris," 'Aen.' vi. 2, as Cumæ in Italy was founded by joint colonies from Chalcis in Eubœa and Cumæ in Asiatic Aeolia, led by Megasthenes and Hippocles respectively, and Eulyola may be intended to bear a resemblance to Euboicæ. The rest of the sixth book is entirely occupied by Aeneas's visit to the Cumæan Sibyl, and his descent into Avernus. The latter event is very briefly noticed by the writer of the 'Eneydos,' who expresses his disbelief in it. He evidently looks on the 'Aeneid' as in the main a true story, and thinks it marred by the introduction of such an improbable occurrence. His remarks on the matter in the beginning of Cap. xxxiii. are very amusing.

The two last lines of Book vi. of the 'Aeneid' bring Aeneas from Cumæ to Caieta. Book vii. describes his arrival in the Tiber, and after an account of Latinus, his kingdom and family, and of Turnus, goes on to describe the fulfilment of Celæno's prophecy, the embassy to Latinus and its gracious reception, the evil influence of Juno on Amata and Turnus, the accidental wounding by Ascanius of Sylvia's deer, the consequent skirmish and commencement of hostilities, and winds up with a long account of Latin chiefs who rally round Turnus's standard. To this book correspond more

or less Caps. xxxiii.-ix. of the 'Eneydos,' but with many discrepancies. No mention is made of Juno, Alecto, or Amata. The few lines at v. 45 of Book vii. describing Latinus's descent are magnified into a sort of chronology or history of Italy from Latinus's predecessors to Julius Cæsar! This is in Cap. xxxiv.

There are said to have been seven Italian kings reigning for one hundred and fifty years up to the time of Aeneas's arrival, but only five are given, Janus, Saturnus (distinctly said not to be the father of Jupiter), Pyrrus, Faunus, and Latinus. Virgil mentions Latinus, Faunus, Picus, and Saturn. There are also said to be seven kings reigning after Romulus, but only the usual six are named, their names being wonderfully spelt. The period allotted to them is much the same as given by Livy and others, viz. two hundred and forty years. Aeneas lands (Cap. xxxiii.) at the mouth of the river Tonyre, and the fulfilment of the prophecy of Celæno is here mentioned, though it had not been mentioned before in the 'Eneydos,' and is here attributed to Anchises, not to the Harpy. It is true that Aeneas on this occasion does say that Anchises had explained the mystery of the prophecy to him, which might lead to the error of attributing to him the prophecy itself. In Cap. xxxv. we are told, as in the 'Aeneid,' that Latinus called his capital Laurence (Laurens), from a laurel growing in the palace, but we are also told that it was first called Lamyra, from Lavynus, King Latinus's elder brother. This story is told by Servius, who calls it Lavinum, from Lavinus, but whence he got it is not known, and it looks like a confusion with the Lavinium founded afterwards by Aeneas in honour of Lavinia, daughter of Latinus. It is not in Virgil at all. In Cap. xxxvi. Ilioneus is called 'dyoneus.' Turnus (Cap. xxxiii.) is quaintly described as "a bachelor of ytalie—y<sup>t</sup> was moche preu and hardy." In Cap. xxxviii. is described the fray caused by Ascanius inadvertently wounding Sylvia's tame deer. Sylvia is here described as the daughter of Turnus, and the young man slain in the fray as son of Turnus; in the 'Aeneid,' Sylvia and the youth (Almo) are children of Tyrrheus, shepherd to Latinus; and Turnus's children, here mentioned as two sons and a fair daughter, do not appear at all in the 'Aeneid,' where Turnus is introduced as quite a young man. The

host gathered by Turnus as described at length in vv. 647—815, ‘Aen.’ Book vii. is mentioned very briefly in Cap. xxxix. as of lombardye, “to scane, and the valles of ytalie,” and no one is named save Camilla, here called ‘canulla,’ and said to come from ‘prouerne’ (Privernum), and to be daughter of ‘medabus’ (Metabus).

Book viii. of the ‘Aeneid’ begins briefly with Turnus’s embassy to Diomede to ask help, and then gives at length Aeneas’s journey on a similar errand to Evander, an Arcadian settled at Mount Palatine on the Tiber, at the instigation of Father Tiber who appears to him in his sleep. Evander receives him kindly, tells him the story of Cacus, promises him his son Pallas with four hundred horse, and sends him on to the Tyrrhenes, who have just expelled their king Mezentius for his cruelty. It winds up with Venus giving Aeneas a splendid set of arms which she persuades Vulcan to forge for him, and on the shield is engraven the future story of Rome, much to Aeneas’s astonishment. Caps. xl. and xli. of the ‘Eneydos’ correspond to this, but tell the tale briefly, omitting the story of Cacus and the expedition to the Tyrrhenes. Evander is said to be nephew of King Thalamus of Archade, to have left his native land on account of having killed his father by advice of his mother Vyceta, to have settled on mounte Palatyne on the river Tonyre, and to have a town called Palence, after King Palantyne of Archade. He is said to have a daughter, Palencia, and a son, Palas, whom he gives to Eneas with four thousand men. His wife is also mentioned as grieving over Palas’s departure. Nothing of this appears in Virgil, where Evander’s mother is Carmentis,—his wife from vv. 158, 159 of Book xi. is evidently dead,—and no daughter is spoken of. His city, Pallanteum, is named after an ancestor, Pallas: some historians say it was after a similarly named city in Arcadia, from whence he came. Elsewhere we find that he had two daughters, Rome and Dyna, but they are not mentioned in the ‘Aeneid,’ which seems to imply that Pallas was an only child. Evander’s parting address to his son is very correctly translated in the ‘Eneydos,’ but no mention is made of Venus’s gift to Aeneas.

The principal events of Book ix. are Turnus’s attack on the Trojans, instigated by Juno, during Aeneas’s absence, the burning



of the Trojan ships and their wonderful metamorphosis into sea-nymphs, the fierce conflict round the Trojan camp, and the sally of Nisus and Euryalus. This is told with no important variation except that we are not told that Turnus got inside the Trojan camp (ix. vv. 725—818), and Nisus (Nysus) and Euryalus (Eryalus) are represented as being mounted. The names are often wonderfully spelt; Volseus, who intercepts Nisus and Euryalus, is called Boleus. Can the mis-spelling arise from a mistaken sound, as if the story had been written down from oral repetition, not copied from a book? Some other of the wonderful variations from the Latin names suggest the same idea. No mention is made of Juno's message by Iris to Turnus, or the metamorphosis of the Trojan ships, though their burning is described: similarly the Council of the Gods mentioned in the beginning of Book x. is omitted in Cap. xlviii., which corresponds to it. Such incidents, the scribe of the 'Eneydos' evidently thinks unworthy of a true story such as he is translating from Virgil. The spectral image of Aeneas which, by retreating, lures Turnus from the battle and on board the empty ship that carries him with the current to Ardea is attributed, not to Juno, as by Virgil, but to the Fiend! Here we may notice that Ardea is called 'darda,' and Daunus, Turnus's father, 'daryus.'

The events of the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth books are pretty faithfully followed in the 'Eneydos,' viz. Aeneas's return with Pallas and the Tyrrhenes under Tarchon, the battle, Ascanius's sally, the deaths of Pallas, Mazentius, and Lausus, the truce, the return of the embassy to Diomedes, Latinus's council, the second battle and death of Camilla, the arrangement for single combat between Aeneas and Turnus, the renewal of hostilities, the suicide of Amata, the single combat between Aeneas and Turnus, and the death of the latter. The story is however differently told in the 'Eneydos' in a few particulars. Aeneas's visit to the Tyrrhenes is not mentioned; nor is their army which returns with him, and is described at length in the 'Aeneid,' Book x. vv. 165—212, mentioned either, except to say that Aeneas returns with "moche folke" from Palence, viz. thirty ships under King Carton; and the fact is mentioned that Carton's (Tarchon's) ship was too big ("to grete") to get into the haven.

Virgil's account is that it ran aground and came to pieces. The deaths of Lausus and Mezentius are very correctly taken from Virgil. Of course the meeting of Aeneas with his own ships in the shape of nymphs is ignored, as is the sending of Opis by Diana to avenge the death of Camilla, here called Canulla. Her slayer Aruns is called Anyus, and is said to be slain by a maid in revenge for her mistress's death. Chloreus, whom Camilla was pursuing when struck by Aruns, is called Cleonis, and is said to have been a bishop in Troy ! In the 'Aeneid' he is "sacer Cybele—olimque sacerdos." Diana's long account of Camilla and her father to Opis, vv. 532-594, is also omitted. In Cap. lv., on the renewal of hostilities, Turnus makes "bussynes and trompettes to be blowen." This is a translation of

"Bello dat signum rauca cruentum  
Buccina."—'Aeneid,' lib. xi. v. 475.

In Cap. lviii. the Latin queen Amata, here called Amatha, is at last mentioned as endeavouring to dissuade Turnus from single combat with Aeneas, and her death is mentioned in Cap. lxi. The interference of the gods, which plays so important a part in Virgil's story, is still ignored by the scribe of the 'Eneydos,' though admitted previously in Book iv. Juturna's interference at the instigation of Juno (Book xii. v. 221) in the arrangements for the single combat is left out, and all the blame for the resumption of hostilities laid on Tolumnius, here called Tholomæus, "a deuynowre," nor is her appearance as Turnus's charioteer (v. 467) mentioned. Most of the fighting, however, is pretty faithfully copied from the 'Aeneid,' and so is the death of Turnus in Cap. lxii., which winds up immediately after Turnus dies with the entirely extraneous sentence—

"All thus was conquered all Lombardy and the pucelle Laayne by the hande of eneas."

Here the story of the 'Aeneid' ends, but the 'Eneydos' contains three more chapters, giving a history of Aeneas and Lavinia, and the Alban kings that succeeded them. This requires little notice. Three Roman writers have left lists of the Alban kings, viz. Livy, Dionysius of Halicarnassus, and, oddly enough, Ovid, in his 'Metamorphoses': Dionysius alone gives the length of their reigns; and all three accounts differ in the order of succession and names of these kings.

The account given in Cap. lxxv. of the 'Eneydos' differs from all the others both in order of succession and names of the kings, and gives the length of the reigns differently to Dionysius ; moreover, the reigns as given in both fall far short of the four hundred and seven years given both in Caps. lxxv. and xxxiv. as the period from Aeneas to Romulus. As to the history of that period as given here it is impossible to offer any opinion, as no two historians give a similar account. As Livy says (lib. i. cap. 3), "quis enim rem tam veterem pro certo affirmet?" It is curious to see the term Lombardy, belonging to a different place and a very different period, applied to the Latin kingdom, and the attempt to reconcile the chronology of the Alban period with that of contemporary states is interesting. According to the scribe of the 'Eneydos' the Israelitish Exodus from Egypt took place about one hundred and forty years before the time usually ascribed to it, and there is a similar difference as to King David ; as to the date assigned to Homer, the scribe of the 'Eneydos' is perhaps as likely to be right as any one else. It ends very abruptly.

On the whole the 'Eneydos,' as englisht by Caxton from the French *Eneydes*, is a romance mainly following the outlines of Virgil's story in the 'Aeneid,' but by no means a translation of it, and the writer of the French original seems to have possessed some historical information which he interpolates from time to time, by way of, in his opinion no doubt, improving the story. These interpolations we have in some measure endeavoured to trace. As to the date we know nothing, except that it must have been written later than Boccaccio's 'Fall of Princes,' and Boccaccio died in 1376. In being founded on an existing work, it differs from many of the early French Romances, which for the most part are either pure fable or founded on legends little better than mythical.<sup>1</sup> We are in equal ignorance as to the author, but from different little things in the tale, as well as what Caxton says in the beginning of his Prologue, the writer was probably an ecclesiastic.

<sup>1</sup> Like Virgil's 'Aeneid,' may we say?—F.

*AFTERWORDS BY F. J. FURNIVALL.*

OUR kind helper Mr. Culley unhappily died from a disease in the throat, before he could revise his Preface, written before—by the help of Prof. P. Meyer, Brunet's *Manuel*, 1814, and the Huth Catalogue—I had found out the wrongness of Mr. Blades's statement that no copy of the French original of the *Eneydos* was known. When Mr. Culley—who had always taken interest in the E. E. Text Soc.—told me that he had kept up his Oxford classics, I askt him to edit for us this Caxton's *Eneydos* which Mrs. A. Furnivall had copied for the Society. As I agreed to read it for him with Caxton's print, revise his side-notes when needed, and get the index and glossary made for him by Mr. T. Austin, Mr. Culley agreed to help us, and he saw the text through the press. When he came to London to be under his doctor, he was too ill to collate the English with its French original, and so I did it,<sup>1</sup> Mr. Alfred H. Huth continuing the kindness which his father always showd me, and for which I heartily thank him. Would that the Ashburnhams were like the Huths, Spencers, Crawford's, and the other generous owners who so freely grant the use of their treasures to us literary antiquaries!

As Dr. L. Kellner will treat thoroughly Caxton's syntax in his Introduction to our old printer's *Blanchardyn*—which I hope will go out with this *Eneydos*, for the text has all been long in type—I need do nothing more here than refer the reader to my collation of the English and French texts of the present version of Virgil's poem on pages 188-214 below. He will see that Caxton often keeps up the earlier English custom of using two equivalents for one French

<sup>1</sup> The misprints in the French text both amused and comforted me, so I left them, to show that Le Roy was more careless than Caxton.

word,<sup>1</sup> though he sometimes (but rarely) reverses the process, and puts only one English for two or more French.<sup>2</sup>

Dr. Kellner's contention, that though Caxton imported French words freely, he did not import French constructions, I met by citing Caxton's 'the his' (23/19) for the French *le sien*;<sup>3</sup> and I suppose that arrangements like 'the Iugemente that to hym was fortunat' (25/16), are due to French influence, *son iugement que luy estoit fortune*; but Dr. Kellner is no doubt right in the main. Still, I never felt how largely French construction has influenst English, till the often-by-me-sought source of our 'How do you do' turnd up one day in the old French

[“COMMENT LE FAITES VOUS, comment vous portez-vous ?]

Lors li dist la dame, *comment*

*Le faites-vous*, biaux tres douc sire ?

Roman du chastelain de Couci, v. 3488.

Il li demandent de lur piere,

Et *coment le fesait* lur miere.—Lai d'Haveloc, v. 562.

*Que fait* [How does] mes sires? est-il sains et haitiés ?

Roncevaux, p. 159.”

Hippeau. *Glossaire*, Pt. II, 1872, p. 170.

Since this, I've always felt humble when I've met a Frenchman; and if he'd claimd all England and English Literature as French, I

<sup>1</sup> sorrowfulle and bywepte, *esplouree*, 19/1-2; chasse and hunte, *chacer*, 51/36; appareylled and couered, *couuerte*, 53/27; &c., &c.

<sup>2</sup> 'places' for *lieux et places* 26/32, 'maydens' for *pucelles ou ieunes filles* 29/27, 'the owle' for *la voiz de la frezaye aultrement dit cheucche* 80/14, 'techer' for *enseignerresse et doctrisse* 85/5, 'kynge' for *roy et sire* 114/24, 'wente' for *vindrent & errerent* 123/28, 'wyses' for *facens & manieres* 123/55. See also *tue & occis pour sa grand forecnerie*, slayne, 153/2; *moult ire & courrouce*, sore ananged, 143/6; *aioustances ou appendances*, appurtenaunces, 164/25; &c., &c.

<sup>3</sup> On the other hand, he gives *hors du sens* its English equivalent of 'besyde hymself' 59/33, tho' he renders *forcee* by 'mad and beside herself' 97/9-10. (A woman) *ensainte* is englisht 'wyth chylde' 117/5, *vers la bout de la nef* is 'vpon the forecastell' 116/26, and *parces* is 'made fayre' 83/6.

When Caxton thinks his literal englishing of the French may be misunderstood, as in describing Dido's moderate-sized nose, he enlarges *le nes moyen* into 'a meane noose, not to grete nor to lytell' 112/28. So also *espicus ayuz* is renderd 'logges wyth sharpe yron atte the ende' 138/22-31.

should hardly have dared say that they belonged to us.<sup>1</sup> Who too would have thought that we owed 'mother country' to France? Yet there it is in the *Eneydes*, 'la douce terre mere,' p. 192 below, 29/4-5; and that Caxton actually left out the *mere*, and englisht 'the swete countrey' only!<sup>2</sup> However, we'll forgive him, for his delightful bit about the egges and eyren at the Kentish Foreland, p. 2-3, his praise of Skelton, p. 3-4, and his touch 'when we halowe any solempnite in the tyme of somer' (17/22), to be compared with the French, p. 189, col. 2. If only Caxton would have written us an account of the England of his time, how gladly we'd have done without his englishing one or two of his dull foreign books!

The other point on which I wisht information to be given in this edition, was, what is the relation of the prose *Eneydes* to the early verse *Roman d'Énéas*, and of that to Virgil's *Aeneid*. Luckily Prof. Paul Meyer reviewed in the last number of the *Romania* Dr. Salverda de Grave's Introduction to the edition of the *Roman* which he has been for some time preparing. And at my request Dr. de Grave has been kind enough to write us the short essay which follows, and for which we all thank him.

On pages xxix—xxxi I have added a few extracts from the Italian prose shortening of the *Aeneid*, translated (?) from the Greek of Athanasius in 1476. The student who wishes to follow the Middle-Age changes of Virgil<sup>3</sup> further, should read

1. 'Virgilio nel Medio Evo, per Domenico Comparetti, Livorno, 1872: Parte prima, Virgilio nella Tradiziona Letteraria fino a Dante; Parte seconda, Virgilio nella Legenda Popolare.' See the Table of Contents (*Indice*) at the end of Part II.

<sup>1</sup> Our good friend Prof. Paul Meyer is now writing an Essay in which he claims that in the early part of the 14th century, French had almost driven English out of England. He thinks it 'a very great pity' that his French did not wholly conquer, as then all Britain, America, India and our Colonies would have spoken French, and we should all have been saved the trouble of learning it. Chaucer, Shakspeare, Milton &c. would have written in French too (poor things!), and French would have been the ruling tongue of the world.

<sup>2</sup> Our old worthy's worst-looking rendering in his translation is 'tygres infernalle' for the French *tiges* stocks (? families, deities) of hell; but as Prof. P. Meyer doesn't acknowledge *tiges* as the right word here, Caxton probably found *tiges* in his original, which is occasionally better than the printed text.

<sup>3</sup> The man. For the *Aeneid*, see M. Parodi's book, p. xxvii, note <sup>1</sup>, below.



2. *Master Virgil*. The Author of the *Aeneid* as he Seemed in the Middle Ages. A Series of Studies by J. S. Tunison, 1889. (Robert Clarke & Co. \$2.00.)

'The Studies discuss the diabolism, the superstitions, and science of the middle ages, and the magical and prophetic character of the author of the *Aeneid*, from its rise in fables to its outcome in the legends that were generally accepted at the close of the mediæval epoch.'—*Lit. World*, Boston, U.S.A., 1889.

The English black-letter *Virgilius* of about 1520, which was in Laneham's or Captain Cox's famous Library, and which I sketched in my Introduction to L.'s *Letter* of 1575 in the Ballad Society, was reprinted by Thoms in his 'Early Prose Romances,' Pickering, 1827. The old title is

'This Boke treateth of the Lyfe of Virgilius, and of his Deth, And Many Maruayles that he dyd in his Lyfe Tyme by Whycherafte and Nygramancye thorough the helpe of the Deylys of Hell.' The colophon is 'Thus endethe the lyfe of Virgilius with many dyuers consaytes that he dyd. Emprynted in the cytie of Anwarpe By me Iohan Doesboreke dwellynge at the camerporte.' 4to, 30 leaves. *Bodleian* (Douce).—Hazlitt.—F. J. F.

3 St. George's Sq. Primrose Hill, N. W.  
May 24-5, 1889; 1.40 a.m.

ON  
THE *ENEYDES* AND THE *ROMAN D'ÉNÉAS*.

BY  
DR. SALVERDA DE GRAVE.

THE inquiry naturally arises, 'Did the author of Caxton's original, the French prose *Eneydes*, use any of the numerous Middle-Age versions of the *Aeneid*, or did he work—as he says he did—from Virgil's own poem?' The many changes that the French writer made in Virgil's story—see p. vii—xix above—favour the view that at least some of his alterations were due to former hands, but my searches for these have been hitherto in vain, and I doubt whether any future student will be more fortunate in discovering them, though I hope he may be.

Meantime, among the earlier versions of the *Aeneid* already known to us, the verse *Roman d'Énéas* presents itself in the first place: it is the oldest existing version of Virgil's poem in the vulgar tongue. Being occupied in preparing an edition of this Old-French romance, and having already published the results of my researches on its relations to Virgil,<sup>1</sup> I have been asked by Dr. Furnivall to add to the edition of Caxton's *Eneydos* some observations on the *Roman d'Énéas*, and to see whether any relation exists between it and Caxton's original, or if they are independent of one another. As to the latter question, if there is any connection between them, it is so remote that it is of very slight importance. However, I will say something of the *Roman d'Énéas*, because of the literary interest in comparing how the same matter is treated by a poet of the twelfth century and by one of his prose compatriots of three centuries later.

There is no doubt that the *Roman d'Énéas* (the author of which is unknown) was translated directly from the *Aeneid* of Virgil. The supposition of a school version in prose as the immediate original of

<sup>1</sup> Introduction à une édition critique du *Roman d'Énéas*. La Haye, 1888.



the Old-French romance is inadmissible. The two poems are so entirely alike, not only in the main lines of the narrative, but also in most of the particulars, that there is no need to separate the French romance from the great Latin poem. However, the translation is far from being literal. The various episodes of Aeneas's voyages and wars are to be found in it as well as in Virgil, but the manner in which they are told is completely different. Indeed, the poets and artists of the Middle Ages, instead of treating antiquity with the same respect as we do, try to adapt the adventures of classic heroes to the customs and usages of their own later age; to them the local colour was little; and so they regenerate Aeneas, and turn him into a 'chevalier' surrounded by his 'barons,' who fights in just the same way as the hero of a 'chanson de geste.'

This is the chief reason why the Old-French romances imitated from classical poems preserve such an individual character. Another reason is this, that the Old-French poets don't content themselves with the marvels they find in the original, but add to them still greater prodigies, and overload their translations with the description of marvellous tombs and magnificent costumes, which appear to us puerile, or at least misplaced in a masterpiece of antiquity.

The anonymous translator and converter of the *Aeneid* into the *Roman d'Énéas* is a great friend of such descriptions and interpolations. In my Introduction I have tried to find the sources whence he got the materials for his additions. Certainly not in the glosses of an *Aeneid* manuscript; for in no such manuscript did I find glosses that could be considered as having furnished material to the French writer. I believe, therefore, that he took them here and there, and I have pointed out three sets of sources that helped him: 1. the classic authors (Ovid, and perhaps Lucian and Statius); 2. the 'Bestiaires'—for instance, that of Philippe de Thaün;—3. the 'Chansons de geste.'

The beginning of the 'Roman' is different from the Latin: instead of throwing us *in medias res*, the French poet takes from the Second Book of the *Aeneid* the history of the destruction of Troy, and places it in the front of his translation. It has been said that this change was made in order to couple the *Roman de Troies*, by

Benoit de Sainte-More, with the *Roman d'Énéas*. However, this alteration of the beginning is common to many of the mediæval Aeneid translations, and it is probable that they all made that change for the same reason, namely, the irregularity of the proceeding of Virgil in not beginning *ab ovo*, and in presupposing as known to his readers particulars that he has not yet mentioned. The prose *Eneydes* too changes Virgil's beginning. Moreover, it not only consults the Second Book of the *Aeneid*, but it takes from the Third Book the account of Aeneas finding Polydorus's grave. The *Roman d'Énéas*, on the contrary, passes by the whole of Virgil's Third Book.

I will now enumerate the most important additions and changes of the *Roman d'Énéas*:

1. The judgment of Paris. The same episode is related in the Romance of Troy, with some differences.

2. The full description of the palace of Dido.

3. *Aen.* I. 656. Venus takes Ascanius to her, and gives his shape and figure to Cupid, who must excite Dido's love for Aeneas; the *Roman d'Énéas*, on the contrary, says that Venus gives to Ascanius himself the power of inflaming Dido's heart.

4. The priestess of whom Dido speaks to her sister becomes a sorceress.

5. The description of the infernal regions is very different from the Latin.

6. The skill of the tame stag of Tyrus's daughter Silvia.

7. Long description of Camilla.

8. Accounts of the adultery of Venus and Mars: this episode was probably taken from the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid.

9. Turnus, having killed Pallas, takes a ring off his finger.

10. Description of Pallas's tomb.

11. Description of Camilla's tomb.

12. Love of Aeneas and Lavinia. This is undoubtedly the most important addition; the love-scenes and monologues of this episode occupy nearly a sixth part of the whole romance. The addition is important for Old-French literature, because it brings the *Roman d'Énéas* near to Benoit's *Roman de Troies*, in which an analogous episode has been inserted.

These few observations will enable the readers of Caxton's translation to remark the difference between the manner of treating antique matters by the poet of the Old-French romance and that of the author of the prose *Eneydes*. The chief difference is this, that the candour, the spontaneity of the *Roman d'Énéas* have disappeared; this is also the principal reason why the prose *Eneydes* is infinitely less interesting for the history of literature than the Old-French poem.

The influence of the *Roman d'Énéas* on later Virgilian literature has not been so great as might be expected. M. Parodi, in his interesting studies on the Italian translations and versions of the *Aeneid*,<sup>1</sup> after having proved that only one translator used the *Roman d'Énéas*, has given a very probable reason for it, namely, that no translation could rival in popularity the *Aeneid* itself, and that therefore, whosoever occupied himself with the *Aeneid* went direct to the original.

After this digression I return to the question I placed in front of my little essay. I call the attention of the readers of Caxton to a version of the history of Aeneas that has been pointed out by M. Paul Meyer, in Vol. xiv. of the *Romania*, p. 36, &c. This version forms a part of a Treatise on Ancient History,<sup>2</sup> very popular in the Middle Ages, as is proved by the great number of its manuscripts that M. Meyer speaks of. This version offers an interesting coincidence with the *Eneydes*.

Turnus, after having killed Pallas, takes the belt, richly gilt, belonging to his vanquished enemy, and adorns himself with it (*Aen.* X. 495):

. . . . Et laevo pressit pede talia fatus  
Examinem, rapiens immania pondera baltei  
Impressumque nefas. . . .

In the Twelfth Book of the *Aeneid* (line 941) Aeneas has vanquished Turnus; he takes pity on him, and is near pardoning and

<sup>1</sup> I rifacimenti et le traduzioni Italiane dell' *Encidi* di Virgilio, prima del Rinascimento. Studi di filologia romanza.

<sup>2</sup> It is a history of the World, from the Creation to Rome, but deals chiefly with the history of Troy.

sparing him ; but he sees Pallas's belt on the shoulder of his opposer ; this view excites his rage, and he kills Turnus :

. . . . infelix humero quam adparuit alto  
Balteus, et notis fulserunt cingula bullis  
Pallantis pueri.

In the *Histoire Ancienne*, instead of the belt, it is the ring of Pallas which Turnus takes from him ; but, in the last episode, it is said that Eneas sees 'the girdle and the ring' of Pallas, worn by Turnus. How to explain this contradiction matters little, but it is remarkable that exactly the same terms are found in the *Eneydes*: on the occasion of Pallas's fight with Turnus, the author of the *Eneydes* mentions the 'ring,' p. 140 below, line 16 ; and in the episode of Aeneas's fight with Turnus he speaks of 'the girdle and the ring,' p. 162 below, l. 15.

Unless we take this coincidence to be fortuitous (which is very unlikely), it can only be explained by accepting a common version from which both the *Histoire Ancienne* and the *Eneydes* descend, or which both knew. Perhaps though the author of the *Eneydes* took the difference above-named from the *Histoire Ancienne* itself. Tracing back higher still, we find in the *Roman d'Énéas* the belt also changed for a ring ; only, in both episodes, the poet speaks only of a ring, and omits the girdle in the second. So we can say that the hypothetical version of the *Aeneid* we accepted for the *Histoire Ancienne* and the *Eneydes* is remotely related to the *Roman d'Énéas*.

As to the *Eneydes*, the only fact we can assert is this: it is possible that its author had before him the Latin poem itself, but he used at the same time a former translation or version of Virgil's work.<sup>1</sup>

Paris, May 20th, 1889.

<sup>1</sup> I do not find in the Italian translations, or in the Latin or Italian versions of the *Aeneid* spoken of by M. Parodi, one single particular that indicates a relation of any one of them to the *Eneydes*.

## THE ITALIAN PROSE VERSION OF 1476.

THIS little Italian Quarto—*a-m* in 8s, *n* in 6—contains the Italian Translator's *Prologus*<sup>1</sup> giving his reasons for setting forth the book, then a short sketch (9½ lines) of Eneas's person, &c. 'Qui parla la natione ele fatezze de Enea,' and naming 'Virgilio / il cui libro scriuere intendo,' followed by the Prologue of the Greek Athanasius's prose version of the *Aeneid*, which (I suppose) the Italian says he will translate :—

Questo e il prologo dil greco athanagio

[a 3]

[C] Onciosiacossa che uirgilio, homo scientatissimo, poeta optimo / di natione mantuano di sangue / Non cossi / come di nobile uirtute Intendesse di compilare / adornare / et a laude de octauiano Augusto, secondo imperadore di Roma, Nepote di Iulio ciesare / E suo figliuolo adoptiuo et herede : Alcuno libro de la uita militare / Cioe de la scienza de le battaglie. Pero che de la due altre uite / le quale furono anzi che humana generationee<sup>2</sup> Tre generationi di gente furono in roma. Troiani da Enea. Greci da euandro, che fue darchadia. sabini dale donne che rapite romulo ala festo e per/cusio titio. Constricta per cupidine di potentia cum ferri spandesse sangue humano, cio fu lagiorgica e la buccolica de la uita pastorale / e de la uita agricolturale. Aue astricto. scrisse questo libro de li magnifici facti e felicie opere de Enea. dal qualle il dicto Octauiano disciese. Il quale libro el greco Athanagio, de li greci doctore maiore : homo discreto e litterato, cum molta fatica recho deuersi in prosa. Lasciandone cierta parte senza la quale li parue che questo libro stare sufficientemente potesse. Et lui possia ad instantia dicta non molto leuemente di grammatica in lingua uolgare translatoe.

<sup>1</sup> On *a* 2, after the heading 'P. Maronis Virgilii Liber Encidos feliciter Incipit.'

<sup>2</sup> Sign. a 3 back.

## Compendium omnium librorum eneidis.

**P**rimus habet lybicam / ueniant ut Troes in urbem.  
<sup>1</sup> Edocet excidium Troie : clademque secundus.  
 Tertius a Troia uectos cauit equore Teucros. &c. &c.

Then a Compendium of the 1st Book on *a* 4; 4 lines of 'Principium quo usus est Virgilius. sed decisum fuit a Tuca. et Varro.' Then

[a 4 bk.]

Sequitur verum principium.

**A**rima uirumque cano : Troie qui primus ab oris  
 Italiam fato profugus [&c, 4 lines]

Quiui incomencia Virgilio, el quale narra le aspere bataglie  
 et li facti de Enea.

**[D]**Elle aspere bataglie / Io Virgilio in uersi narro / ei facti di  
 quello homo il quale fugito prima uenne de le contrade di  
 troia fatatamente in Italia / et alidi de lauina. Colui fue [a 5] molto  
 gittato per terra et per mare, per forza de li dei, per la concordeuole ira  
 de la crudele Iuno. E molte fatighe in bataglia patie. Infino chelli  
 edificoe la citade / e portoe li dei in Italia. Onde disciese il sangue  
 latino / e li padri dalbana / e lalta roma. O scienza recha nela mia  
 memoria la cagione quale deita fue offesa. e per che la regina de li dei  
 dolendosi chaccioe lhuomo chiaro per pietade auolgere tante fortune /  
 et entrasse in tante fatiche. oue furon cotante ire neli cielestiali animi.

## [Headings of the Chapters.]

- (I. 2) Qui nauicando perdi enea una naue per aspera fortuna.  
 (I. 3) Come li troiani riuarono nel porto di libia. [a 6]  
 (I. 4) Risponso che diede loue a Venus di facti de Enea. [a 6, bk]  
 (I. 5) Come Venus aparue ad Enea nela selua. [a 7, bk]  
 (I. 6) Come Venus narra a Enea la morte de Sicheo. e come dido  
 uene a carthagine. [a 8]  
 (I. 7) Come uenus condusse Enea a cartagine doueli trouo  
 acompagni. [a 8, bk]

<sup>1</sup> The initials P and E change places in the original.

- (I. 8) Come Ilioneo parlo a Dido. [b 2]  
 (I. 9) Come Dido receuete itroiani. [b 2, bk]  
 (I. 10) Come Enea se manifesto a Dido. et offerseli richi doni. [b 3]  
 (I. 11) Come Dido si inamoro de Enea. [b 4]

.P. Maronis Virgilio Libri Primus Explicit. [b 5]

Incipit Libra Secundus

[F] Vnera Dardonie narrat: fletusque secundo.  
 Conticuere omnes: tunc sic fortissimus heros . . . .

and so on to the end, finishing with this last Chapter and Colophon:

[*last Chapter, on n 4*]

Come Enea fue facto signore, e fecie alba, e la sua fine.

[F] Acte queste cosse, rifermato fue Enea signore di tutta la hereditade del Re dapo ala sua fine per lo Re medesimo. Et in laur-  
 enza stette Enea asuo uolere. e quando [n 4 bk] alui piaque di partirsi  
 quella parte del regno elesse che lui uuole per lo suo habitare. doue  
 hedificoe la grande Alba, citta nobilissima. Ne la quale regno molti  
 anni. et in quelli tempi alla sua signoria peruenne la terra tutta di  
 Latino / Hauendo elo finita la lunga etade. Si che tutta Italia ala  
 sua ubidienza permaneu. Poi dapo la sua magnanimita essendo il  
 suo excellentissimo corpo riceuto de la gran madre regno Ascanio /  
 E poi regnorono apresso di lui li gran magnanimi significati ad enea  
 dal suo padre Anchise nel deliso. Che come a lui disse cossi uenero  
 magnificenti / exaltando piu et piu la infinita / et gloriosa fama de lo  
 eternale Imperio. Et in questo tempo hedificata fue lalta Roma /  
 per Romolo / e Remulo, suoi suciessori. Da cui dapo molti anni  
 disciese il nobile Iulio Ciesaro.

DEO GRATIAS AMEN.

[Then follows the Colophon, and after it two pages of 'Publii Maronis Virgilii Epitaphia.']

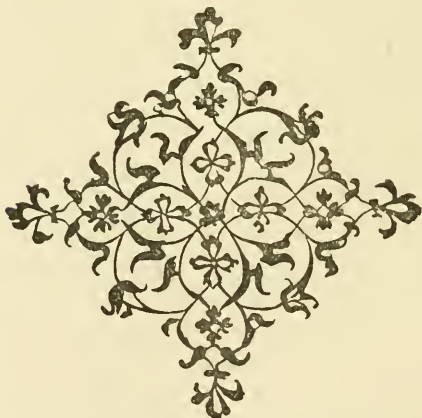


[*Colophon: on n. 5*]

O uoi periti / et anche uoi non docti / che legiereti o uer ascoit-  
areti la nobile opera gia in uerso componuda per lo famosissimo Poeta  
laureato .P. Marone Virgilio Mantuano, ad honore / et laude de  
Octauiano Augusto secundo Imperatore de Romani: et da puoi de  
uerso in lingua uulgare reducta per lo litteratissimo greco Athanagio  
per consolatione de Constantio figluolo de Constantino Imperatore /  
Veramente senza dubio alcuno remanereti tutti lieti et contenti  
neli animi uostri per la intelligentia de li eccellenti et mirabile facti  
de Enea como ne la presente opera si contiene: non meno quanto  
altra uulgar opera se potesse per consolatione legiere et audire:  
La qual e stata impressa ne la famosa cittade de Vicencia. per  
Hermanno Leuilapide da Colonia grande / ne Iano dil Signore  
.M.CCCC.LXXVI. adi Marti .xii. Marcio.

Tam presens opus hoc mille Athanasius annis  
Encadum cecinit: lege dulcia carmina lector.

.P. B. C. O.





# [Virgills AEncids translated.<sup>1</sup>]

## [CAXTON'S PROLOGUE.]

\* AFTER dyuerse werkes made / translated and  
 achieved / hauyng noo werke in hande, I, sittynge in  
 my studye where as laye many dyuerse paunflettis and  
 4 bookys, happened that to my hande came a lytyl  
 booke in frenshe, whiche late was translated oute of  
 latyn by some noble clerke of fraunce, whiche booke is  
 named Eneydos / made in latyn by that noble poete  
 8 & grete clerke vyrgyle / whiche booke I sawe ouer  
 and redde therin, How, after the generall destruccyon  
 of the grete Troye, Eneas departed, berynge his olde  
 fader anchises vpon his sholdres / his lityl son yolus on  
 12 his honde, his wyfe wyth moche other people folow-  
 ynge / and how he shypped and departed, wyth alle  
 thystorye of his aduentures that he had er he cam to  
 the achievement of his conquest of ytalie, as alle a longe  
 16 shal be shewed in this present boke. In whiche booke  
 I had grete playsyr, by cause of the fayr and honest  
 termes & wordes in frenshe / whyche I neuer sawe  
 tofore lyke, ne none so playsaunt ne so wel ordred;  
 20 whiche booke, as me semed, sholde be moche requysyte  
 to noble men to see, as wel for the eloquence as the  
 historyes / How wel that many honderd yerys passed  
 was the sayd booke of eneydos, wyth other werkes,  
 24 made and lerned dayly in scolis, specyally in ytalie &  
 other places / whiche historye the sayd vyrgyle made  
 in metre / And whan I had aduysed me in this sayd  
 boke, I delybered and concluded to translate it in-to

[\* Brit. Mns. C  
 21. d. 24. sign.  
 A.]

Caxton, having  
 got hold of the  
 French version  
 of the 'Aeneid,'

telling Aeneas's  
 escape from Troy

and his conquest  
 of Italy,

was so pleased  
 with it

that he resolved  
 to translate it  
 into English.

<sup>1</sup> This heading is in an 18th century hand.

englysshe, And forthwyth toke a penne & ynke, and wrote a leef or tweyne / whyche I ouersawe agayn to corecte it / And whan I sawe the fayr & straunge termes therin / I doubted that it sholde not please 4  
 some gentylmen whiche late blamed me, sayeng *that* in my translacyons I had ouer curyous termes whiche coude not be vnderstande of comyn peple / and desired me to vse olde and homely termes in my translacyons. 8  
 [\* sign. A j, back] and \*fayn wolde I satysfye euery man / and so to doo, toke an olde boke and redde therin / and certaynly the englysshe was so rude and brood that I coude not wele vnderstande it. And also my lorde abbot of west- 12  
 mynster ded do shewe to me late, certayn eydences wryton in olde englysshe, for to reduce it in-to our englysshe now vsid / And certaynly it was wreton in suche wyse that it was more lyke to dutche than 16  
 but he couldn't. englysshe; I coude not reduce ne brynge it to be vnderstonden / And certaynly our langage now vsed varyeth ferre from that whiche was vsed and spoken whan I was borne / For we englysshe men / ben borne 20  
 Englishmen are always changing. vnder the domynacyon of the mone, whiche is neuer stedfaste / but euer wauerynge / wexynge one season / and waneth & dyscreaseth another season / And that comyn englysshe that is spoken in one shyre varyeth 24  
 One shire's speech differs from another. from a nother. In so moche that in my dayes hap- pened that certayn marchauntes were in a shippe in tanyse, for to haue sayled ouer the see into zelande / and for lacke of wynde, thei taryed atte forlond, and 28  
 wente to lande for to refreshe them; And one of theym named sheffelde, a mereer, cam in-to an hows and axed for mete; and specyally he axyd after eggys; And the goode wyf answerde, that she corde speke no frenshe. 32  
 Mr. Sheffield askt for Eggs at the Foreland, And the marchaunt was angry, for he also coude speke no frenshe, but wolde haue hadde egges / and she vnderstode hym not / And thenne at laste a nother sayd that he wolde haue eyren / then the good wyf 36  
 but couldn't get 'em till they were called Eyren.

sayd that she vnderstod hym wel / Loo, what sholde  
 a man in thyse dayes now wryte, egges or eyren /  
 certainly it is harde to playse euery man / by cause of  
 4 dyuersite & chaunge of langage. For in these dayes  
 euery man that is in ony reputaeyon in his coun tre,  
 wyth vtter his commynyeaeyon and maters in suche  
 maners & termes / that fewe men shaH vnderstonde  
 8 theym / And som ho\*nest and grete clerkes haue ben  
 wyth me, and desired me to wryte the moste curyous  
 termes that I coude fynde / And thus bytwene playn  
 rude / & curyous, I stande abashed. but in my Iudge-  
 12 mente / the comyn termes that be dayli vsed, ben  
 lyghter to be vnderstonde than the olde and auneyent  
 englysshe / And for as moche as this present booke is  
 not for a rude vplondyssh man to laboure therin / ne  
 16 rede it / but onely for a clerke & a noble gentylman  
 that feleth and vnderstondeth in faytes of armes, in  
 loue, & in noble chyualrye / Therfor in a meane  
 bytwene bothe, I haue reduced & translated this sayd  
 20 booke in to our englysshe, not ouer rude ne curyous,  
 but in suche termes as shaH be vnderstanden, by goddys  
 graee, aecordynge to my copye. And yf ony man wyth  
 enter-mete in redyng of hit, and fyndeth suche termes  
 24 that he can not vnderstande, late hym goo rede and  
 lerne vyrgyH / or the pystles of ouyde / and ther he  
 shaH see and vnderstonde lyghtly aH / Yf he haue a  
 good redar & enformer / For this booke is not for  
 28 euery rude and <sup>1</sup> vnconnyng man to see / but to clerkys  
 and very gentylmen that vnderstande gentylnes and  
 seyuence ¶ Thenne I praye alle theym that shaH rede  
 in this lytyl treatys, to holde me for excused for the  
 32 translatyng of hit. For I knowleche my selfe ignorant  
 of connyng to enpryse on me so hie and noble a  
 werke / But I praye mayster Iohn Skelton, late created  
 poete laureate in the vnyuersite of oxenforde, to ouersee

All men of  
 consequence use  
 words that few  
 others can  
 understand.

[\* sign. A ij]

Caxton endeavours to use  
 moderate and  
 readable terms.

This book is only  
 for clerks and  
 gentlemen.

John Skelton  
 poet laureate.

Caxton prays  
Skelton to  
correct his trans-  
lation.

[\* A ij, back]

Skelton's learn-  
ing.

Caxton's  
Dedication to  
Prince Arthur.

and correcte this sayd booke, And taddresse and  
expowne where as shaHe be founde faulte to theym  
that shaH requyre it. For hym, I knowe for suffeycent  
to expowne and englysshe euery dyffyculte that is 4  
therin / For he hath late translated the epystlys of  
TuHe / and the boke of dyodorus syculus,<sup>1</sup> and diuerse  
other werkes oute of latyn in-to englysshe, not in rude  
\*and olde langage, but in polysshed and ornatel termes 8  
craftely, as he that hath redde vrgyle / ouyde, tullye,  
and all the other noble poetes and oratours / to me  
vunknownen : And also he hath redde the ix. muses, and  
vnderstande theyr musicaHe seyences, and to whom of 12  
theym eche seyence is appropred. I suppose he hath  
dronken of Elycons weH. Then I praye hym, & suche  
other, to correcte, adde or mynysshe where as he or  
they shaH fynde faulte / For I haue but folowed my 16  
cotype in frenshe as nygh as me is possyble / And yf  
ony worde be sayd therin weH / I am glad ; and yf  
otherwyse, I submytte my sayd boke to theyr correc-  
tyon / Whiche boke I presente vnto the hie born my 20  
tocomynge natureH & souerayn lord, Arthur, by the  
grace of god, Prynce of Walys, Duc of CornewayH, &  
Erle of Chester, fyrst bygoten sone and heyer vnto our  
most dradde naturaH & souerayn lorde, & most crysten 24  
kyng / Henry the vij. by the grace of god, kyng of  
Englond and of Fraunce, & lord of Irelande / bysech-  
ing his noble grace to receyue it in thanke of me, his  
moste humble subget & seruauant / And I shaH praye 28  
vnto almyghty god for his prosperous encreasyng in  
vertue / wysedom / and humanyte, that he may be egal  
wyth the most renommed of atte his noble progeny-  
tours ¶ And so to lyue in this present lyf / that after 32  
this transitorye lyfe he and we atte may come to  
euerlastyng lyf in heuen / Amen :

<sup>1</sup> The MS. of this translation is in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. It has long been copied for the Early English Text Society, but still needs an Editor.—F.

## [TABLE OF CONTENTS.]

\* ¶ Here foloweth the table of this present  
boke

[\* leaf A 3]

How the ryche kynge Pryamus edifyed the grete eyte  
of troye. *capitolo* primo [*p.* 10]

How the eyte was crueHy sette a fyre & flamme /  
And how Eneas, armed, bare his fader oute of the  
same eyte. *cap.* ij [*p.* 14]

How Eneas saeryfyced to his goddys in the place where  
Polydorus had be slayn. *cap.* iij. [*p.* 17]

How Eneas, in makynge the forsayd saeryfyce, hewe y<sup>e</sup>  
tronke of a tree, oute of the whiche yssued bloode.  
And how polydorus declared the sygnifycaeyon of  
the sayd myracle, and the wyHe of the goddys.  
*capitolo* iiij. [*p.* 17]

Thobsequyes of Polydorus. *cap.* v. [*p.* 21]

Here begynneth the historye how dydo departed from  
her country. *cap.* vj. [*p.* 22]

How dydo arryued<sup>1</sup> in Lybye, a strange contrey, &  
bought as moche lande or grounde as she myght  
conteyne wyth y<sup>e</sup> space of an hide of an oxe /  
in whiche she buylded and edefyed the eyte of  
Cartage / *ca.* vij. [*p.* 30]

How a kynge, neyghbour to Cartage, dyd demaunde to  
wif the fayr dydo / quene of Cartage. y<sup>e</sup> whiche, for  
the loue of her late hushonde, had leuer to slee her  
selfe than to take the sayd kynge. *cap.* viij. [*p.* 33]

A comendacyon to dydo. *cap.* ix. [*p.* 36]

How Iuno, for tempesshe thoost of enecas whiche wold  
goo into ytalye, prayd y<sup>e</sup> goddes of wyndis / that

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* arryned

euerych bi him selfe sholde make concussyon &  
torment in thayer. ca. x. [p. 39]

How dydo counseled wyth her suster Anne. cap<sup>o</sup>  
xj<sup>o</sup>. [p. 41]

Thansuers of anne to hir suster dydo. ca. xij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 43]

How Eneas, after grete fortunes of the see, arryued  
in cartage. And how dydo, for his swete be-  
hauoir & fayr spekyng, was esprysed of his loue.  
capitulo xiiij [p. 46]

[\* leaf A 3, back] \* How the goddes accorded the maryage of Eneas to  
dydo. capitulo xiiij [p. 49]

Of the gret tempest & storme at maryage of theym.  
ca. xv<sup>o</sup>. [p. 52]

How yarbas complayned hym to Iubyter, of Eneas, that  
edyfied the cyte of Cartage / And how Iubyter sent  
sodaynly Mercurys toward Eneas, for to make hym  
to retorne in-to the contree of ytalye. cap<sup>o</sup>. xvj [p. 60]

How dydo, knowynge the departyng of Eneas, ranne  
thorough the cyte of Cartage, as a woman dysperate  
and from her selfe. capitulo [x]vij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 65]

How dydo sorowfully bewayled the departyng of  
Eneas, bi swete & amyable wordes. ca. xviiij [p. 66]

How dydo, aft in a rage, complayned her to Eneas and  
to the goddys. ca. xix<sup>o</sup>. [p. 69]

How dido, wyth grete cursynges, gaaf leue to Eneas.  
capitulo xx<sup>o</sup>. [p. 72]

How dydo fyl down in a swone / and how she was  
borne awaye by her wymen / and also how dyligently  
the nauye of Eneas was made redy for to goo in  
to ytalye. ca. xxj [p. 73]

How Eneas brake the ooken tree of the grete loue of  
dydo. capitulo xxij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 77]

Of the wordes of dydo to her suster Anne. ca.  
xxiiij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 84]

How dydo, in grete bewaylynges, prayd her suster to  
make a grete fyre in a place most secrete in her

- palays, for to brenn y<sup>e</sup> harnoys and raymentes of  
eneas / and how by dyuerse sortes she supposed to  
haue destroyed hym. ca. xxiiij [*p.* 86]
- How dydo made her lamentacyons repreuyng the  
periurement of laomedon. ca / xxv [*p.* 90]
- of y<sup>e</sup> vysion *that* eneas had for to depart towarde  
ytalye. *capitulo.* xxvj [*p.* 92]
- How Eneas encyted the patrons & maystres of his  
shyppes / for to departe. cap°. xxvij°. [*p.* 95]
- \* How dydo, full of grete rage, & dyspourneyd of [*\* leaf A 4*]  
wytte, slewe hirselfe wyth the swerde of Eneas /  
& how be it *that* to-fore is made mencyon of this  
occysion, It was no thyng but for to shewe the  
dyuercyte of fortune / And here thexecusion of the  
dede is shewed. *capitulo* xxviiij [*p.* 105]
- Of the beaute of dydo. *capitulo* xxix [*p.* 111]
- How Eneas sayled / and how by tempest he aryued in  
Secyle. *capitulo* / xxx°. [*p.* 114]
- How eneas toke y<sup>e</sup> see for to seke y<sup>e</sup> regyon of ytalye.  
ca. xxx[j] [*p.* 115]
- How kynge Egeus lete falle hym selfe in-to the see for  
the deth of his sone Theseus. cap°. xxxij [*p.* 119]
- How Eneas arryued in ytalye / ca. xxxiiij [*p.* 120]
- Here it is shewed how many kynges had ben in  
ytalye, to-fore that Eneas came thyder fyrste. ca°.  
xxxiiij [*p.* 121]
- How Eneas byganne to bylde his fortresse vpon  
the ryuer<sup>1</sup> of tonyre. *capitulo* xxxv [*p.* 122]
- How Eneas sente his messagers towarde kynge latyne.  
*capitulo* xxxvj [*p.* 123]
- How kyng latynus made grete Ioye and good chere to  
the messagers of Eneas. *capitulo* xxxvij [*p.* 125]
- how kyng latyn sent certayn *presentis* to eneas. ca.  
xxxviii [*p.* 126]

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* thyre-uer



- How Turnus sente for his folke, for to chace and dryue  
 Eneas oute of his lande. cap<sup>o</sup> xxxix<sup>o</sup>. [p. 129]
- How Eneas wente to seke socours of the kynge  
 Euander / cap<sup>o</sup>. xli<sup>o</sup>. [p. 130]
- How grete a sorowe was made whan Eneas and Palas  
 departed from palence. cap<sup>o</sup>. xli<sup>o</sup>. [p. 131]
- How Turnus com tofore the casteH of Eneas for to  
 assaulte hym / cap<sup>o</sup>. xliij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 132]
- How Vysus and Eryalus made theym redy to entre  
 vpon the hoost of Turnus / cap<sup>o</sup>. xliij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 133]
- How Vysus and Eryalus entred into the tentis of  
 Tur<sup>n</sup>us hooste, and made grete slaughter and de-  
 struceyon : capitulo xliij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 134]
- How the two felawes loste eche other in the forest /  
 whan the knyghtes of laurence chased theym /  
 cap<sup>o</sup>. xlv<sup>o</sup>. [p. 135]
- How bolcus slewe Eryalus / & how Vysus his felaw  
 slewe bolcus. Of the deth of the sayd Visus / And  
 how the hedes of the sayd two felawys, Eryalus and  
 Vysus, were broughte vpon two speres a-fore the  
 fortresse of Eneas : capitulo. xlv<sup>o</sup>. [p. 136]
- How thassaulte was grete atte gate of the castel. ca<sup>o</sup>.  
 xlvij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 138]
- How Eneas cam ayen from palence wyth moche folke  
 for to socoure his sone & his peple ayenst Turnus.  
 ca. xlvij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 139]
- How Eneas fought Turnus aHe aboute the batayHe, for  
 to slee hym for the deth of palas. cap<sup>o</sup>. xlix<sup>o</sup>. [p. 140]
- How Eneas smote Merencyus wyth his spere in his thie  
 a grete strooke. cap<sup>o</sup>. L<sup>o</sup>. [p. 142]
- How Merencyus made grete sorowe whan he sawe his  
 sone deed. cap<sup>o</sup>. lij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 143]
- How Eneas sente the body of Palas in-to the shippe,  
 and sente it to his fader. cap<sup>o</sup>. lij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 145]
- Of the messagers that Turnus had sent to diomedes.  
 ca. liij<sup>o</sup>. [p. 146]

[\* leaf A 4, back]



How kyng latyn counseled for to make peas wyth  
Eneas. cap°. liiij [p. 148]

How Eneas cam to-fore the cyte of laurence. ca  
lv°. [p. 150]

How the quene Camula was slayn in y<sup>e</sup> bataylle.  
ca. lvj [p. 152]

How Turnus cam to y<sup>e</sup> felde, & his folke wyth hym.  
ca. lvij°. [p. 153]

How the Couenaunt of the batayll was made bytwene  
Eneas & Turnus. cap°. lvij°. [p. 155]

How Tholomeus made the bataylle to bygynne ayen,  
grete & horryble. cap°. lix°. [p. 157]

How Turnus dyd grete damage to eneas folke. ca.  
lx°. [p. 158]

\* How the quene Amatha hanged her selfe by despera-  
cion. capitulo lxj°. [p. 160]

[\* sign. A iij.]

How Eneas and Turnus fought, body ayenste body, in a  
felde, one ayenste that other. capitulo lxij°. [p. 161]

How Eneas wedded Lauyne / And hadde the royalme  
of ytalye. capitulo lxiiij°. [p. 162]

How kynge Latyne decessed / And Eneas soone  
after hym / And how Ascanius was calld Iulyus:  
capitulo lxiiij°. [p. 163]

How Ascaunis helde the royalme of ytalye after the  
deth of Eneas his fader. capitulo lxx°. [p. 164]

Explicit

## [FRENCH TRANSLATOR'S PROLOGUE.]

[\* sign. B j]

**T**O the honour of god almyghty / and to the  
 glorious vyrgyne Marye, moder of aHe grace /  
 and to the vtylyte & prouffyt of aH the  
 policye mondayne, this present booke, com- 4  
 pyled by virgyle, ryght subtyl and Ingenyous oratour  
 & poete / Intytuled Eneydos, hath be translated oute  
 of latyn in-to comyn langage / In whiche may aHe  
 valyaunt prynces and other nobles see many valorous 8  
 fayttes of armes. And also this present boke is neces-  
 sarye to aHe cytezens & habytaunts in townes and  
 casteHis / for they shal see, How somtyme troye the  
 graunte / and many other places stronge and inex- 12  
 pugnable,<sup>1</sup> haue ben be-sieged sharply & assayled,  
 And also coragiously and valyauntly defended / and  
 the sayd boke is atte this present tyme moche neces-  
 sarye / for to enstructe smale and grete, for euerych 16  
 in his ryght / to kepe & defende / For a thyng more  
 noble is to dye / than vylanously to be subdued /

Prologue of  
the French  
Translator.

¶ How the ryght puyssant kynge pryamus  
 edyfyed the grete cyte of Troye 20

*Capitulum primum.*

**F**Or to here / opene / and declare the matere of  
 whiche here-after shaH-be made mencyon / It  
 behoueth to presuppose that Troye, the grete 24  
 capytaH cyte / and the xceHentest of aHe the cytees of  
 the countre & region of Asye, was constructe and

Troy, the finest  
city of Asia.<sup>1</sup> orig. inexpugnabile

edefyed by the ryght puyssaunt & renowned kyng  
 Pryamus, sone of laomedon, descended of thauneyen  
 stocke of Dardanns<sup>1</sup> by many degrees / whiche was  
 4 sone of Iubyter & of Electra his wyf, after the fytions<sup>2</sup>  
 poetyque / And the fyrste orygynaH begynnynge of  
 the genealogye of kynges. And the sayd Troye was  
 enuyronned<sup>3</sup> in fourme of siege / and of excidyon, by  
 8 Agamenon, kyng in grece, brother of menelaus / whiche  
 was husbonde to helayne. \*The whiche agamenon,  
 assembled and accompanied wyth many kynges, dukes /  
 erles / and grete quantyte of other princes & grekes  
 12 innumerable, hadde the magystracyon and vnyuersaH  
 gouernaunce of aHe thexcersite and hoost to-fore  
 Troye :

CAP. I.  
 Descent of Priam  
 from Jupiter.

Troy, the chief  
 city of Asia, was  
 founded by  
 Priam, and

besieged by the  
 Greeks under  
 Agamemnon.

[\* B j, back]

16 **D**Vryng the sayd siege / Pryame habounded in  
 lygnage of one & other sexe so renommed of  
 beaulte, wysedome, and prudomnye / seynce,  
 prowess, valyaunce, propheeye / and other vertuous  
 propyrties / that aHe the worlde coude not ynough  
 20 meruayHe / How god and fortune hadde emprysed to  
 endowe a mortal man wyth dowayres so hye & ver-  
 tuous / But the prudence of pryame, knowyng to-fore /  
 that the aduenements and aduersitees of warre be  
 24 doubtous, and vnder the honde of fortune / the whiche,  
 after his mutabylite, gyueth victorye / To that one  
 encreacynge honour, glorie / tryumphe / and gladnesse /  
 And to that other she gyueth to be subgette to the  
 28 face of the ryght bloddy swerde, in grete effusion of  
 blood & dymunyion of prowess and of theyr gene-  
 alogye the mutable captyuyte of theyr prosperyte &  
 aduersite or euyl fortune :

Priam's large  
 family.

32 **P**Ryame thenne wyH teshewe & helpe for thynges  
 doubtous for to come, to that ende that his  
 Royalme shaft not departe oute of his honde  
 ne fro his blood / Yf it so happened that he and his

Priam's  
 prudence.

<sup>1</sup> ? for Dardanus    <sup>2</sup> orig. fytious    <sup>3</sup> orig. enuyronned

## CAP. I.

Priam's son  
Polydore sent  
away, during the  
siege.

Departure of  
Polydore.

chylidren were ouerthrowen fro his name by force of swerde or of the siege, Firste he dyd do departe one of his sones named polydorus, the xiiij sone, & fyrste of his name, In hopynge that to hym / his name & 4 vengeance, yf it were nede, sholde be kept.

**P**olidorus thenne was sente wyth a grete multytude of noble companye, full of yougthe & of stronge corage, wyth rychesse ynough of golde and of syluer / 8 money / tresour \*and Iewellis / vnto a kynge named plasmator, kynge of tarce / whiche, enduryng the good fortune, shewed hym right socourable to the sayd kynge pryame / In offerynge hym selfe to socoure hym 12 yf he had nede in aHe poyntes, in whiche the sayd pryame wolde require hym. But the prosperous fortune of the kynge pryam torned in-to aduerse. The said plasmator chaungyng his wyHe / and aHe thamyte 16 whiche longe tyme hadde endured, & promysed to holde to the sayd kynge Pryame, as ye shaH here after.

**N**OW thenne plasmator receyued Polidorus so magnifycatly, & wyth soo grete honoure, that by 20 wrytyng it maye not be recyted, ne the thyng descriued / And after whan Pryam was subdued, and putte vnder the sharpe domynacyon of the grekes, In somoeche that they had slayne thenne some of the sones 24 of the sayd pryame, and many kynges to hym alyed / And that into the cyte many were wyth-drawn for to gyue to the sayd pryam ayde & comforte, and the sayd troians myserable semed better to lose, and indygent 28 of force, than to haue apparence of victoryus glorie. And thys comen to the knowleche of plasmator, thoughte in his mynde, and conspyred the deth of the sayd polydorus / And in fayte, the said plasmator 32 broughte the sayd polydorus vpon the Rynage of the see, which was sondy / and a place secrete ynough fro the syghte of men / in whiche place the sayd plasmator slewe polydorus wyth a darte whiche he bare. The 36

[\* sign. B ij]

He goes to King  
Plasmator of  
Tarce.

On the decline of  
the affairs of  
Troy, Plasmator  
murders Poly-  
dore, and buries  
him in the sand  
by the seashore.

4 whiche, so traytoursly slayn, was by the sayd plasmator  
 buryed in the same place wythin the sonde. ¶ Vpon  
 whom was so moche sonde layde / that vpon poly-  
 8 dorus semed to be a lityl hiHe or montycle / And  
 aHe this was doon by the sayd plasmator, to thende  
 that his rychesse, whiche was brought to hym for the  
 gouernaunce of y<sup>e</sup> said polydorus / sholde \*abyde wyth  
 12 8 hym for to accomplyshe his auaryee Insacyable. And  
 syth he sawe that the force and strengthe of the  
 trojians was thenne soo perturbed by the pryckynge  
 of fortune, that it semed to hym / that for the cause of  
 12 this excessyue occysion / lityl damage and hurte myght  
 come to hym :

**B**ut thenne, whan the noble cyte of Asye was  
 broyHed and brente by the subtyl accyon of the  
 16 fyre putte in-to it by the grekes, In so grete largenesse,  
 that for the thicke tenebrosite of the blacke smoke  
 whych the place hadde enbraced and yssued oute, The  
 sterres of the heuen hadde wythholden theyr clere  
 20 illustracyons, And had no faculte ne power by theyr  
 naturel lyghte to enlumyne the sayd place / And  
 that none eye of ony persone coude perceyue ony  
 thyng / but aHe onely by the domageous clereness  
 24 of the fyre deuourynge the pompe of Troye. ¶ Now  
 was that pyetous cyte / somtyme example in aHe  
 goode vertues aboue aHe other cytees of the worlde,  
 aHe brent, and putte in desolacyon suffretous / Abydyng  
 28 onely one of the yates of the same town, named in theyr  
 langage the yate stex, whiche was made soo maysterly /  
 that the Ingenyous subtylte of maistres of masonrye  
 carpentrye / that of all y<sup>e</sup> countreye of Asie it passed  
 32 aHe other in efforte and strengthe ¶ It was made of  
 soo hye and exceHente ourage :

CAP. I.

Plasmator takes  
Polydore's gold.

[\* B ij, back]

Troy burnt by  
the Greeks.One gate alone  
remains un-  
destroyed.

## CAP. II.

¶ How the cyte was cruely sette a fyre,  
and on a flamm; And how Eneas, armed,  
bare his fader oute of the same cyte.

¶ capitulo. ij. 4

**B**Y the same yate stex, thenne sette in fyre and  
flamme, And smokyng the totall desolacyon  
of the sayd plase of Troye, lyke as the goddes  
and fortune hadde enterprysed to destroye soo arty- 8  
fyeyall a werke vnto the laste stone and foundemente  
of so hye a place / \* And by horryble and cruel  
indynacyon to throwe down / destroye, and confounde  
the pompeuse and proude noblenes of thynhabytants 12  
of Troye / and also theyr possessyons and hauoyr,  
cyuyles and other / And vnder the tenebres and  
derkenes, departed Eneas, armed clerly at all pieces  
in the facyon of a cote armour vpon his harnoys / 16  
The despoyle of a ryght horryble and moche cruel  
lyon, Whiche the said Eneas hadde kyHed and slayne.  
And the sayd eneas bare vpon his sholdres his fader  
Anchises / the whiche thenne, by olde age and lyuyng 20  
many yeres, his bloode was wexen colde soo moche,  
that he myghte not walke ne helpe him selfe by  
moeyng / And thus Anchises, trussed vpon the  
sholdres of his sone eneas, helde a coffre weH rychely 24  
adournd wyth many precyous stones in facyon and  
manere of a shryne, In the whiche were the goddes of  
Troye, and grete and diuerce relykes / whiche were the  
thynges / In whiche the famylye of Troye / the people 28  
and comynalte of Asie, hadde fixed theyr socoures /  
and thalegement of theyr angnysshous heynesses.  
¶ And Eneas, thus charged wyth his fader whome he  
bare wyth magnanymyte of courage, as sayd is / 32  
broughte his sone yolus by the ryght honde / beyng  
of the age of xij yere, soo fayr and so weHe com-  
posed, that it maye leefully be sayd that nature

[\* sign. B iij]

Flight of Aeneas,  
his wife Creusa,  
his son Yolus,  
and others, from  
Troy;

Aeneas carrying  
his father,  
Anchises, who

bore the gods of  
Troy.

The beauty of  
Yolus.

hadde doon her deuoyr, and holpen to the procreacyon  
of such a fygure for a patrone of mankynde. CAP. II.

¶ What shaft I saye more of Anchises and yolus, lyke  
4 as sayd is / ensiewed creusa his wyf, vncuryously  
aourned / Nothyng appertenaunt to thestate Royall / Distress of  
Creusa.  
hir vysage mate by frequente sources of grete teeris /  
And hir heyr, whiche by manuel artyfices hadde  
8 dyligently be enryched, lete theym hangynge in-  
dyfferently and alle rufflyd on alle partyes, wythout ony  
hope of amendemente / It sholde be an \*harde thyng [\* B iij, back]  
to many one, to putte in forgetynge her swete firste  
12 lyf, and now her deploracyon / It is a greuous thyng  
to me to passe ouer so lyghtly the lamentable circum-  
staunces of her sorowful heynesses in soo fewe  
wordis / Now here after we shaft saye consequently  
16 that / that comynalte, and confusion of people alle  
byweppe / noble / vnnoble people, men, wymmen and  
children fleynge, ensiued Eneas, soo berynge his fader  
as sayd ys. It were a thyng inhumayne to beholde  
20 theym wythoute pyte / but yet more pyetous to telle it  
lyke as it was doon in dede / This companye vnhappy  
yssued oute of a ryght goode and habundaunte place  
of all thynges concupyssible to thappetyte of theyr  
24 desire / And so moche incertayne, after this dolourous  
exyle, in what regyon myghte happen the ende of  
theyr maleurouse and vnhappy destyneenes.

**T**His noble companye troian, somtyme in reste / and  
28 now vacabonde and fugytyf by the feeldes dar-  
danike, came and aryued in a porte of the see named  
simoys / and there, ryght pencyf, entred into the see,  
and by troblous reuolucyons of the vnndes or waves  
32 were broughte into the Ile of Anchandron, and passed  
thorough the foreste of yde, whiche is in the sayd countrey  
of troye / And here we shaft finyssh to speke of the  
sorowful and tedyous fleyng of the poure meschaunte  
36 and myserable troians / whiche hyder-to hadde folowed

A crowd of  
wretched Trojans  
follows Aeneas.

Reflections on  
their ill-fortune.

Aeneas and his  
company sail  
from the Simois.



CAP. II. Eneas / Eneas, by force of oores, and of the wawes of  
the see / arryued in the Royalne and countrey of  
Trace / lyke as the power of wynde, after the dysposi-  
cyon of his destenye, In-to the said place hadde broughte 4  
hym.

place where  
Polydore had  
been murdered,

[\* sign. B iij]

and begin to  
build a city.

It progresses  
slowly,

so they hold a  
feast and sacri-  
fice.

In the whiche place of Trace, Polydorus hadde be  
vylaynously slayn by Plasmator, kyng of the same  
Regyon of Trace. ¶ In this countrey of Trace, Eneas, 8  
whiche hadde \*grete tresours of the rychesse of Troye /  
beganne to edyfye a cyte named Eneade, takynge it of  
his name. Neuertheles, by cause that Eneas sawe the  
cyte by him bygonne, come not by the dyligence and 12  
operacyon of the werkemen to his perfeccyon / And  
that the sayd operacyon and dyffycyle werke myghte  
not in so shorte space of tyme to come to suche auause-  
mente and perfectyon / wythoute the dyligence, fauour / 16  
and goode wyHe of his goddys / the whiche, though  
they hadde ben horryble and cruel, and wythoute pyte  
to the troians to-fore the confusion and vtter destruc-  
tyon of theyr noble and honorable cyte / Neverthelesse, 20  
in this caas partyculer, they shewde theym selfe fauour-  
able ynough / And entendynge to gyue comforte, ayde  
and counseyl, to thendementes and engynes of the  
werkmen, whiche the cyte Eneyde bylded and edifyed, 24  
And therfor wolde and dysposed Eneas to halowe a  
daye prefxed in makynge sacrifyces to his goddis /  
after the solempnyte in suche a caas by the troians  
accustumed. And he hym selfe, as prynee and example 28  
of his people slewe a white buHe as crystall, to-fore the  
face of his goddys / And of the bloode that yssued  
of the same, wyth herte deuoute bysprange<sup>1</sup> ryghte  
humbly, and by grete loue and ardour of dylection, the 32  
hostel vpon the whiche the goddis were sette :

<sup>1</sup> orig. besprinkled



¶ How Eneas sacryfied to his goddis in the place where Polydorus had be slayn :

CAP. III.

Capitulo. iiij<sup>o</sup>.

4 **N**Ow, peraventure, it happened that Eneas made  
the celebracyon of the sacrifice to-fore sayd, in  
the selfe place / where as Polydorus hadde be slayne  
and buryed in the sande / by the see syde, By the in-  
8 humanyte and wyckednesse of Plasmator / In whiche  
place there hadde be accumyled, or heped, of sonde a  
lytyl hyHe or mounteyle / vpon whiche \* by the space  
of tyme / aboute eyghte or ix. yere, were yssued oute of  
12 the erthe smaHe busshes or lytyH trees, by humydyte  
and hete, depely enroted in the erthe, and vpon the  
lytyl hylle growen on heyghte, the whiche trees were  
named in frenshe murtyHers cornyHers. And on the  
16 side of the hiHe was an hye plotte, so nyghe that it  
shadowed by grete space the place where as was made  
the sayd sacryfye: Thoo trees apperceyued by Eneas  
came thider in enteneyon to cutte and hewe down some  
20 of the bowes and braunches, for to apparayHe / and make  
fayr the place of his sacrefyce / Lyke as we englysshe  
men doo whan we halowe ony solemnyte in the tyme  
of somer / In strowynge wyth herbes, and settinge vp  
24 of grene trees and bowes, in the chirches and chappeHis  
for to refresshe the people there assembled, by cause of  
the fest & solemnyte there to be halowed

The sacrifice was  
held on the spot  
where Polydore  
was buried.

[\* B iiij, back]

Aeneas goes to  
cut boughs to  
ornament his  
altar.

Part Caxton : see  
p. 189, col. 2.

The English  
custom of setting  
up trees and  
boughs in  
churches in  
summer.

¶ How Eneas, in makynge the forsayd  
32 sacrificce, hewe the troneke of a tree / oute  
of the whiche yssued bloode : And how  
Polidorus declared the sygnifycaeyon and  
the maner of the sayd myracle, and the  
32 wythe of the goddys. Capitulum iiij

## CAP. IV.

**E**Nneas thenne, by ardeur of grete deuocyon, and for affection that he hadde humbly to hallowe this festyuyte, as sayd is / toke an axe cuttynge on bothe sides, And as I suppose, it was after the facion of a 4 glayue or guysarme / wyth whiche he hewe and smote doun wyth grete myghte those trees, for to arraye and make fayr the sayd aulter. The whiche trees, soo cutte and entamed by the sayd Eneas, yssued oute in an 8 habondaunte cours a source of blacke bloode droppynge doun to the erthe / And on the same axe, in manere of grete droppes of bloode; by whiche \*shewynge, Eneas was gretly abasshed and dredefuH, merueyHyng what 12 thyng that myghte sygnifye. And for to haue knowleche of this myracle and of aHe the faytte therof, The sayd Eneas knelyd doun on bothe his knees, bi grete humylyacyon of herte and<sup>1</sup> deuoute affectyon, his 16 hondes Ioyne, to-fore the sayd aulter, in makynge requeste vnto the troian goddys and to the goddys of the forestes, that they, by theyr diuine and ineffable inspyracyon, wolde gyue to hym knowleche of this 20 materyaHe vysion / The whiche prayer ended, and wythoute hauynge ansuer of the goddys troians by hym adoured and eadid on / After, by courage more haultayn, wythoute ony proude thoughte / purposed in 24 hym selfe to arache or plucke vp a gretter tree whiche was there, whiche empesshed and letted hym / by force, vygour / and naturaHe myghte, wythoute socoure of ony instrumente artifycyaHe. And for to demeane this to 28 effecte / Eneas sette thenne one knee vpon the sonde, and that other ayenste the branche growen and comen oute of the lytyH hylle where as was buried Polydorus / And on that other side he toke the braunches of the 32 sayd tree, and by grete myghte and bodyli strengthe / enforced his puyssaunce for to arache and plucke vp the same tree. Duryng the whiche efforte, was herde

Blood issuing  
from trees as he  
cuts them

[\* leaf B 5]  
alarms Aeneas.

He prays for  
explanation, but  
receives no  
answer,

so endeavours to  
pull one tree up  
by the roots.

<sup>1</sup> orig. and

a voys feble, as of a persone aHe sorowfuHe and by- CAP. IV.  
 wepte / and nyghe aHe fayHed and deed. The whiche  
 sayd, "alas, Ene eas ! this is but lytyll prowesse to the,  
 4 to proue and excersice thy robuste puyssaunce ayenste Polydore then  
 a body pryued frome his lyf / or vpon a deed corps to speaks from his  
 take vengeance soo Inutyle / And by cause, my ryghte grave.  
 dere brother and my goode frende, I, very sorowfuH  
 8 whiche so moche haue loued the whan the lyf was in  
 me, and that the naturel hete of blood humayn com-  
 forte my membris, & made \*theym vegytalle wyth [\* B 5, back]  
 sencyble moeuynge / I swere to the, by the goddis  
 12 whom thou seruest / & whom thou now in profounde  
 deuocyon hast requyred, that thou cease to trauayHe  
 and poursiwe me deed : For herof I make the certayn /  
 that I am Polydorus, sone of Pryame, kynge of Troye,  
 16 he lyuinge / whiche haue ben by cruel deth and trayson,  
 hidde & couerde vnder holy amyte, putte oute of this  
 worlde by plasmator, kynge of this countree and  
 Regyon / For the aueryce Insacyable whiche was in  
 20 hym, And that had hardynesse to commyse and doo  
 this cryme soo moche deffamed, and fuH of so excecrable  
 cruelte arrettyd / O cursid and false deceyuable auaryce /  
 whiche blyndeth the volunteers humayn / and maketh  
 24 by his subtyl arte the ryche men suffretous and poure ;  
 and fether for to gete rychesse, to commyse cryme and  
 homyside by dampnable treason / And I, Polydorus,<sup>1</sup>  
 fethermore shewe and manyfeste to the / that the  
 28 haboundaunce of bloode whiche thou haste seen yssue  
 oute of the trees / which woldeste haue cutte and  
 plucked vp / is not orygynally of thyse trees / but the  
 sayd trees haue taken theyr foundemente and firste  
 32 begynnynge of theyr rote in my body ; and by that  
 moyen is the sayd bloode largely comen, and hath  
 aroused the erthe, and yssued oute of my body, and  
 nowher eHis / And for this cause I the exhorte and

Tells them who  
he is,

and that the  
blood from the  
trees is his.

<sup>1</sup> orig. Plydorus

## CAP. IV.

Polydore  
reminds Aeneas  
of his marriage  
with his sister,

counceyHe / that thou ne defoyHe nomore thyn hondes  
wyth my bloode. And holde it by cause of my suster  
crusa, the whiche was gyuen to the for wyf, of my  
parentis and frendes, in maryage / 4

[\* leaf B 6]

and tells him he  
must not stay  
there, but that  
he was destined  
by the gods to go  
to Italy.

**A**Nd by cause that thou, Eneas, haste bygonne to  
edyfye and bylde a newe cytee in this Royalme  
of Trace, in the perfection of the same thou procedyng,  
hast now, vpon y<sup>e</sup> grete materyaH foundements, made 8  
basteHes of werke & ouerage maynyfyke: but y<sup>e</sup> wyH  
of the goddis haue ordeyned \* and concluded by a  
counseyl emonge theym selfe, that this lande shaH not  
receyue ne socoure the / But shaHe be chased and 12  
fugytyf fro Troye / but bi the sentence irreuocable of  
theym / is destenyed to the / the swete countrey of  
ytalye, ful of fruytes / for there to be releued, And to  
comforte myserable heynynesse whiche thou haste longe 16  
suffred, by cause of thyne exyle / Soo departe thou  
thenne fro this londe, maculate, and full of fylthe and  
ordure, by the bloody faytte vppon me doon by the false  
and cruel Plasmator, kynge of thys Regyon / And goo 20  
thou in-to the countrey whiche is ordeyned for the and  
thyne, by the prouidence, benyuolence, and prouysion  
of the goddis.”

**S**O moche Polydorus hadde opened and declared 24  
to Eneas the secrete of his vysions / that eneas  
was surprysed wyth drede Inestymable, aHe in a  
traunce, And soo abode a longe tyme ynough, lyke a  
corps wythoute entendemente / And wythoute party- 28  
cypacyon of sensityf moeuyng. And for tymorsite,  
and thyng not acustumed, merueyllous & Insolute,  
as sayd is, his tonge abode & clyued to the palate  
of his mounth in suche manere / that duryng the 32  
langorous tyme that polidorus tolde this vysion  
myserable, It was inpossyble to hym to excercyse  
thoffyce of his tongue to hym destynate by nature /  
neuertheles, after that nature hadde stablysshed his 36

Aeneas is struck  
dumb with  
astonishment.

wytte and spyritte, and giuen to eche of theym  
faculte & power to excersice theyr offyce and wordes /

CAP. IV.

The sayd Eneas ordeyned that the cause<sup>1</sup> of Polydorus,

[<sup>1</sup> for corpse]

4 yssued of his bloode and genealogye, sholde be restored  
and halowed honours funeraHe / And to his goddis  
make sacryfyces apperteynyng for to gete the grace  
of theym / that they might rendre theym selfe  
8 benygne, merciful / debonayr / and propyee vnto the  
helthe of polydorus.

On recovering  
Aeneas resolves  
to perform  
funeral rites to  
Polydore.

\* ¶ Thobsequyes of Polidorus.

[\* B 6, back]

### Capitulum V.

12 **F**Or the obsiquyes funeraH of Polydorus to bryng  
to effecte, so was the aulter establysshed for to

CAP. V.

halowe the sacrifice / And therupon putte & sette  
the goddes of troye / which were of colour sanguelyn

Aeneas sacrifices  
in honour of  
Polydore.

16 & reed; and eneas, & his felaushyppe chosen by hym  
for to make and exhibete the sayd sacrefyce, weren  
aHe generallly symple, & enuyronned wyth bendes  
of his whiche enuyronned vnder the throte, mountynge

20 vppe to the temples bytwene their frontes & eres, vnto  
the toppe of the heed / And vpon theyr hedes they  
had chapelettis of braunches of cypresse, whiche grewe  
nygh the montycle or lityl hyHe where as Polydorus

24 was buried / whiche is a tree sacred and ordeyned  
to the ende that, by the vehemente odour and swete  
smette of the same tree, maye surmounte the infecte  
odour of the caroynes of the dede bodyes / And the

Costume of the  
sacrificers.

28 wymmen of Troye whiche had folowed Eneas whan  
he departed fro troye, were tofore the sayd aulter with  
oute apparayH, ne wythoute retchyng ought by theym  
selfe in any wyse. For the sayd wymmen were aHe

32 dyssheuelled, or bare the heed, makynge meruelogus  
synacles, as theyr custume was in that tyme in that  
countre also, and semed better, wymmen oute of theyr  
wyttes, than porueyd of countenance or constauce.

## CAP. V.

The cymplis or  
buckets used in  
sacrifice.

**F**or y<sup>e</sup> *consommacion* of the said sacrifice, eneaſ ordeyned to take many cymphes, *that* ben vessels ordeyned for to make ſuche sacrifice, & ben in maner of lityl bokettis, or lytyl ſhippes, of a ſtrange ſtone, & 4 of dynerſe colours / as iaſpre, porphire / of whiche ſom were full of blood of beſtis ſacrifyed, & other full of mylke clere & clene / the whiche veſſellis, in habundaunce of deuocion, they cam about y<sup>e</sup> ſayd 8 montyele or lityl hiſh of polidorus / in recomending y<sup>e</sup> ſayd polidorus to \*the debonnayr clemence and mercyful iuſtyce of the goddis.

[\* leaf B 7]

**T**henne Eneas and all his ſequelle made theym 12 redy for to accompliſſhe & leue the ſayd countrey of Traſe, by the admonement of the ſayd Polydorus, ſone of pryame, kynge of Troye / mounted vpon the ſee. And was there long and many<sup>1</sup> dayes / 16 Soo thenne we ſhall leue to ſpeke of Eneas / And ſhall reſturne to ſpeke of dydo / And fiſt to ſhewe the dyfference of Ioſhū bochace and of vyrgyle, to putte in bryef the faſh of the ſayd dydo recounted 20 by bochace / and after by the ſayd virgyle.

Aeneas and his  
companions go to  
ſea.

Dido.

Difference be-  
tween Virgil's  
and Boccaccio's  
account of her.

¶ Here bigynneth thiſtorye, how dydo departed from y<sup>e</sup> countrey. ¶ ca . . vj<sup>o</sup>

## CAP. VI.

**T**hat other daye, in paſſyng tyme, I redde the faſh 24 of noblys / of who mIhoñ bochace hath ſpoken, & in brief, y<sup>e</sup> aduentures of fortune harde & dyuerſly excecrable / & in all deſtructyue of theyr perſonis / honoures / goodes / and chyuaunches; of whom the 28 ſomme haue ben cauſe of ther harme & euyl, & of the deſtruction of whiche ſome be yet. and how be it that thei ben pourneyed moche more *that* it apperteyneth to theym, ſeen theyr ſcyence, prowesſe, vaiHyantyſe or 32 ſeruyce after theſtate & their vocacion, in the whiche eche ought to holde and be content / like as ſaith

Boccaccio's  
Fall of Noblys.

<sup>1</sup> orig. many



thappostle, wythout doying grief or ony nuyssaunce /  
 ne to bere dommage, ne myssaye ony other / this not-  
 wystondyng, alwaye they be in awayte / & delite  
 4 themselfe to seehe often tymes meanes for to grieue,  
 & to saye wordes detractiues / wherof foloweth y<sup>e</sup>  
 perdyccion of moche peple, & of them selfe in the  
 ende / whiche therin haue medeled ¶ And after  
 8 certayne space I hadde been in beholdyng the  
 peryHous aduentures / and fortunes ryghte sorowfuHe /  
 of many kynges, prynces, or knyghtes, and many  
 other / I fonde the faHe of dydo, somtyme quene and  
 12 foundresse of the noble cyte \* of cartage; the whiche  
 in redyng, I was abasshed, and had grete merueylle /  
 how bochace, whiche is an auctour so gretly renommed,  
 hath transposed, or atte leste dyuersified, the faHe  
 16 and caas otherwyse than vyrgyle hath in his fourth  
 booke of Eneydos / In whiche he hath not rendred  
 the reason / or made any decysion, to approue better  
 the his than that other. And yf ony wolde excuse  
 20 hym, and saye that he hadde doon hit for better to  
 kepe thonour of wymmen, And wolde not treate ne  
 saye thyng of theym dyshoneste, but that myghte  
 be to theyr auauncement, ¶ This reason hath noo  
 24 place: For he hath putte in many places other grete  
 faHes, ouermoche infamous, of some quenens and ladyes /  
 and hath not suffeyed to hym to speke atte in  
 generall, but hath made expresse chapytres / In  
 28 blamyng the complexions of theym; By the whiche  
 partyculerly he sheweth the dyssolucyons and peruerse  
 condycyons that ben in the sexe femynyne / And for  
 to shewe euydently vpon the sayd caas and falle, the  
 32 dyfference whiche is of vyrgyle and of bocace, I haue  
 enterprysed to shewe atte a longe the texte of vyrgyle /  
 The causes and occasions of the laste extynctyon, and  
 dolourous deth and despyte of the recommee of dydo,  
 36 otherwyse callyd or named Elysse or Fenyce ¶ But

CAP. VI.

Boccaccio's Fall  
of Noblys.

[\* B 7, back]

His account of  
Dido.The French  
writer wonders  
why Boccaccio  
differs from  
Virgil's story in  
the Aeneid.Boccaccio often  
shows the per-  
verse conditions  
of the sex femi-  
nine.Dido also called  
Elysse or  
Fenyce.



CAP. VI. fyrste and to-fore, for better, and to vnderstande the mater, I haue purposed to recyte here the caas / and falle, after the oppynyon of Iohn bocace, whiche sayth as here after shaH ensiewe and folowe :— 4

**Y**F In any maner fayth oughte to be adiousted vnto the wrytynges and dyetes of olde and auneyente cronycles or historyers / Or to theyr letters, cronykes and historyes / Vnneth maye men fynde ony 8 of soo grete langage ¶ And dygne to yeue magnyfycence / \*and somoche deuyne renomnee / as to the hye name of Fenyce / whereof the rayson maye be this / how be it that thauctour putte not preecysely 12 dedycte wythoute texte / by cause that the Fenyces were the fyrst Inuentours of carecteris dyfferencyng that one fro that other, of whiche were fourmed lettres for to write & redyng in remembarunce perpetual, y<sup>e</sup> 16 thynges that they desireden to late be knownen to theyr frendis / or otherwyse for the conseruacyon of theyr dedes / fayttes, & scyences / to thende that they myghte reduyce in souuenaunce or remembraunce, by 20 thynspection and lecture of theyr wrytyngys, that whiche by lengthe of tyme, & debylte of entendement, sholde be wythdrawen / Or otherwyse sholde haue be forgotten it, and put in oublyaunce, that the fenyces 24 fonde to note wyth rede colour or ynke fyrste the sayd lettres / of whiche our bokes ben gretely decorate, socoured & made fayr. We wryte the grete and fyrste capytaH lettres of our volumes, bookes and chapytres, 28 wyth the taynture of reed colour :

**T**He name thenne, and Royallme of Fenyce, hath be moche hiely decored by merueyHous artes / and myrifyke / In ioyouse preysynge and laude wherof, 32 the clerenes and fame of his ourages hath ben dyuulged & shewed vnto the laste clymate of londes habited wyth lygnage royaHe ¶ Oute of the whiche Fenyce and prosapye auneyenne / as it is to byleue by 36

[\* leaf B 8]

The name of Fenyce.

Letters invented by the Phoenicians,

who first made red initials for decoration of books.

Dido, daughter of Belus, King of Phoenicia, and sister of his

- theyr wrytyngys / yssued a kynge named Belus / After  
 the dethe of whome / one his sone, named pygmaleon,  
 succeeded hym / And obteyned the Royalme of the  
 4 Fenyces ¶ He hadde also a daughter named Elysse,  
 whiche afterwarde was named dydo, & was maryed to  
 one named Acerbe / otherwyse called Sychee (his vncl  
 was preest of hercules), honoured wel in the royaume of  
 8 thy\*re, and the gretest of aHe the countreie after  
 the kyng of the same / This gentylman was moche  
 fayr to byholde / yonge / & playsaunt, of grete reuer-  
 ence / ryght honorable emonge them of the countre / of  
 12 grete audacyte / and of name magnyfyque, ryght moche  
 byloued of Elysse / Thenne his wyf, whiche thenne  
 he loued also moche of fyne loue wythout fayntasie,  
 whiche sone after fayled by his deth anguysshous,  
 16 wherof thenne it happed after the Iugemente that to  
 hym was fortunat / that he was so bienewrous that he  
 was emonge aH other esteemed to be most in Ioye &  
 gladnes, considering the beaute and bounte of dydo  
 20 his wyf, And also of grete rychesses / of whiche  
 Acerbe, otherwyse callyd Sychee, was moche endowed,  
 & hadde preemynence in ryght grete habundaunce :
- 24 **B**Y the couetyse of whiche goodes & rychesses /  
 pygmalyon, brother of Elysse, and kynge of the  
 countrey, was sore esprysed / For whiche cause the  
 deth was conspyred of the fayr Sychee, the sayd  
 pygmalyon thynkyng in hymselfe to doo slee hym,  
 28 And by this moyen he sholde attayne to thende of his  
 desire & wyH insacyable and fuH of couetyse, And  
 soo to hym selfe he sholde atte vsurpe his grete &  
 Innumerable rychesses / and lyke as he thought / he  
 32 dyd / and dyd do slee Acerbe or Sychee / Thenne  
 dydo, his swete & amyable spouse & wyf, bare  
 it moche inpacyentli and sorowfuH / & in suche  
 anguysshe of herte / that she swowned, syncopysed,  
 36 & syghed / And oute of her fayr swete eyen / &

CAP. VI.

successor Pyg-  
malion, is  
married to  
Sychæus or  
Acerbas of Tyre,

[\* B 8, back]

to whom she  
is tenderly  
attached.

Wealth of  
Sychæus.

Pygmalion

murders  
Sychæus for his  
riches.

## CAP. VI.

Dido mourns  
grievously for  
Sychæus,

[\* sign. C j]

and thinks of  
leaving Tyre on  
account of the  
covetousness of  
Pygmalion.

tendre, flowed teeris assyduatly and contynueHy, that  
they better seemed two grete sources wellynge vp  
grete affluence of teerys, whiche ranne down by hir  
fayr & freshe vysage / And thus the sayd dydo suffred 4  
grete payne for the grete and harde syghynges & heuy-  
nesses, by cause of y<sup>e</sup> grete, horri[b]yle / nephande /  
& \*detestable cryme, perpetrated and commysed in the  
persone of sychee, her swete and late amyable husbonde / 8  
longe tyme demeaned she suche clamours wythoute  
ony hope euer otherwyse to lyue; And alwaye she  
considerynge the causes of the sayd cryme / and the  
couetyse of her sayd brother pygmalyon / And that 12  
many tymes by dremes and other admonestements was  
ofte tymes incyted and counseyHed to seche some  
place sure and secrete / And thenne of thobeyssaunce  
of the sayd pygmalyon / for the surete of hir persone, 16  
she comened wyth the prynces of the same contrey, &  
specyally wyth the pryncipaH whiche hadde be frendes  
of Sychee, late hir husbonde / and shewed to theym  
the causes by the whiche she hadde conceyued this 20  
grete hate ayenste her brother pygmalyon / whom she  
drew to her part and side, and were content to doo  
aHe that / whiche by hir sholde be aduysed / for to  
wythstande the cursed enterpryse of hir sayd broder, 24  
whiche had concluded in him selfe, and to-fore thought /  
Thenne sone after a wyke, Elysse faynyng that she  
ne myghte no lenger dueHe in the hous of Acerbe, late  
her husbonde, by cause that she was ouermoeche moleste 28  
and greued by recordynge continuel in rememarbunee  
pictous of the swete mayntene and semblance of the  
sayd Sychee, her preteryte husbonde, But she incyted,  
frequented ofte the places in whiche she had firste seen 32  
her true frende and loue sichee / And therefore wyth  
aHe the hanoyr and other goodis of the sayd Acerbe  
that he posseded in his lyfe, ryght gladly she wolde  
dispose hir self to goo vnto the Royame of fenyece, the 36

countrey of her nayssaunce and byrthe, vnto pygmalion  
 hir brother / whiche, whan he herde of it, was moche  
 Ioyous / supposynge<sup>1</sup> by that moyen to come to his  
 4 insacyable and cursyd auaryce / for to haue all the  
 rychesses & other goodes<sup>2</sup> to-fore sayd. Forthwyth  
 \* the sayd pygmalyon sente vnto his suster dydo a flote  
 of shyppes, weH manned and garnysshed, for to brynge  
 8 wyth her the goodes and rychesses of the sayd Royame  
 of Thir, in-to fenyece vnto hym / But dydo / by other  
 barate, as she then hadde ordeyned / and that alwaye  
 thoughte to eschewe and gaynstonde the fraude of hir  
 12 sayd broder, toke and hydde priuely in a certeyn  
 place of hir shippe all the grete tresours & hauoyrs  
 of hir sayd somtyme husbonde siched. And in the  
 place where they were, she sette many sakes full of  
 16 brasse & coper, the whiche, all manyfestely or openly  
 in the presence of all hir people, whiche supposed  
 thenne / that it hadde ben the tresour of her late  
 husbonde / And dyd it to be taken from thens, and to  
 20 carye and bere hit to the shippe at euyn, wyth thoo  
 people whiche to-fore is made mencyon / And the  
 messagers of the sayd kynge pygmalyon, whiche were  
 comen to fetche hir / mounted vpon the sayd shyppe  
 24 for to goo in-to fenyece. And whan they were weH on  
 the waye oute of the lande, in the hye see, she com-  
 maunded to caste oute the sakes of brasse and coper /  
 where they in the ship hadde supposed that it hadde  
 28 ben the tresours that she broughte wyth her; And  
 that doon, she sayd to theym, wepyng, these incitatyf  
 wordes :

“Dere felawes and frendes of our nauye / I doubte  
 32 nothyng but that ye haue the wyH for taccomplysshe  
 that whiche I commaunde you / wythoute to aske or  
 wyH to knowe any wyse this whiche ye haue doon /  
 But for to saye & telle to you the cause whiche haue

## CAP. VI.

Dido proposes to  
 go to Phoenicia  
 to her brother,

[\* C j, back]  
 who sends her a  
 fleet.

She puts on  
 board many bags  
 of sham money,  
 and sails, and

then throws  
 overboard the  
 bags.

She addresses  
 her men.

<sup>1</sup> orig. supposyuge.

<sup>2</sup> orig. grodes.

CAP. VI. moeued me thus to doo, I haue moche lieuer to haue  
 loste aHe the riches of Acerbe, late my frende &  
 husbond, the whiche ye haue now drowned wythin the  
 bely of the see / than I sholde delyuer theym in-to 4  
 the handes of the ryght cruel kynge Pygmalion, my  
 brother; for the whiche rychesses to haue<sup>1</sup> of me /  
 after that he \*hath taken the lyf awaye fro my swete  
 and true husbonde, he hath sente you hider for to 8  
 brynge me to hym wyth his shippes / And therefore  
 thynke veryli that it behoueth you presenly to doo  
 and holde me companye, or eHs deye / or flee from  
 hym / ye haue<sup>2</sup> knowen ynoughe his grete and cursid 12  
 auaryce, And how he hath doo slee Acerbe or Syche,  
 my late husbonde, for to haue of him his tresours.  
 Wherfor I doubte not that now, after the rychesses  
 loste, yf we goo to hym / he shaH be soo surprysed 16  
 wyth angre and furyouse woodnes / whan he shaH  
 see hym selfe soo deceyued & put fro his entente, that  
 he shaH moche sore tormente vs / and at thende put  
 vs to dethe; the whiche, sith that he hath wythdrawen 20  
 & taken awaye hym / whiche was aHe my wele / I  
 shaHe take it in gree & gladly. But I haue compassyon  
 of you, whiche in this caas haue no culpe ne blame /  
 of the grieuous paynes & myserable tormentes of 24  
 whiche he shaH make you to haue by afflyctyon / And  
 therefore late vs treate by one acorde / yf ye wyHe  
 flee from the countrey of my brother wyth me / and  
 eschewe his gret furour / I shaH abandoune my lyf 28  
 wyth you, my good cytezeyns, whiche be here in  
 dangeour of myserable deth / And offre my selfe to  
 brynge & conducte you in-to some other place of  
 surete, where as we shaH lyue more at our case, in 32  
 places of Ioyous dwelHynge, wythoute to haue more  
 drede of hym / ne of the grete doubte & fere of his  
 cruel tyrannye" / thus were moeued & attyred by thex-

Dido advises her  
 men to seek a  
 refuge elsewhere  
 with her,

to avoid Pygma-  
 lion's anger if  
 they go empty-  
 handed to him.

She offers to  
 guide them to  
 some other  
 place.

<sup>1</sup> orig. hane.

<sup>2</sup> orig. hane.

hortacyon of dydo, & her swete monicyons and pyetous  
 prayers / aHe the maronnners, of one accorde wyth aHe  
 the other, in the shippe How wel it was to theym  
 4 moche harde a thyng to habandoune & leue the swete  
 countrey of theyr natiuyte / AHe that notwyth-  
 standyng, they accorded & greed to doo aH hir wyH /  
 & the prores or forship whiche lay toward the countre  
 8 of thir, \*toured anone towarde the Royame of Cypre,  
 for to goo in-to that countrey / There fonde they  
 the preste of Iubyter, wyth his wyf and aHe his  
 meyne, vaticynaunte or propheeyeng thynges moche  
 12 merueyllous, in pronostycacyon righte happy of their  
 fleeynge and voyage; the whiche, wyth his wyf and  
 meynage, wente anone wyth theym, and not knowynge  
 in-to what countrey, for to sojourne and passe forthe  
 16 theyr yongthe, in some place of peas and of surete for  
 to abide. Also to thende that their name perysshe not  
 wythoute remembraunce for faulte of lygnee / And a  
 while they abode in the countree / whiche were well  
 20 pleased wyth theyr conuersacyon, and maryages of  
 theyr doughters to theym, in eschewynge to faHe in-to  
 olde age, not socoured wyth children & maynage /  
 whiche sholde yssue of theyr lygnage for tenhabyte  
 24 the countrey, and maintene theyr name and remem-  
 braunce perpetuel / And in conclusion, they decended  
 from their shippes to the lande, and at the ryuage of  
 the same they toke indede lxx maydens, and anone  
 28 putte theym in-to their shippes, the whiche, after the  
 custome auneyen of the cypriens thider comen, receyued  
 for to wynne y<sup>e</sup> duete of maryage wyth men of aHe  
 countreys and nacyns that thider came fro aHe  
 32 partyes / And syth after, made festes and sacryfices to  
 venus the goddessse. For after duryng their maryage /  
 to be obserued, holden and kepte chaste aHe the tyme  
 of theyr lyf, as yf they offred to the sayd venus theyr  
 36 laste sacryfices & obsequyes for to goo oute fro hir

CAP. VI.

Dido's men all  
 agree to go with  
 her.

[\* C ij, back]  
 They land in  
 Cyprus,

take on board  
 70 maidens,

and sacrifice to  
 Venus.



CAP. VI. subiectyon, and to be from her exempte from thenne  
forthon :

CAP. VII. ¶ How dydo arryued in Lybye, a straunge  
countrey, and boughte as moche londe or 4  
grounde / as she myghte conteyne wythin  
the space of the hide of an oxe. in whiche  
she buylded and edyfyed the cyte of  
Cartage / Capitulum vij. 8

[\* sign. C iij]

\* **A** Nd from thens departed dydo, wyth aHe hir  
nauye, in passynge the see ; and alwaye wyth-  
drawynge fro the sayd londe of fenycce, arryued vpon  
the Ryuage of affryque for to repayre hir shyppes / 12  
And there boughte of thynhabitauntis of the same  
countrey, as moche lande or grounde / as she myghte  
enuyronne wyth the hide of an oxe / whiche dyd doo  
corroye weH, and after dyd doo cutte hit soo in a 16  
thonge so smaHe and longe, that she enuyronned moche  
more quantyee of the grounde of the sayd countrey than  
the Inhabytantes seHars supposed sholde euer haue ben.  
In the sayd place, durynge the tyme that dydo and her 20  
felawshyppe, whiche by longe tyme hadde ben in grete  
trauayHe vpon the see / whyche moche hadde greued  
theym, and throwen theym in mani dyuerse countreys,  
were thenne vnder the proteccyon and swete reconsily- 24  
acyon & rest / they dyd doo repayre theyr nanyre / &  
sette it wyth / grete payne, aHe in poynte, wyth aHe  
thynges to theym necessarye. Thenne thenhabytauns  
and theyr neyghbours by / began to treatte wyth theym 28  
curtoysly, and ofte vysited theym, wythoute to doo  
to theym ony grief / moleste, or thyng that oughte to  
dysplease theym / but wyth aH gre and frendlynnes,  
wythoute puttynge on theym lothlynnes as straungers. 32  
They of the countree byganne to holde parlyamente  
wyth theym, and toke amytyes & alyauunce wyth theym /

Dido arrives  
in Africa, and  
buys as much  
land as can be  
contained by an  
ox hide.

Her people and  
the natives be-  
come friendly.



## CAP. VII.

& admynystred to theym marchaundysses, and dyd alle  
 other thynges whiche is acustomed to be doon bytwene  
 neyghbours and good frendes: Thenne dydo & hir  
 4 barons, seeyng the fruytful dysposicyon and bounte of  
 the sayd place, semed to theym that they oughte to  
 make an ende of their fuyte or fleeynge / and anone  
 elysse or dydo, to theym dyscouerde the fraude that she  
 8 had don / & shewed wherfore she had throwen in-to  
 the see the sackes a-forsayd, ful of brasse & coper / se-  
 \* mynge that hit had ben the tresour of Sychee, her late  
 husbonde / whiche theenne she shewed to theym, wherof  
 12 then they were moche Ioyous, & gretly encoraged wyth  
 goode hope / & concluded anone to buylde & edefye  
 a newe cyte there / And caste & toke the foundement  
 for to make a cyte there / and there they abode aft to  
 16 gyder / And in soo makyng, they fonde wythin the  
 ground, in diggyng to make the foundementes, the hed  
 of an horse, whiche gaaf to theym hardynes / courage  
 & destyne to preysinge of the place to be propyee and  
 20 acceptable, the whiche was thenne purposed to be closed  
 & enuyronned wyth wallis autentyke / And the cyte  
 was named, as some saye, Cartage, by cause that the  
 cyreuyte of the place was enuyronned wyth the thonge  
 24 of a skynne or hyde, as to-fore is sayd. And the  
 casteH of the toun was named biose, takynge his name  
 of the hide of an ox / whiche they hof Tir called  
 burse :

Dido shows her  
 people that she  
 had deceived  
 them, and still  
 has her hus-  
 band's treasure.  
 [\* C ij, back]

They found a  
 city,

called Carthage,  
 and its castle is  
 called Biose.

Derivation of the  
 names.

28 **T**His cyte in shorte espace, for the commodyties of  
 the same, and situaeyon plentiuous, was strongly  
 enhabited wyth moche folke & peple / Of whom dydo  
 was lady & quene, and gaaf to theym lawes & manere  
 32 of lynyng, and gouernaunce of goode maners / &  
 admynystred entiere iustyce to hir subgettis / in hir  
 housholde & menaige / she mayntened her ryght  
 honestly / And the purpose of hir holy chastite, she  
 36 enterteined & kepte wythoute to breke it / thus thenne

Dido is Queen of  
 Carthage.

CAP. VII.

Carthage  
flourishes  
greatly.

[\*sign. C liij]

Fortune never  
allows pros-  
perity to con-  
tinue long.The King of the  
Musitaynes or  
Momydes desires  
her in marriage  
with threats.

elysse, presidente as quene ouer aH the people / cam to  
 hir entente desired / & in stede of wepynges, vnmesur-  
 able sorowe whiche she had suffrid, & had ben in gret  
 afflyction in Thir, for the nephande deth of hir sayd 4  
 somtyme husbond / she was in *that* place, cartage, wel  
 adourned of vertues / wherof thenne hir good fame &  
 renomee florysshyng, shone & resplendysshed merueyl-  
 lously in the countreys circumiacent & neyghbours, in 8  
 suche wy\*se that they whiche had lyued after the  
 maner of that countree, whiche was all dissonaunt &  
 dishoneste in regarde of *that* of dydo, toke the guyse /  
 the facons / & the industries of the cartagyons, in 12  
 leuyng their auneyent customes / whiche anon after  
 vanysshed awaye as thei neuer had be vsed / But this  
 notwythstondyng, fortune inpaceyente, whiche maye  
 not suffre the pe[r]sone longe to dweHe prosperous / ne 16  
 good werkes wythout enuye / sette & imposed vnder  
 the feet of the righte chaste quene, thyng slypper &  
 lubrik, for to make hir to ouerthrowe, & to brynge hir  
 in-to exyle lacrymable fro the place where hir glorye & 20  
 exaltacion ought to be replenysshed, encreased, &  
 manifested. for lyke as euery daye the beaulte, chastyte  
 & prudence augmented vnto all nacions straungers ferre  
 & nyghe / and the delectable name of hir cyte grewe 24  
 & reysed in praysing / A certayn kyng of the musi-  
 taynes or momydes, neyghbour to that countrey, was  
 right feruently esprised in y<sup>e</sup> lone of this quene, thenne  
 beyng wydowe / as sayd is, of hir firste husbonde sychee / 28  
 and sente to some prynces of that cyte, whom he  
 requyred to haue this quene dydo in maryage / sayenge  
 by grete menaces, yf he had her not / that he sholde  
 reduce that cyte into ruyne, & sholde put aH the people 32  
 therof in-to exyle / This thyng, seenge the sayd prynces,  
 & knowyng the ferme purpos permanable, whiche y<sup>e</sup>  
 quene had to enterteyne hir pudevye chastyte in  
 perpetuaH wydowed / durst not at y<sup>e</sup> firste manifeste 36

the petycion & desire of the sayd kyng, but by subtyl  
 meanes *entendyng* to drawe from hir som wordes  
 seruyng to theyr intencion / & vpon the whiche they  
 4 myghte fynde foundement & rayson indycatyf for to  
 moeue therto the sayd dydo / they reported to hir *that*  
 the kyng, for to lede a lyfe more honeste / demaunded  
 them for to haue some prynee of thyre or thyrayn / for  
 8 tenstrute hym in doctrynes & good ma<sup>n</sup>ers & con-  
 dyeyons, to lyue after the manere of theyr countre,  
 whiche to hym semed more honest & aggreable than  
 his owne / whiche for to doo they knew no man con-  
 12 nenyent & *propyee*, for so moche that none of the  
 countrey, but yf he were *constreyned*, wolde leue his  
 owne londe for to goo vnto suche a kyng, that vsed  
 so vyle / terryble & straunge lyf; And alwaye, yf ther  
 16 wente none to hym / he menaced and thretenyd to make  
 warre & fyght wyth theym, wherof myght faHe other  
 aunger & grete peryl to their newe cyte. The whiche  
 prynces, the quene repreued / shewyng to theym that,  
 20 for one man onely, ought not be cause to lose aH thother,  
 & to habandoune theyr countrey & lyf accustomed, and  
 to vse suche as beestes sauage doo / as werkes synystres  
 & barbares / "O right good cytezeyns, yf it happened  
 24 that one muste deye for the salute & wele of your  
 countrey, be ye not concluded so to doo & suffre / For  
 he is right vnhappy, that for his partyeuler wele wyH  
 leue y<sup>e</sup> publike & comyn wele / & contrary wyse, he is  
 28 blessyd that Ieopardeth hym to the deth for y<sup>e</sup> comen  
 wele of his countrey:"

CAP. VII.

Dido's nobles  
 misrepresent the  
 King of the  
 Musitaynes to  
 her.

[\* C iiij, back]

Dido reproves  
 them, and

answers that  
 the man who  
 gives his life for  
 the public good  
 is blest.

¶ How a kyng, neyghbour to cartage, dyde  
 demaunde to wyfe the fayr dydo, quene  
 32 of<sup>1</sup> Cartage, the whiche, for the loue of hir

<sup>1</sup> orig. yf:

CAP. VIII.

late husbond, had lieuere to slee her selfe,  
than to take the sayd kyng.

## Capitulo. viij

Dido's nobles  
then tell her  
she is sought in  
marriage by a  
neighbouring  
king, and they  
desire her  
consent.

Her grief.

[\* leaf C 5]

She demands 3  
months' delay,

and fortifies  
Carthage.

She curses her  
beauty.

And thenne seeyng the sayd wordes seruyng right 4  
wel to theyr purpoos, & to hir preiudye /  
Notefyden vnto the quene / how the sayd kyng had  
requyred her in maryage / and had made to theym the  
sayd menaces / in caas *that* they wolde not soo accorde 8  
to hym. The whiche knowleche to be achieued in the  
sentence by her pronounced, And that she her selfe  
was cause of her perdieyon, byganne moche strongly  
in flegyble lamentacyon to ca<sup>ll</sup>e longe by dolour and 12  
\* excessyue sorowe, the swete name of Acerbe hir  
preterit husbond / But in the ende they hadde deter-  
mynd, consydereyng that hit myghte be none other  
wyse, but she muste promyse to make this maryage / 16  
the whiche she accorded to theym, and helde for  
greable / And demaunded Induces and space of thre  
monethes, In whiche tyme she sholde doo her  
dyligence for to accomplysse a<sup>ll</sup>e theyr wy<sup>ll</sup>es / In 20  
this tyme duryng, as it maye be presupposed, yf any  
deffence was in the cyte whiche was not sette and  
ordeyned in couenable fortyfycacyon / She dyde it  
incontynente to be sette in poynt. And after this, she 24  
blamed longe her beaulte, in cursyng it by grete  
execracyon, wyth the grete enuye that fortune hadde  
vpon her, and the Ioyous aduentures, and prosperous,  
whiche were in late tyme comen to her / So that the 28  
grete playsaunce whiche she hadde taken with the  
swete reste of her thoughte / in whiche that she had  
repelled thanyryce of hir brother, by her we<sup>ll</sup> happy  
fleyng,<sup>1</sup> and her noble cyte edyfied newly / whiche 32  
thenne was accomplysshid, & wyth grete people en-  
habyted, a<sup>ll</sup>e subgette and obeyssaunt vnto the lawes

<sup>1</sup> orig. fleeyng

of her seynorye / thenne conuerted and chaunged in- CAP. VIII.  
to grete anguysshe myserable. After whan the terme

of thre monethis approched, the lady whiche was faHe

4 ayen in lacrymous and playnynge sorowes whiche she  
had hadde in tyme passed for the deth of Sychee, her  
somytyme husbonde, Dyde doo hewe doun and gader

She is in great  
sorrow, and  
makes a large  
funeral pile,

to gyder a ryght grete multytude of busshes and woode /

8 for to make a cruel fyre terryble and merueyllous in  
the hieste place of the cyte / and faynynge to mak

sacryfyce in the pyetous commemoracyon playsaunte to  
the pryue goddys for the laste obsequyes of the funeraHe

12 seruyce of Acerbe or Sychee, her sayd husbonde, In  
payenge the extreme tribute \*of remembraunce ytera- [ \* leaf C 5, back]

tyue / ne other wyse in ony maner the fagottis or  
woode clouen and broken / toke the swerde in hir

16 honde, & mounted vp aHe on hie vpon the woode redy  
for to sette on fire, in the presence of aH the peple.

on which  
she commits  
suicide,

byholdingyng by grete admyracyon what she wold doo,  
bigan to say: "my ryght good citezeyns, after your

20 ordynauunce I goo to the man;" that is to saye, that she  
was disposed to goo and marye her to the kyng for-

named / & sodaynly aH attones she lete her selfe faHe  
vpon the poynt of the swerde / whiche termyned &

24 ended in that hour hir lyf. Thenne for the deth, & hir  
innocente blood whiche maculate & bysprange aH

theym that stode by, she extyrped aH thynges sinystro  
whiche had mowe torne in preiudyce of the cyte &

to avoid marriage  
and save her  
people.

28 peple of cartage, for the reffuse of y<sup>e</sup> same maryage /  
yf any wolde haue gaynsayd it / The whiche thyng

seenge, they of cartage consideryng the charge soo cruel  
whiche the sayd sorowful lady had suffred for to kepe

32 hir cyte & the cytezeyns vnihurt & exempt from  
oppressyons of y<sup>e</sup> peple barbaryke / in whom they

were subcombed by cause of the sayd mariage, yf ony  
had be made / maden grete wepynges & right long

36 lamentacions in lacrymous playntis, syghynges, by-

CAP. VIII. waylleges, & other sorowfuH wordes. Thenne all the  
 peple were concludēd & brought to, by cause of the  
 deth of theyr quene dydo / bywayHyng & halowyng  
 funeraH exequyes contynuel by many dayes / longe 4  
 tyme after bi grete waiHynges, in pyetous remembraunce  
 of theyr ryght goode quene / whom they caHyd from  
 thenne forth on moder of theyr countrey / & enforced  
 theym to attribute aH honours humaynes & deuynes 8  
 by manere of the cruelte of hir deth / whiche hath  
 broughte thynges weHle fortunēd to the prosperous lyf  
 of hir cytezyns, was by theym in pyetous commemo-  
 racyon recompensēd / And after that they hadde ryght 12  
 affectuously \*recommaundēd her vnto the souerayn  
 goddis, and inferyours / that she myghte be blessyd as  
 longe as cartage sholde abyde inuynceyble / And they  
 shold make temples & aultres dedyed & halowed in hir 16  
 name / In whiche she sholde be enbraced & honowred  
 as a goddesse.

Dido is greatly  
 lamented, and  
 afterwards wor-  
 shipped as a  
 goddess.

[\* leaf C 6]

Thus says  
 Boccaccio.

### ¶ A comendacyon to dydo : *Capitulum ix*

O the fortytude viryle of wymmen, or loos & pryce 20  
 of chastyte femynyne, digne & worthi of honour,  
 celebreed & magnyfied in grete loange & preysynge,  
 wythoute ende perpetuel. thou louest, & haste lieuer to  
 submyse to fortune aduenturous of deth cruel, for to 24  
 kepe thy pudyke chastyte vnhurte, wythoute ony  
 spotte / than to rendre or yelde thy selfe in applycacion  
 of lyf perysshable to dyshonoure, ne to make foul the  
 holy purpose of thy castymonye / by thuntrue note of 28  
 lubryke & slypper luxurye / O quene / ryght venerable,  
 wyth one onely stroke / thou haste wyHed to termyne  
 and fynysse thy labours mortaH / By whiche thou  
 hast goten fame & renommee eternal of the grete kyng 32  
 barbaryn / by whom he is repressed fro his lybidynous  
 desire / the countrey is in surety, delyuerd from  
 batayHe by thy ryght dolorouse deth, whiche hathe

Praise or  
 eulogium on  
 Dido dying to  
 save her country.



quenched the playsaunt figure of thy grete beaulte. by  
 thy fruytful deth, & placable to thenhabytants of thy  
 noble cyte, hast destyHed the blood resplendysshant  
 4 yssuynge aHe oute of thy breste chast & not corrupte,  
 in tytyle flourysshynge of thy loange / preysynge / &  
 good renomme / of whom the spyrite, by thy lyf  
 fynysshed so moche made fair wyth sorow myrifyke,  
 8 was translated to the sieges & contrees therto ordeyned  
 after thi demerites / To the, thenne, in aH affection  
 crayntyue, I addresse my thoughte deprecatyue / Yf in  
 any wyse that haste strengthe or puyssaunce towarde  
 12 the goddys of hyghe magestye in theyr pryue mansyon,  
 whyche for \*the, wylle some thyng doo / that it maye  
 playse the to entende to the correction of the maners  
 lubryke / Inconstaunte and euyl, of our matrones  
 16 in pudike and folyshe / and to rendre theym from  
 theyr lacyuyte, in-to pudike / mystike, and shanefaste  
 chastyte / and in-to benygne & uery obedyence, so  
 moche that they abyde wyth the / in thy name and  
 20 fame venerable / The whiche, wythoute ende knowyng  
 eterneHy, we maye see by thy merytes thoneste of  
 chaste cleynesse maternaHe to be augmented & growe  
 in honour.

24 **T**He whiche caas here presupposed, is in accordaunce  
 ynoughe, whiche speketh of the lygnage and  
 maryage of dydo / Of the deth also perpetred by  
 pygmalyon, kynge of Thir, in the persone of Sychee,  
 28 firste husbonde of the sayd Elysse or dydo. And after,  
 of her departynge / of the maner of doynge. How after  
 she bare awaye the tresours of her somtyme husbonde  
 Acerbe. and of her comynge in-to Lybye, vpon the  
 32 ryuage of the see in the place where she byganne firste  
 to edyfy Cartage, And of the fortunes aduenturouse  
 whiche happened in that soo makynge, that byfelle to  
 her and to theym of theyr company ¶ But for to  
 36 shewe the difference that I fynde of the deth of the

CAP. IX.

Eulogium on  
Dido.Prayer to Dido  
in heaven

[\* leaf C 6, back]

to reform the  
evil manners of  
modern matronsBoccaccio's and  
Virgil's stories  
are the same up  
to the founding  
of Carthage.



## CAP. IX.

Virgil's version  
of Dido's story.

Persecution of  
Aeneas on his  
voyage by Juno,

on account of  
Paris's judg-  
ment.

[\* leaf C 7]

She engages  
Aeolus and Nep-  
tune to raise a

storm to hinder  
Aeneas's voyage,

promising them  
rewards.

sayd dydo / I shaH reherce here after now in a nother  
maner, whiche is to be presupposed was moeued of the  
grete hate & euil wyH that Iuno the goddesse conceyued  
ayenst parys / his frendis, parents / & alyes. and by 4  
cause of ouer sodayn iugement *that* he made / whan he  
gaaf thapple to venus, as the moste fayrest of theym  
aH / & to him holden & moost dere. bycause of whiche  
hate / whan eneas, sone of venus, & nygh kynnesman 8  
of paris wold departe from troye / after the siege of  
y<sup>e</sup> same, for to goo into the conquest of the prouynce of  
ytaly, to hym promysed by the goddis at request of his  
moder; & Iuno, y<sup>e</sup> ryght noble \*goddesse, wyHyng 12.  
tempesshe and lette his gooyng / dyd doo caHe and  
assemble yolus and Neptunus, goddis of the wyndes  
and of the see, prayenge & exhortynge theym moche  
swetely, that it myghte playse eche of theym to putte 16  
theym in payne, & doo theyr deuoyr, to emposshe the  
goynge of the sayd enterpryse, and makynge to breke  
and destroye aHe the nauye, in plonyng vnder the  
water and pareHys ayenst the roches, for hastely to 20  
drowne and destroye aHe the hooste of Enee, the sone  
of venus, whiche enforced hym to make werre in the  
goode Royalme of ytalye, whiche was in his desire  
pryncypally aboute aHe other. In whiche thyng soo 24  
doynge, she wolde rewarde theym wyth suche guerdons  
as apperteyneth to grete and hie goddys to be sty-  
pended / and shaH doo honoure to theyr frendes / and  
treate theyr lygnage and veray alyes / and socoure 28.  
theym wyth aHe hir myghte / whiche that the goddys  
hadde graunted to hir right gladly. And they made  
theyr preperacyon, eueryche in his regyon / for to warre  
vpon Eneas :

## CAP. X.

¶ How Iuno, for tempesshe thooste of Eneas  
 whiche wolde haue goon in to ytalye /  
 prayd the goddys of wyndes / that  
 4 eueryche by hym selfe sholde make con-  
 cussyon and tormente in the ayer.

## Capitulo xº

8 **E**Neas thenne sailynge bi the see, was recountred  
 by yolus, whiche smote wythin the sayhes grete  
 assaultes, effortes & batayhes in many maners / And  
 made to come the foure windes to gyder / one ayenst  
 another, wyth aH theyr sequele / Of whom was sur-  
 12 pryed aH the nauye, and terryble troubled ¶ There  
 myghte ye see sayles rente, Cordes and ropes broken,  
 And crampons of yron wrythen a sondre and plucked  
 oute. the shyppes \* & vassayhes lyfte vppē highe in the  
 16 ayer / and after plunged in the see in such wyse that  
 neuer was seen suche a merueyHe / On that other syde  
 cam vpon theym Neptunus wyth aH his vorages, &  
 wawes aHe full of scume / as a wulfe enraged brayeng  
 20 in the botome of the see, his grete guHe or throte wyde  
 opene / redy to swolowe & to deuoure aHe thooste,  
 cryenge & brayenge vnder the shippes, tempestes  
 horrible of the woode see / oute of whome yssued in-to  
 24 thayer on hie a clowde, and after decended impetuously  
 vpon the flote, whiche semed somtyme aHe to be  
 drowned & couerde wyth water / And anone after, they  
 were lyfte vp on hie wyth the wawes / whiche sodaynly  
 28 braken & departed / that aHe the nauye descended  
 nyghe to the bottom of the see / whiche were anone  
 recueyHed by other wawes, & remysed in a momente vp  
 on highe / and separed & transported in-to dyuerse  
 32 places, And in dyuerse wyses were tormented wyth-  
 oute hope of socours / Longe tyme dured this

Aeneas's fleet is  
 overtaken by a  
 dreadful tempest

[\* leaf C 7, back]

raised by Yolus  
 and Neptune.

Violence of the  
 storm described.

CAP. X.      troublous tormente / whiche caused grete fere &  
 drede vnto the countreys nygh neyghbours, & also  
 ferre of. This assemblee, the whiche after grete losse  
 & perdieyon, as weH of Anchises, fader of Eneas, as 4  
 other dyuerse / and also fortunes whiche longe be to  
 reeyte, passed / The nauye arryued almoste aHe to-  
 broken vpon the coste of the see of lybye, nygh the sayd  
 place of Cartage / whiche Elysse dyd doo edyfie / by 8  
 grete and subtyH moyens, of the whiche I passe ouer /  
 And in descendynge and comynge a lande in to that  
 countrey, was reculed and receyued by dydo, And  
 opteyned her grace for to soiourne for to refresshe alle 12  
 his people and his nauie ¶ In whiche doyng, he toke  
 grete acqueyntaunce / and ofte repayred vnto the  
 palays / and wyth the ladyes byhaued him soo queyntli  
 swete and curtoys / plesaunte and amiable, \*fayr and 16  
 well byspoken / merueyllous hardy in fayttes / a grete  
 enterpryser, loued of aHe men, & preysed of his  
 people / he was moche noble / and a ryght fayr persone.  
 by cause wherof, dydo toke grete playsir in his con- 20  
 uersacyon / and deuysed wyth him moche gladely /  
 wherof folowed that she was grenously hurte wyth the  
 darte of loue / And the wounde nourysshed by longe  
 tyme embraced wyth the swete assemble inuynceible in 24  
 hyr stomacke, considerynge the grete vertues of whiche  
 his persone was decorate / his noblenes & honour of  
 the peple of Troye / his grete beaulte & swete  
 langage / whiche she enprynted in her remembraunce / 28  
 that her membres refuseden the swete reste of slepe /  
 And kepte this thoughte in her selfe by ryght longe  
 tyme, in suche a wyse / that in a mornynge / after that  
 the lyghte of the daye rebouted & putte a backe the 32  
 shadowe of the nyghte aboute the lampe / and the sonne  
 rysen for to shyne on the erthe,

Anchises is lost  
in the storm.

Aeneas's fleet,  
sadly shattered,  
arrives on the  
coast of Lybia.

[\* leaf C S]

The strangers are  
kindly received  
by Dido, who  
becomes enam-  
oured of Aeneas.

His beauty and  
noble qualities  
are here  
described.

¶ How dydo counseyHid wyth hir suster  
anne :

CAP. XI.

*Capitulum xj*

4 **T**His lady bythoughte herselfe, and purposed to dys-  
coure and manyfeste her faytte vnto one hir suster,  
whiche was named in that tyme Anne, sayenge to hir  
in this manere / “ Anne, my suster and frende, I am in  
ryght gret thoughte strongly troubled and incyted /  
8 by dremes admonested, whiche excyte my courage  
tenquire the maners & lygnage of this man thus  
valyaunt / strong / & puyssaunt / whiche deliteth hym  
strongly to speke / in deuysing the hie fayttes of  
12 armes & perillys daungerous whiche he sayth to haue  
passed / ne-weli hither comyn to sojourne in our  
countreys. I am so persuaded of grete admonestments  
that all my entendement is obfusked / enduHyd and  
16 rauysshed / I byleue certaynly that the man of whome  
I speke to you ys nyghe kynne and parent of y<sup>e</sup>  
goddis / or that verytable by one comyn assentmente  
\*they haue assembled theym selfe to destyne his berthe  
20 in delyuerynge and gyuyng to hym allone all the  
highe vertuouse yeftes, whiche nature hath of custume  
partyculerly to yeue to dyuerse creatures / and maye  
be supposed that she hathe produced hym in excellent  
24 dygnyte, for to make one fayer chief werke / to  
thexemployre of all the other / For they whiche ben  
borne of basse parentage, ben ouer moche ferdeful &  
couerte in theyr fayttes / and drede theym fleynge,  
28 and kepe theym oute of the palayces & courtes of grete  
lordes / And yf it happen theym to entre, anone they  
retourne or hide theym in corners vnder the tapytes, or  
byhinde the grete fote of the yate, for to yssue and goo  
32 oute first wythoute makyng any bruyt or medlynge, ne  
seeche nothyng but thyssue for to flee, yf there were  
any medlee / ne neuer by theym was there any  
valyan<sup>ce</sup> proued, as it is sayd / But god forbede that

Dido confesses  
her love to her  
sister Anna.

She thinks that  
Aeneas must be  
of diuine birth.

[\* leaf C 8, back]

She describes  
those of base  
lineage.

CAP. XI.

it may be sayd of Eneas, that fortune, vaynquysshur of  
 grete batayHes, comynge to the chief of aHe enterpryses,  
 to haue reproche by ony of our sayd wordes / For yf it  
 that<sup>1</sup> ne were that I haue purposed fermely in my 4  
 courage to abyde and be in wydowhede aHe the tyme  
 of my lyf / after the deth dolourouse & cursid of my  
 somtyme hushonde Sychee, whiche bare away my  
 firste loue wyth hym / whan he was leyde vnder 8  
 therthe, by thennyous remors & greuous remembraunce  
 of my passed maryage, wherin I haue had so many  
 goodes of honour and curtosie, of whome the remem-  
 braunce sleeth me & scourgeth me alway / I sholde 12  
 lyghtly haue consented to thallyaunce of this man.  
 Anne, I confesse for trouth that, sith the myserable  
 deth of Sycheus, & wycked to saye, commysed in the  
 hous of my broder / of whiche the goddys be aHe 16  
 maculate / This man onely hath molyfyed my wyttes,  
 and perturbed the corage of myn opynyon firste, and  
 hathe \*reduced to remembraunce the delyceouse traces  
 of myn anneyent loue. But not for that / I desire and 20  
 wysshe that erste thabysme of thobscure erthe swolowe  
 me / or the grete fader almyghity to plunge and sub-  
 merge me vnder the botomes of the depe palusshe  
 infernaHe, rather than to my pudyque chastyte sholde 24  
 be doon by me ony wronge ne vyolence / nor that thy  
 ryght I sholde contrarye nor breke, for no thyng that  
 euer can happe to me by no maner wyse in thys worlde /  
 Alas, he that me spoused firste / hath my loue entierly 28  
 wyth hym / wherof inrenocable a yefte I doo make to  
 hym; soo byseche I hym to kepe hit wele wythin his  
 graue vnder the colde marbyl stone, and not to be  
 separed from his soule." This requeste, sighynge, made 32  
 she to hym / and tendrely wepynge, called ayen the  
 olde sorowe, whiche smote and wounded her to the  
 herte, so moche that the bosome of that sorrowful lady  
 was enterly Replenysshed aHe wyth teeres :

36

[<sup>1</sup> for if that it]No one since  
Sycheus's deathhas moved her  
heart but Aeneas,

[\* sign. D j]

but she will  
still be faithful  
to her old love.

## ¶ Thansuer of Anne to hir suster dydo

CAP. XII.

*Capitulum xij*

4 **T**Han Anne, her benygne suster / hauynge pyte of  
 her sorowe, consideringe the waye salutary to  
 reuerte soone her sorow in-to gladnesse / sayd to hir in  
 this manere. “O suster, more loued of me than the  
 lyghte iHumyned wyth grete bryghtnes / How haste  
 8 thou determyned to lyue alone, consumyng thyn  
 yongthe in perpetuaH heuynesse? Remembre the of  
 the swete dysportynges. the grete consolacions and  
 IoyfuH playsures wherby the children reioysshen their  
 12 moders / the swete kysshynge and the fayr pase-tyme  
 that they take therat / Also the ioye and consolacyon  
 that the men do on-to theyr swete spouses. putte awaye  
 this sorowe / thees lamentacyons, thees grete sighynges  
 16 and sorrowful teeres; take ayen corage, and make thy  
 selfe ferme wyth hope / Troweste thou that the bones  
 of Sycheus, or his tombe / the \*shadowe of his soule.  
 take payne, or care, to kepe thy loue / thynke it not no-  
 20 more than the sperkeH yssuyng oute of the fyre wyth  
 the smoke / whiche is soone reduced and broughte to  
 noughte, wythout to haue ony vygoure more, ne other  
 puyssaunte, to make fyre, lyghte, nor flamme / Lyke  
 24 wyse whan the soule of Sycheus was oute of the body,  
 and from hym separated / aHc his werkes and wordly  
 voluptees were extyncted and broughte to nought / Nor  
 wyth hym remayneth nother free arbytre or wyHe of  
 28 goode or euylH / care ne solycytude of thy loue / And  
 yf thou wylte lyue in sorowe & heuynesse, or that  
 otherwyse were / that thou dydeste marye / and  
 woldeste vse thy dayes in maryage, aHc is to hym as  
 32 ryght noughte / and no thyng there nys that coude  
 lette hym, or doo hym ony socours / but onely the

Anna encourages  
Dido's love for  
Aeneas, and

[\* sign. D j back]

assures her that  
her present  
action can be of  
no concern to  
Sycheus now.



CAP. XII. meryttes of the werkes by hym made, conuersynge in  
 this worlde / Nor noughte for somoche, that thou  
 makest caHynges, complayntes, shighynges / and lament-  
 acyons full of reuthes noyous, vpon a dampnable mynde 4  
 and folysshè remembraunce of thynges that ben impos-  
 syble, thou canste not drawe nor brynge oute of the  
 infernaHe mansions the soules of whome the shadowes,  
 or otherwyse the asshes / ben wythin the tombes 8  
 separated from the bones, for to reuyue and putte hem  
 ayen in-to the bodyes longe syn destroyed & conuerted  
 in-to poulder / Syth that it is so / and also of that  
 other side, that neuer man, how grete a lorde that he 12  
 were, kynge Yarbas, pygmalyon of thyre / they of  
 libye / many other of Affryque, the ryche countrey that  
 noryssheth soo many prynces / myghte neuer moene thy  
 courage to be bylonded of the, And that to this man 16  
 whiche is so moche renommed / preu and valyaunt,  
 thy wytte is enclyned in swete loue, wythoute ony  
 contraryete of free wyHe that ther vnto admonesteth  
 the, wyH thou commytte & \* vndresette thy lyberal 20  
 arbytre to thynges Impossyble, Repulsynge ayenst the  
 incitacyons moeued by natureH dylection, whiche  
 commen of thy self, with out ony othre induction?  
 Hast thou proposed to moeue werre ayenst thy persone / 24  
 gaynsayng thyn owne wiHe / inclined to the loue  
 desyred / In plaisaunt Remembraunce of suche a prince  
 puyssaunt, dygne of this meryte / Haue in mynde and  
 recordaunce the setuacyon of thy eyte, newly fowunded 28  
 in this lande among the most crueH folke of the worlde.  
 thou hast at the one syde the citees and the people  
 getules / whiche ben folke insuperable, Ryght daunger-  
 ouse in batayHes, and inuynceible in armes / atte the 32  
 other syde ben the myrondes, that are folke without  
 Rule and without mesure / And than the Cirte regyon  
 and the deserte countrey, whiche is all inhabited by  
 defawte of folkes flodes or ryuers that shulde tempre 36

No one can  
 restore the dead  
 to life.

If no other king  
 or prince have  
 ever moved her  
 before, why  
 should Dido  
 resist this  
 inclination?

[\* sign. D ij]

Then her defence-  
 less situation,



the erthe that is aH drye, and as ded for thurst / After, CAP. XII.  
 is the people of Barches, aH furiose and vagaunt In her dangerous  
 the countrees, Hauynge noo certaine mansyon to dweHe neighbours.  
 4 Inne / And more, there is the Region of thire, wherfrom  
 we haue wythdrawen and brought furtuely aH this  
 people that we haue / Whiche shaH mowe of lyght  
 aryse, and make werre ayenst the, with the helpe of thy  
 8 germayn Pygmalyon, whiche the wolde haue frusted  
 of the grete tresours & Rycheesses that he awayteth to  
 haue of thy somtyme husbande Sychee / Thynke in  
 thy self, who shaHe mowe the deffende, a woman aH  
 12 alone / ayenst somoche folke, without eny other helpe  
 of somm prynce puyssaunt? In certayne I byleue  
 truly *that* the goddes in their destynacyes haue fauour-  
 isshed the weH with Iuno, y<sup>e</sup> grete goddesses, for to  
 16 transporte in-to this regyon y<sup>e</sup> ryche nauye of troye / What a defence  
 thynke, my suster, what shalbe of thy cyte, & in what would the Trojan  
 domynacion \* puyssaunte shaHe thy Royame be, by alliance be!  
 the alyaunce of one soo grete a maryage / Consyderynge [\* sign. D ij back]  
 20 the glorie and honour of Cartage, whan she shaHe be  
 Ioyned wyth the troians / and by theym defended /  
 Where is he that shaHe be soo myghty for to vnder-  
 take to make warre ayenst the, thus alyed / take  
 24 agayne courage, ryght welbylouned suster, & putte oute  
 of thy remembraunce y<sup>e</sup> fortunes passed / crye mercy Let Dido try to  
 vnto the goddis, yf by ony wyse afore this thou hast conciliate the  
 offended theym / prayng theym that it wolde playse gods,  
 28 theym to be vnto y<sup>e</sup> <sup>1</sup> fauorable to the perfourmyng of  
 this alyaunce / atyse & drawe theym by sacrificyes /  
 Requestes & oblacons of herte contryte, & carefulH  
 thoughte; & be desirous to serue theym, aH thynges  
 32 layde a side, in that / whiche thou shalte mowe knowe  
 vnto theym aggreable. Aduyse for to fynde the  
 meanes to make Eneas to abyde / deuysynge vnto hym,  
 that he oughte to doo soo / Seynge and considerynge and persnade  
Aeneas to  
stay.

## CAP. XII.

Anna shows Dido  
how the stormy  
season is ap-  
proaching.

the wynter that is aHe dystempred, the grete orages,  
the sygne of Oryon that rendreth the watres to be  
proude and crueHe / Also the shippes that ben aHe  
crased of the grete tornementes that haue hurte theym 4  
here byfore, saylyng in the see, The influences of the  
heuens so spytefuH / & dyuerse contradyction moeuable,  
one apposite ayenst another, causynge dyuersite per-  
turbatyffe in the lowe elementes / whiche myghte be 8  
cause of his destruction, yf he vndertoke ony vyage atte  
this tyme, passinge the see from one lande to a nother /  
By these Raysons, and other that by the desirous affec-  
tyon of thy wyHe shaHe be vnto the aduysed and 12  
shewed, to the perfectyon of thys thyng, thou shalte  
mowe peruerte the oppynyon of Eneas for to seiourne  
in this cuntry, that byfore was aHe determyned for  
to goo." The whiche \*thynges, & other persuasions 16  
seruynge to the mater whiche enflamed the corage of  
Elysse, esprysed wyth brennyng loue towarde Enee /  
gaue a stedfast hope to her sorowfuH thoughte, leuynge  
by dyspense abstractyue / her first vowes of chastyte 20  
promysed /

[\* sign. D iij]

Dido thinks of  
abandoning her  
vow of celibacy.

¶ How Eneas, aftre grete fortunys of  
the see, arryued in cartage; And How  
dydo, for his swete behauoure and fayre 24  
spekyng, was esprised of his loue.

Capitulo / xiiij.

**B**Othe togidre of one assente, wente the two sustres<sup>1</sup>  
fore named, to the synagoges and temples, where 28  
bifore the aulters thei offred sacrifices with grete sup-  
plycacyons and prayers / and slewe sheep weders for  
to doo sacrefyces destynated vnto the noble goddesse  
Ceres, to Appolyn, and to Bachus / and specyally vnto 32  
Juno, the goddesse of wedlocke / whiche is lady / mas-

The sisters,  
Dido and Anna,  
sacrifice to  
Ceres, Juno, &c.

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* sus-sustres

## CAP. XIII.

tresse, and wardeyne, of the connexes or bondes amini-  
 cules / to whome they offred in pacifique Immolacion a  
 white cowe, by-twix the hornes of the whiche / Dydo,  
 4 by grete deuocyon, shedde the fyole fuHe of the holi  
 libacion / makynge the consecracion ouer the sacryfyce,  
 there dedied and doon in diuerse wise, by solemnyte  
 merueyHouse, afre the custome that was vsed at that  
 8 tyme / Dydo wyth her suster Anne<sup>1</sup> went In to the  
 temples and symulacres, knelynge before the awters,  
 makynge Requestes and prayers, and afre loked In to  
 the entraylles Interiores of the bestes there slayne /  
 12 For to fuldo the sacryfyce, In delynerynge and  
 sechyng / afre the moenyng of them / the comynge  
 of the future maryage / But what ouerserche nedeth  
 more to be enquired / wherof thys folysse thoughte  
 16 cometh to the woman thus a-tysed wyth \*the swete  
 flamme of loue esprised in-to the mary and synewes,  
 whiche inseparably goeth thurgh the bones, as depe as  
 the veray hertys roote / To goo sekyng wythyn the  
 20 symulacres the consentynge of lyght whyche is alrede  
 determyned for to be accomplyshed. Thys lady hathe  
 norysshed pryuely in her thoughte the wounde of  
 ambycouse desyre / whyche is so procured that she  
 24 can not hyde it noo lenger / She is graffed and  
 myserably sette wauynge and tournynge here and  
 there wythin her cyte, embrassed and take wyth loue  
 insacyable in contynueHe thoughte / As a personne  
 28 furyouse, lyke as an hynde that is rought to the herte  
 wyth an arowe / goeth rennyng by the forestes and  
 mountaynes / Thynkyng vpon her sore onely / wyth-  
 oute to conceyue ne comprehende the wele of her  
 32 abydynge / Afre, wyth Eneas / goeth thys lady  
 deuysynge thurgh the towne, to shewe hym the grete  
 rychesses that she hath broughte from the partyes of  
 Thyre, asketh hym his aduyse of the cdyfyces of

Dido pours the  
 holy oil between  
 the white cow's  
 horns.

[\* sign. D iij bk]

Her love for  
 Aeneas has  
 struck to her  
 heart's root.

She shows him  
 the treasures of  
 her town.

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* Anne

## CAP. XIII.

Dido strives to  
entertain Aeneas  
in every way she  
can think of.

Cartage, cheryssheth and enterteyneth hym to her  
power in aHe thynges that she thynketh to be playsaunt  
and agreable vnto hym / and atte last, she yet spekyng,  
her speche deffayHeth aHe sodeynly, and can not kepe 4  
purpos nē countenaunce, as a persone transported from  
her vndrestandyng, and ouertake wyth oure grete loue  
inestymable / Of it that other parte, she doeth make  
grete appareyHes for to feeste Eneas ryghte highly in 8  
dyuersities of metes entermedled wyth some Ioyous  
dysportes, playsaunte, and in syghte aggreable. After  
she taketh a delectacyon in his talkyng playsaunte /  
requyryng hym that, for her loue / he wyHe recounte 12  
some grete \*fayttes or other aduentures that he hath  
seen in hys tyme in the werre of Troye; And taketh  
her Ioye and consolacyon in his swete wordes and  
drawyng / that atysen and enterteyne her in a con- 16  
tynuaHe thoughte towarde hym / Soo that after theyr  
departyng from eche other, that tyme the mone obscure  
comyng in his ordre / supprymeth the lyghte of the  
sonne, and the sterres launchyng theyr bryghte spark- 20  
eles, excyte the appetyte of slepe / The lady that alone  
entreth to her chaumbre / tryste and pencyffulle,  
leuyng her bedde reste, syttyng vpon tapysserye  
werke / or other parte, aHe solitarie and desolate, as 24  
a thyng habandouned / Desiryng the presence of  
Eneas by Imagynacyon impraynted wyth-in the faun-  
tasme of her entendemente, Her semeth that she  
seeth hym there presente, heringe after his wordes 28  
playsaunte / And deuysyng wyth hym / and there  
she passeth ouer a parte of the nyghte in suche  
medytacyons and contynueH thoughts.

She is madly in  
love with him.

At intervals,

she nurses  
Aescanius.

¶ And emonge, she taketh in her lappe Ascanyus, 32  
the sone of Eneas, otherwyse callyd Iulus, and holdeth  
hym bytwyxe her armes / byholdeth / kysseth and  
colleth hym, Consideryng the beaultye and grete  
delectacyon of the fadre, In whiche she is rauysshed 36

by the representynge of his sone: And no thyng there ys soo gretely greuable, but that it is aHe ynoughe

CAP. XIV.

facyHe vnto her to be experymented for the entre-  
4 teynngne of her loue, wherinne she myghte be deceyued  
for the grete serche that she doeth wythoute ceasse for  
to eschew aHe thynges that in this caas myghte be  
nocible and contrarye to her:

8 \* **A**Nd for by cause of the whiche forsayd occupacyon  
or contynueHe thoughte wherinne she is Inex-  
plycable occupied, as transported and rauysshed, AHe  
the werkes and doynges of Dydo are taryed, and lefte

[\* sign. D iiij,  
back]

12 in the astate of Inperfection. The werkes of the grete  
yates / toures, and othre edifycees that were begonne  
for the perfectyon of Cartage, be lefte wythout eny  
more werkyng, aHe Imperfyt: the exercyse of armes is

and neglects  
everything;

16 dyscontynued; the noble men were robuste and rude,  
wythout exersice of fayttes of werre; The brydges /  
poortes and passages ben lefte wythoute warde / And  
the deffences ben voyde and<sup>1</sup> emptye wythoute entre-

the works are  
stopped,

20 teynynge / redy to receyue the enmyes wythoute ony  
contradyctyon: AHe werkes ceassen and appyeren  
interrupte for defaulte of conductours / The stones  
of the waHes that are bygonne, whiche appyeren aHe

the city left  
defenceless,

24 awry sette, croked, bowed, and counterfette / by cause  
thei be not fuHy made and polished. Shewynge theyr  
teeth to threte and byte in to the other stonys redy to  
be masonned / whiche oughte to haue be contynued and

28 Ioyned, to perfourme the enterprise thus lefte as aHe to-  
cutte and perysshed. The grasse groweth faste, and  
roteth on theyr heddes / theyr teeth ben spredde wyth  
mosse aH to-tourne / rusty and fuHe of lothlinesse.

and grass grows  
over the unfin-  
ished buildings.

32 The grete edifycees are lefte vncouered in dyuerse  
places / And shortely, alle falleth in-to ruyne, by cause  
of her grete furoure.

¶ But Iuno, the noble goddessse, wedded wyff and

<sup>1</sup> orig. add

CAP. XIV. spouse of Iubyter, seeynge that the goode renomme of Elysse myghte notte contryste ayenste her grete desire embrasid wyth the swete flamme of loue / Considerynge also that the \*goodely and grete chere of Dydo myghte 4 be cause<sup>1</sup> to make Eneas to abyde in Cartage / wythoute to passe eny fether towarde ytalye / wolde speke to the goddesse Venus for to doo conuencyon of Eneas wyth the sayd Dydo / and thenne byganne to saye 8 vnto her, by a maner of derysion, the wordes herinne wrytten / “ Certes, Venus, thou and thy sone Cupydo are gretely to be praysed, and ye shaH doo a grete conqueste, whereof ye shaH be hadde in perpetueH 12 renommee / yf a woman myghte be by you two vaynquysshed, wherof the motyue that hath attysed you to that / & the cause whi ye haue ynoughe induced elysse to condescende to the loue of eneas, ys, 16 to my semyng, come for the drede that ye haue of the tyrauntes, and of theym of affryque / & also of theym of the highe waHes of our cytee of cartage For the wyhyche drede to pease, ye wyH doo alyauce wyth 20 theym by meanes of the maryage of dydo wyth eneas, whiche thyng myght be broughte to effecte / so that ye wyH be fauorable and gracyous towarde eneas, wythoute to bere hym fro hens forthe eny moleste or 24 lettynge / And for aHe debates to accorde and pease / and to brynge aHe noyes atte an ende, I gyue myn assente to a peas eternaHe, for the constructyon and makynge of the sayd maryage as ye doo desire ; to the 28 whiche shaHe mowe dydo easlyly acorde duryng this / that the grete furour enflammed wyth breunnyng desire of loue esprysed wythin her sinewes / perse y<sup>e</sup> bones of her presently ; & thenne, of one comyn assent, 32 we, Iuno and venus, goddesses, shaH haue aH the domynacyon & gouernente entierly of thise two peoples / that is to wytte, of the troians, in soo moche as toucheth

Juno, perceiuing  
Dido's love, and  
not wishing  
Aeneas to go to  
Italy,

proposes  
to Venus the  
marriage of Dido  
and Aeneas,

which will put  
a stop to all  
differences.

and give the two  
goddesses entire  
control over  
Carthage,

<sup>1</sup> orig. cause



theym of Eneas, that shalle be taken in dowayr to Dydo  
for her maryage, and lyke wyse them of Thyre, that are  
comyn \*wyth Elysse, shaHe thenne be subgette vnto  
4 Enee, the whiche we shaHe Ioyne togydre; And of  
theym two, we shaHe make aHe one people / Whereof  
Cartage shaHe be peopled, and also the countrey:”

CAP. XIV.

and the two  
nations,

[\* leaf D 5, back]

Trojan and  
Tyrian, that  
shall inhabit it.

**T**He whiche thynges thus sayd / Venus, that doubted  
8 leest Iuno wolde accorde the forsayd maryage, to  
the entente that Eneas sholde abyde in Cartage for this  
cause, and sholde leue the enterpryse by hym made, to  
goo and conquere the royalme of Ytalye / that Iuno  
12 sayd that she hadde in her gouernaunce / was weH  
gladde, feynynge to vnderstonde otherwyse the enten-  
cyon of the sayd Iuno, wheronto she purueyd weHe  
afterwarde; And aunsuerde vnto her, sayenge / “he that  
16 wolde gaynsaye this alyaunce / and wyth the, Iuno, to  
stryue, for to lette thy deliberacyon / sholde weH be  
oute of his wytte. Yf thou woldeste accomplysshe by  
effecte, this that thou maynteneste be thy wordes / but  
20 I am not weH certayne / yf Iubyter, the puyssante god /  
that hath / the dysposicyons of aHe thynges in his  
hande / shaHe be contente that the tyryns and the  
troians shaHe people in comyn this cyte of Cartage  
24 wythoute some deuysion; And also yf our maryage and  
alyaunce for to speke, shaHe be vnto hym aggreable /  
And by cause thenne, that vnto the, Iuno, that arte  
his wyffe and felawe, apperteyneth more better than to  
28 any other to knowe of hym hys playsure, Thou shalte  
vndertake this charge, yf hit playse the to goo wythout  
taryeng, and I shaH folowe the aH of nyghe /” Whereof  
Iuno, takynge in hande the conduytte of this werke /  
32 was wel content / & sayd in this manere: “\*syth that  
I haue taken the charg of this werke, I wol teHe and  
shewe clerly howe the thynges shaHe mowe be broughte  
about. Eneas, and dydo sore taken wyth his loue, haue  
36 purposed for to goo chasse and hunte the wilde bestes,

Venus's cautious  
answer.She does not  
express dis-  
approval, but  
thinks Jupiter  
should be con-  
sulted, which  
she advises Juno  
to do.

Juno undertakes

[\* leaf D 6]

to manage the  
matter.



## CAP. XV.

Aeneas and Dido shall propose a hunt early next day.

Juno will raise a tempest and disperse the hunters,

so that Aeneas and Dido shall meet together in a cave,

unless Venus were unwilling, in which case Aeneas had better go at once.

incontynent that the sonne, makyng to morowe hys  
 rysyng, shal haue transmyst hys shynynge bemes for  
 to Ihustre clere aHe the erthe / And whan they shal be  
 to the vttir-moost of the game, weHe chaffed afre the 4  
 bestes, I shaHe sodaynly make the ayer to wexe obscure,  
 and aHe blacke replenysshed with hayle / rayne, and  
 horryble tempeste by the ayer, and by the erthe wyndes  
 and grete orages / I shaH girde aHe the heuens wyth 8  
 thondres, lyghtnynges choruscacyous<sup>1</sup> and merueyHouse  
 tourmentes that shaHe rayne the countrey ouer ryghte  
 Impetuously, so that aHe the ayer shaHe seme to be  
 couered wyth the nyght fuHe blak and obscure / Thenne 12  
 shaHe aHe the hunters flee awaye, and othre, fro the  
 sayde chasshe, wyth so grete haste that they shaHe not  
 wene to fynde sone ynoughe a place for to be in sauete /  
 And by thys manere I shaHe doo that the duke Eneas 16  
 and Dydo fleyng the wedryng, shaHe rendre himself  
 bothe togydre aHe alone, as by veraye destynacye, and  
 by rencountre of aduenture, vnder a grete hyHe, withyn  
 a caue atte the ende of the forest / And there they 20  
 shaHe fynde me, Iuno, that am lady of the maryages,  
 and doo couple them two wyth my sone hyemen, whiche  
 is named the god of weddyng / And / therfore, yf I  
 wyst that thou, venus, were not of accorde fo[r] the 24  
 maryag of eneas to dydo, I shulde make\_hym fyrst to  
 departe wythout eny respyte / ”

¶ Of the grete tempest and storme<sup>2</sup> atte  
 maryage of theym / 28

## ¶ Capitulo Decimoquinto

[\* If D 6, back]

Venus does not contradict, but laughs at Juno's

\* **V**ENUS was thenne weHe contente, wythoute ony  
 contradyctyon / and byganne to laughe strongly  
 of the perfytte begylyng that Iuno hade founde soo 32  
 soone for to accomplysse this maryage / Wherof she

<sup>1</sup> (?) for choruscacyons

<sup>2</sup> orig. storme

was syn after weHe deceyued, by cause that she made it  
to couertely and close, wythoute testymonage / and  
wythoute the knowleche of Iubyter : The whiche  
4 enterprise thus made / after that the sprynge of the  
daye and the poynte of the sonne hadde putte awaye  
the nyghte tenebrose, the brackener hadde dystourned  
the herte in to his busshe, and caste his trayne / The  
8 hunters wyHe that men spredde and sette the deffences,  
putte theym in grete appareyHe for to goo to the woode /  
where as sholde be the chasse / Assembled theyr ren-  
nyngre houndes, two and two togyder / and chose theym  
12 one from the other, for to assorter theym beste in the  
pathes ; Some wyth the brackenere, for to be atte the  
reysynge of the becest, for to renne after ; The other  
for to be sette atte the relese ; and the other for to  
16 entermedle and redresse theyr brackes, retches, and  
bloode houndes, for to take the beste better wyth force.  
Toke theyr staues, and theyr hornes, and other thynges  
necessarye for to fuH make and accomplysse the better  
20 a fayr dysporte in huntyngre, behouynge to a chasse  
royaHe ¶ And after, of a nother parte, the barons, the  
knyghtes and esquyers of the noble quene Dydo, dyde  
putte theym in araye, and came there to the palayse  
24 aHe redy, waytyngre that she sholde come oute for to  
mounte vpon her fayr palfrey, whiche, wyth other for  
her ladyes and gentyH women, was in the courte aHe  
preste, appareyllled and couered wyth a grete cloth of  
28 purple, gnawynge his bytte garnysshed wyth botones of  
golde, \*aHe charged wyth the scume of the horse. And  
soone yssued oute the lady, moche nobly accompanied,  
that hadde a grete maunteHe of veluet cramoysein, pour-  
32 fyHed rounde aboute wyth brawdrye, moche enryched  
wyth precyous stones, after the custome and manere of  
that tyme / Her herys bounden wyth thredes of golde /  
and her ryche gyrdeH, that appyered moche precyous,  
36 aHe a-boue her raymentes / She hadde also a fayr

CAP. XV.

design, which afterwards fails, because Jupiter had not been consulted.

Preparations for the hunt :

arrangements those of a later mediæval character.

Assembling of the hunting party at the palace,

[\* leaf D 7]

Dido and her horse both richly apparelled in similar fashion.

CAP. XV.      tarcays, couered wyth fyne cloth of damaske, aHe fuHe  
 of arowes / and therwythaHe the bowe for to shoote to  
 the wylde beestes, and otherwyse atte her playsaunce.  
 Thus appoynted / she mounted on horsebacke for to 4  
 goo to the sayd chasse, wyth hir barons, knyghtes, and  
 her gentyH women / and also the lytyHe Yolus or  
 ascanyus, that hadde putte hym selfe in poynte for to  
 conduytte the quene wyth his fadre Eneas / the whiche, 8  
 wyth a ryght grete and fayer companye ridynge afore  
 the lady, appyered aboue aH the other, wythout ony  
 comparyson, the moste fayre / Lyke as the beaulte of  
 the god Appollo, that is, the sonne, doeth appyere and 12  
 shewe vpon the flode of Exanco, whan he cometh in  
 wynter in-to the cyte of Pathere in lycye / to gyue his  
 aunsweres,<sup>1</sup> and kepe the courte of his grete godhede /  
 And fro thens, whan the syx monethes of the wynter 16  
 ben passed / and that he wyHe retourne in to the Isle  
 of Delon, for to make semblable his aunsuers duryng  
 the syx monethes of the somer, the places partyculer  
 of Crete, as Agatyrse and Dryopes, doo ryse and goo 20  
 ayenste hym / for to see his grete beaulte / whan he,  
 comynge, casteth his bemes vpon costes and mountaynes  
 of the countrey in manere of golden heres descendynge  
 from his hed, and as the lighte of torches \*sparklynge, 24  
 weH enflammed, wherby aHe thynges renewen them at  
 his commynge, as the trees that to theym maken gar-  
 landes of leues grene / the erthe taketh a newe cote  
 fuH subtyly weued aftre y<sup>e</sup> werke of fyn gras, powdred 28  
 with floures of a hundred thousande maners of colours /  
 The byrdes renewen theyre swete songe gracyouse / The  
 bestes becomen fyers, and of proude manere ; The ayer  
 purifyeth and clenseth hym selfe for to receyue the 32  
 Impressyons of influences of this god Apollo, to his  
 newe commynge, whiche is so fayre and sore desyred of  
 aH thynges / Lyke wyse in aHe exceHence surmounted  
 Yolus exceeds

<sup>1</sup> orig. anuswers

- the yonge yolus aH the other that were in y<sup>e</sup> ladies  
 felauship for to goo to the sayd chasse. And when  
 they were come in the dales and narowe wayes of the  
 4 busshes, vpon theire courses for to destourne the bestes  
 that yssued oute of theire dennes, with grete effortes  
 renny[n]ge in the playne vaHeyes and mountaynes by  
 dyverse places, the one opposyte to the othre in confu-  
 8 sion merueyllouse / The lytyH Ascanius or Yulus, that in  
 this toke grete playsure, Ranne aftre vpon a corrageous  
 hors alwayes Redy for to renne, so that he ouer Ranne  
 often the bestes, and was before them / And some tyme  
 12 abode behynde, aHe wrothe of the grete cowardyse of  
 these bestes / Desyrynge to Reountre a wylde bore, or  
 some lyon that fledde not, for to fyghte with hym /  
 ¶ Durynge the tyme of the whiche chasse, And that  
 16 aHe the assistents were departed, And stronge chaffed,  
 rennynge aftre the bestes In many and dyuerse coun-  
 trees / Iuno the goddesse, wyHyng accomplysshe / the  
 maryge of Eneas to dydo, thrughe suche meanes as ben  
 20 spoken here aboue, byganne to make the ayre to be  
 troubled, And to couere the blewe cote of the \*heuens  
 azured, with cloudes blacke and obscure, fuH of wynde  
 Impetuouse / of Rayne and of heyle / of thondre &  
 24 tempeste, aHe medled togydre / Of the whiche the for-  
 sayde hunters apperceyued them not, nor made no force  
 for it, withstandyng the grete entermyse and besy  
 occupacion that they had In hande, to the poursiewte  
 28 and destournyng of the bestes, wherof euery of hem  
 was atte astryffe who sholde doo best, for to be praysed  
 and acyured the grace of the ladyes / vnto the tyme  
 that the sayde cloudes were weH thyk gadred with the  
 32 stronge wedryng that surprised them aH atones, and  
 soubdaynely enuaysshed them and tormented Rygth  
 asperly with Rayne myseH, and grete heyle stones  
 amonge / Aftre, cam a stronge wynde lowe by the  
 36 grounde, that agetted theym in suche a wyse that they

CAP. XV.

all the rest  
in beauty.They begin to  
hunt.Prowess of  
Yulus.Juno, to accom-  
plish her design,  
brings on a  
storm.

[\* leaf D 8]

The hunters are  
dispersed by an  
awful tempest,rain, hail, and  
tremendous  
wind,

CAP. XV. were lyfte vp on hyghe fro the grounde / and were  
 caste backwarde / forewarde, and atte eyther side, whan  
 they wende to haue drawen hem selfe, one towarde  
 dreadful thunder other, by the thondre and tempeste that descende<sup>d</sup> 4  
 doun from the clowdes, and ranne by the grounde aHe  
 enf[l]ammed, in suche moeuyng and perturbacyon, that  
 it appiered of prymeface / that the heuens were broken  
 and lightning. and parted a sondre, wheroute yssued fyre ardaunte / 8  
 whiche IHumyned attones aHe the erthe / And afre  
 that this lighte was goon, the ayer retourned in-to a  
 grete derknesse / for the grete Impetuosite of the orage,  
 as thoughe it had be nyghte / For the whiche cause, 12  
 the tyryns and the troiens, wyth the hunters / and other  
 of the sayd chasse / and also the lityH Yolus, sone to  
 the sone of Venus / that is, Eneas, and neuew of dar-  
 danus his grete vncl, whyche was the firste prynce 16  
 that edyfied Troye / were constrayned for to flee / and  
 to seche, euery one after hys power, some vyHages or  
 habitacyons for to wythdrawe theym selfe, whiles that  
 The hunters  
 disperse.  
 [\* leaf D S, back] the faHyng \*of the reyne russhynge doun from the 20  
 mountaynes descended in to the valeyes. Also of a  
 nother parte, the quene dydo and Eneas, in fleeynge,  
 Aeneas and Dido,  
 alone, take  
 refuge in the  
 same cave.  
 founden a caue vnder a grete roche, in y<sup>e</sup> 1 whiche they  
 hidde theym selfe bothe togyder alone / & ther the 24  
 goddesse Iuno, quene and patronesse of the commocyon  
 nupeyaHe, by the assente of venus, that lyghtened the  
 torches fo[r] to receyue hiemen, the god of weddyng,  
 accompanied wyth the erthe, moder to the firste goddes 28  
 whiche for to doo this / hadde prepared that secrete  
 place, and the reyny wedre therto / propyce and conuen-  
 able whan they hem selfe, goddesses of the watres &  
 fontaynes russhyng doun in grete haboundaunce from 32  
 the toppe of the mountaynes / assembled & made  
 thenne the forsayd maryage / of Eneas and of dydo,  
 wythoute other wytnesses to be by / but the god & the

<sup>1</sup> orig. y<sup>t</sup> = that

goddesses that be declared aboue / wherof folowed  
 after / that this daye was the firste cause of the grete  
 euylls and deth of dydo, the whiche coude neuer be  
 4 dysmoeuyed from the same, by her grete vertues and  
 merytes, ne her laudable renomme, and wolde not kepe  
 her secrete, as she dyde afore / but in publike, for to  
 gyue a coloure to her faHe / confessed hym to be her  
 8 husbonde / And therof was grete spekyng made, that  
 sone ranne thoroughe the cyties of Lybie and of  
 Affryque / wherby arose one euyHe goddesse callyd  
 fame or renomnee, whiche is more lighte than ony  
 12 other thyng / and by mobylite vygorouse encreaseth  
 her forse in rennyng / Atte the firste she is ryghte  
 lityH, for doubte that she hath to be seen ; and anone  
 after, she maketh her selfe grete, and mounteth vp in-to  
 16 the ayer / And in vyagyng thrughe the landes, hideth  
 her hede betwyx the clowdes / And thenne she vttreth  
 and sayeth aHe that she wyHe, by cause that she is  
 ferre from the partyes. And it is not to be merueyHed  
 20 yf she be wycked, as I saye, \*for she was wickedly be-  
 gotten, and for an euyH occasyon / the erthe, granmodre  
 of the godde, was ones wrooth wyth theym, And for to  
 doo hem a grete Iniure, engendred two horryble mon-  
 24 stres / the fyrst hight Seceo, and the seconde Antheledo,  
 whiche were geauntes, stronge and puyssaunt aboue aHe  
 othre men of that tyme, and exempt from the subiectyon  
 of aHe the dyuynite, and had a suster named renomnee  
 28 or fame, that was the last procreated / and in signe of a  
 moeke, was to her youen the facultee and power for to  
 reherce and saye aHe thinges that sholde come in her  
 mouthe / and to speke ayenst aH folke, be it kynges,  
 32 princes, or lordes or othre knyghtes, ladyes, gentyH  
 wimen / marchauntes, labourers, and maydens, goddes,  
 goddesses, & theyre sequele, withoute hanyng rewthe ne  
 regarde to no manere of lesynge, no more than to the  
 36 trouthe of the dede ; & to her were gyuen wynges aHe

CAP. XV.

This the  
 beginning of  
 Dido's sorrows,  
 as she would  
 after acknow-  
 ledge Aeneas as  
 her husband,  
 and that in  
 publie.

Description of  
 Fame.

[\* sign. E JJ]

Her birth,

her functions,

her wings.



CAP. XV.

of fedders, and fete and handes and body and hede,  
 wherof was made a monstre fulle terrible, that hath as  
 many eyen in her hede, euermore wakyng, and aHe  
 wyde open / as she hath fedders vpon her, and as many 4  
 eerys / mouthes, and tonges in lykewyse, that speken  
 styHe without ceasse / And for her talkynge, neuerthe-  
 lesse cesseth not to herken, and hereth weH a[l]waye  
 that that she hereth. AHe the nyght she fleeth betwix 8  
 the clowdes / and renneth ouer the erthe, spred abrode,  
 rushynge, and makynge grete noyse as thondre & tem-  
 pestes, nor can neuere wake so longe that she can gete  
 luste to slepe She sette herself somtyme atte the gates 12  
 of the townes, casteHes, fortresses, and of grete lordes  
 houses, with the porters and mynystres, for to questyone  
 theym what rewle is kept in the towne / of the astate  
 of the kynge and of the princes, and of theyre moost 16  
 famylyer seruauntes / Aftre, she goeth vp in to the haH,  
 and somtyme within the chambre and \*hyde herse[l]f in  
 corne[r]s, and behynde the tapytes ; a nother tyme vpon  
 the highe pynacles and toures / and wyth theym that 20  
 kepe the day watches, whiche beholden aHe the towne  
 ouer ; & nothyng is there so secrete, be it in house or  
 in strete, but it is sone manifested vnto her / The grete  
 cytees & bygge townes, she doeth trouble somtyme 24  
 wyth sorowe and yre by her reportynge / AHe is goode  
 for her / and aHe is to her paye. AHe thynges wherof  
 she aduyseth herself / be it good or euil, trouth or  
 lesynge, she telleth and reporteth aHe to her guyse. 28  
 This meschyne of whome I speke, that Ioyeth her to  
 recyte asweH the euyH as the goode, and more lesyng  
 than trouth, byganne to renne by the townes, cytees  
 castelles & other places / recountyng vnto aH theym 32  
 that she fonde / how Eneas, of the lynce of the troians,  
 was come in Cartage, of whom the fayr dydo had  
 enamoured herself, and bothe togydre helde hemselfe  
 aHe the winter, passynge the tyme in grete playsaunces / 36

Fame—her eyes  
and tongues.She haunts all  
places, and

[\* sign. E j, back]

finds out and  
spreads abroad  
everything.She spreads  
reports of Aeneas  
and Dido over  
Africa.



- festes / playes & sportynges, all occupied In theyr  
 delices / wythout to puruey to the gouernaunce of theyr  
 Royalmes lordshypes, as though they had forgotten it,  
 4 all dedicated to theyr playesures & wylles / how be it  
 that it was other wyse / And in passynge throughe the  
 landes, reportynge all thise tidynges, was aduertysed  
 that the kynge Yarbass, resident in the same contrey,  
 8 and sone adressed her selfe towarde hym the streight  
 cours / And to hym recounted the manere, How dydo  
 hadde esprysed her owne herte wyth the loue of Enee /  
 and all the thynges here afore wryten / wherof this  
 12 Yarbass, that was kynge of the grete Libye, hadde a  
 grete dyspyte, by cause that this lady hadde somtyme  
 refused hym, that was a grete lorde / and of the lynce  
 of the goddes, sone to god Iupyer a renouse, that men  
 16 adoured in Lybye / and of one Nyuyse, goddessse of the  
 fontaynes, \* doughter to Gzamas, that had be rauyshed.  
 This Yarbass was ryghte deuote, and in his tyme had  
 construed, edyfyed, and made an hondred temples wythin  
 20 his royallme, wyth an hondred othere sacraryes, in whiche  
 he had consecrated the fyre brennyng without ceasse,  
 that he called the daye watche pardurable of the godde :  
 And made there contynuefly so many sacryfyces, that  
 24 the erth all there about, was all made fatte and moly-  
 fyed wyth the blode of the bestes that were there  
 Inmolated to the honoure of the goddes / And repleny-  
 shed wyth all manere of good odours & swete smellynge,<sup>1</sup>  
 28 for the grete haboundaunce of the garlandes made of  
 floures that he gadred in that place. And whan he was  
 adcerteyned of the dooyng of dydo and of Eneas, he  
 was therof vtterly dysplaysed / wherby a grete acumu-  
 32 lacyon of yre and wrathe he begate wythin the roote of  
 his herte ; and as tryste, sorowfull, and besyde hymself,  
 wist not to whom complayne / but onely that he wente  
 in to the temple before the awter / and in Ioynyng his

CAP. XV.

The reports  
come to Lybia.Anger of Yarbass,  
King of Lybia,  
on hearing them.

[\* sign. E ij]

His temples

and sacrifices.

His wrath.

<sup>1</sup> orig. smellyuge

## CAP. XVI.

Yarbas prays to  
Jupiter.

Will Jupiter  
only frighten  
mortals with his  
terrors?

handes togydre, made the prayer and requeste that  
foloweth / ¶ “ O Iupyer, almyghty god, for whome folke  
of Moryenne, where is made the roughe tapysserie in  
pycture aHe dyuerse: haue made an assemble magny- 4  
fyque of metes and of wyne for to kepe a solempneHe  
feste in the worshyp of thy godhede / knowest thou  
not oure sorowe? hast thou for euer determyned to  
solace and dysporte thy self enermore wyth the thondre 8  
and weddrynges, for to gyue vnto vs tremoure and  
feere / wylte thou feere vs onely wyth thy fyres, by the  
sodaynly sente through the cloude in grete tempeste  
and murmure, and occupye thy self aHe to that, wythout 12  
rightwisnes to be by the made vnto euery chone / ”

[\* sign. E ij,  
back]

\* How Yarbas complayned hym to Iupiter  
of eneeas that edefyed the cyte of Cartage /  
and how Iupyer sente sodaynly Mer- 16  
curyus towarde eneeas, for to make hym to  
retorne in to the countrey of ytalie.

## ¶ Capitulo xvj

He complains to  
Jupiter that  
Dido has  
rejected his  
love

“ **W**E complayne to thy ryghtwysnesse, of a 20  
woman whiche is come in to the lymytes  
of our londe, habandonned & as lost, named fenyece or  
dydo / that hath take vpon her to edyfie a cyte of lityl  
pryce, that she doo to be called cartage, to the whiche 24  
by curtoysie we haue gyven londe habytable, & lawes  
for to gouerne her peple / and haue required her ofte  
tymes to be our wyf & spouse / but therof she made  
none acompte / and hath habandonned hersilfe in aHe 28  
manere poyntes to receyue the false eneeas, as maister &  
lord of aHe her londe / The whiche seductor of ladies,  
as parys that enwedded y<sup>e</sup> fayr heleyne, kepeth himself  
in maner as a woman, in their companye, wyth his longe 32  
heres that he maketh to be enoynted & kemed for to  
be yelow as golde, making them to be bounden in a

and accepted  
Aeneas,

- coyffe rounde a-boute his hed / wythout to thynke CAP. XVI.  
 vpon none other thynges, but only the delites of  
 wymenly love, wherin he is contynueſſi occupyed wyth  
 4 her; and we, that aſſe the tyme of our lyf haue ſerued  
 to thy temple / doon many ſacrifyces & oblaeyons to  
 thi lawde & prayſinge / are dyspyſed & habandouned, while he, Yarbas,  
 wythoute to bryng there-from ſome rewarde or a is deſpised after  
 8 vantage.” the whiche yarbas, makyng this his com-  
 playnt and prayer within<sup>1</sup> the temple, byfore the  
 awters, the god almyghty Iupyter, that wolde exalte his Jupiter hears  
 requelte, tourned hys loke a ſide towarde the walles him,  
 12 and habytaantes of the cytee of Cartage, where he  
 knewe the two louers, wythoute remembraunce of theyr  
 firſt goode fame that they hadde forgotten: And thenne  
 called to hym Mercuryus, whiche ys \* inter-pretour of [\* ſign. E iij]  
 16 the goddes, And commaunded hym to doo the mes-  
 ſage here wryten, ſaynge / “¶ My ſone mercure, goo and ſends Mer-  
 lyghtly, take thy wynges empared with fedders / Caſſe cury to Aeneas,  
 the ſwete wyndes, and goo doune wyth them towarde  
 20 Eneas, the duke troien, whyche is nowe taryed wythin  
 Cartage for to enhabyte there / hauynge noo mynde  
 ne recordaunce for to goo conquere the cytees that  
 by-fore haue be youen vnto hym / ſhewyng vnto hym  
 24 that his modre venus, the fayre goddeſſe, dyde not  
 promytte vnto vs that he ſhulde be ſuche a ſeductour  
 of wymen, and of lyf determyned to communyque  
 wyth them / Whan atte her requelte we kept and with a rebuke  
 28 ſaued hym two tymes ayenſt the grekes hys enemyes, and a meſſage,  
 And gaffe hym vycторыe one tyme ayenſt Dyomedes,  
 and a nothre tyme ayenſt Achyſes, whan atte bothe  
 the tymes he enterpryſed for to doo armes ayenſt theym  
 32 before the grete Troye / But vnto vs dyde promyſe hys  
 ſayde modre, to make hym more cheualerouse than eny  
 othre of hys tyme, in ſuche a wyſe that he ſhulde be  
 dygne by excellence aboue aſſe othre, to obteyne by

<sup>1</sup> orig. wrthin

## CAP. XVI.

batayHes the conqueste vycoryouse of the ryche and  
 second empyre of Ytalye / And that thrughe hys  
 grete worthynesse and hyghe fayttes, he shulde brynge  
 vp ageyne the grete and fyrst renomme of the troiens, 4  
 and afte the worlde subgeit to hys lawes / And yf he  
 had hys herte so harde Inelyned to the playsure of his  
 fowHe delycees, That the desyre gloryouse to conquere  
 one suche lordshyp / coude not mowe bryng hym 8  
 there-to as touchythe honour of hys owne persone /  
 Atte the leste that he have consideracyon that his sone  
 ascanius, to whome afte his deth are due his grete  
 domynacyons, be not putte ther-from thrughe hys 12  
 deffawte / What mystreth hym to edyfie cartage, &  
 enhabyte emonge his ennies, for to leue & forsake the  
 no\*ble posteryte of ytalye, and the ryche possessyons  
 of lauyne / goo thou forth incontynent, to gyue hym 16  
 commaundement in oure byhalue, that he parfournyshe  
 hys vyage ; for this is in effect thy message, and ende of  
 thy legacyon / ” The whiche Mercurys, desyringe to  
 acomplyshe the commaundement of his granfadre 20  
 Iupyer / appoynted hym self fuHe soone for to fuHe-  
 fyHe his wyHe / and fyrst he made fast atte hys heles  
 hys grete wynges ouer gilt, that bare hym with the  
 wyndes, asweHe ouer see as ouer erthe, hyghe and lowe, 24  
 where someuere he wolde be, and toke the cepter  
 ImperyaHe of hys dyuynyte / by meanes of the whiche  
 he drewe some sowles out of heHe, and made hem to  
 come vp ahighe to the lyghte / the other he toke out 28  
 of lyff, and sent hem in to heHe / Also wyth his rode  
 he made some to faHe a slepe, without neuere to wake ;  
 and the other he made to wathe without ceasse /  
 And with this rodde fleeynge, he deuysed the foure 32  
 wyndes, and departed the troublouse clowdes that he  
 recountred in hys waye / And trauersynge from one  
 lande to another, he perceyued in lokynge aHe of ferre,  
 the hyghe sholders and sydes of the strong Athlas, that 36

If Aeneas is so  
 given to pleasure  
 as to forget his  
 honour and  
 Italy, he should  
 at any rate  
 remember his  
 son.

[\* leaf E iij,  
 back]

Mercury puts on  
 his wings and  
 takes his rod.

Powers of his  
 rod.

He flies towards  
 the earth.

## CAP. XVI.

Mercury rests a  
space with Atlas,  
his uncle, who  
supports the  
heavens,

susteyned the heuens vpon his hedde. This Athlas  
was a geant, strong and myghty a-boue aHe other / &  
bycause that y<sup>e</sup> heuens were not stedfast of one syde, &  
4 sometyme dyde bowe atte other part, the goddes dide  
tourne hym in to a hyghe mountayne, for to susteyne  
the heuens. And vpon his hed, in stede of herys, he is  
aH garnysshed of sapyn trees and of hooly trees, that  
8 be contynually beten & cast of the wyndes, and sore  
couered with clowdes fulle derke / his sholdres are  
couered with snowe atte aHe season of the yere ; & out  
of his grete chyne, issuen grete flodes, & fontaines  
12 rening doune without cesse alonge his terrible berde, of  
whiche the borders and shores in stede of \*heres ben  
garnyshed wyth thycke yse / And incontynent the sayd  
mercurys drewe thyderwarde, for to festye the sayd  
16 athlas, *that* was his vnckles brother, vnto his moder named  
laye / & sette hymself vpon his sholdres, where he was  
a whyle to reste hym / And after toke his flyghte as a  
byrde, streyght towarde the see of lybye, fleyng lowe, &  
20 syn hie, restyng hymself vpon the roches alonge the  
shores of the see, takynge hys dysportes as a byrde  
that pruneth or pycketh her / so that he cam by pro-  
cesse of tyme, from a-boue the sholdres of his sayd  
24 vnckle, vnto the sandy shores of the see of Lybye / &  
from thens he entred wythin cartage, where he fonde  
eneas, that buylded towres & other grete edyfices, aH  
occupied for to make vp the cytee of cartage / and had  
28 a bystorye or wepen crysolite / as it were a lityl swerde  
crosseles, that hafted was wyth iasper, wel enryched &  
garnysshed wyth fyne golde, hangynge at a silken lase  
by his side / and hadde a sleue vpon his lifte harme,  
32 of fyne cremoysein aHe drawn ouer wyth golde wyer,  
right wauyhtly wouen / whiche the ryche dydo had  
made wyth her owne handes, & had gyue it to him ; to  
the whiche eneas, the sayd mercurys adressed him, &  
36 said in this manere / “ Man effemynate, wythout honour,

[\* sign. E iiii]

and then flies to  
Lybia, where

he finds Aeneas  
building in  
Carthage.

## CAP. XVI.

Mercury rebukes  
Aeneas sternly  
for his effeminacy  
and forgetful-  
ness,

[\* leaf E iij,  
back]

delivers  
Jupiter's com-  
mand for him to  
go to Italy,

and vanishes.

Aeneas is at first  
confounded,

rauysshed in to dileectacion femynyne, that hast lefte &  
forgoten thi royame, & habandowned thyn owne thynges,  
for tentende to y<sup>e</sup> strange; why wylt thou edyfie this  
citee, thus moche magnyfique, wherof thou hast taken 4  
the foundementes in this place *that* is not thyne / That  
same god regnyng in the clere heuyn, *that* of his god-  
hed doeth moeue bothe the heuens & therth / hath  
commaunded me to come hastely towarde the, through 8  
the hie regyons of thayer, to bryng vnto the his com-  
maundementes. What cometh to the byfore / that thou  
wyl rebuyld here? what hope hast thou to abide ydle  
in this landes of Lybye? \*wylt enhabyte thiselfe in a 12  
strange contrey, and leue the conqueste of thyn oune  
herytage / And yf the glorye of this thyng / whiche  
vnto the oughte to be desirable / can not moeue the  
therunto / dredynge the payne & the traueyl of the 16  
conqueste, whiche thou oughtest to attrIBUTE to honour  
magnyfyque as to thy persone / atte leeste byholde  
wyth pyte thyn heyre Yolus / to whom the royame of  
ytalye / & the ryche contre romayne, are due after thy 20  
deth by ryght heredytall; & doo bi suche manere of  
wyse, that the loeuynge be vnto the attributed / to  
haue made conquest therof /" The whiche thynges thus  
sayd, the sayd Mercurys / yet spekyng, vaynyssed 24  
oute of enecas sight, as a thyng that one see of ferre /  
alwayes drawynge from hym abak, tyll that it is seen  
nomore: Wherof this enecas was sore afrayed, of the  
grete vysion deyfique that he had seen, soo that he 28  
abode as a man rauysshed out of his wytte, wythout  
speche; his heeres byganne to gresell, & dresse vpward /  
the arteres formatyue of speche were stopped wythin  
hym / in somoeche that he myght not speke for the 32  
grete horroure & fere that he had had, desiryng abowe  
all thynges, to flee & leue this swete contrees of cartage,  
for to fynde a place of surete, thynkyng in hymselfe to  
be in daunger of his persone / as longe as he dweleth 36



- there / wythstandyng the inuectyue monycyons doon CAP. XVII.  
 to hym by the commaundement of the goldis, & knowe not knowing  
 not what to doo / so moche he is esprysed of sodayn what to do in  
 this emergency ;
- 4 sorowe immense / nor by what wayes he maye notyfy  
 thees thynges to Dydo, ne what termes he shaH take  
 at the begynnyng of his wordes / hymself to valyde, &  
 to gyue a coloure to his byfaHe / & abode longe in
- 8 this thoughte doubtouse and varyable, wythoute to  
 sette his purpose to condescende to ony parte of that  
 he wold do, vnto \* the ende that it semed hym for the  
 beste to caHe thre of hys knyghtes / One named
- 12 Nestor, a nother Sergeste / and the thirde is the  
 stronge Cloant; to whome he commaunded, that aHe  
 secretly they sholde doo make redy his shyppes /  
 assemble theyre folke / take theyre armeures and aHe
- 16 other appareylle, for to depart incontynent *that* he  
 shold ordeyne; And that they sholde doo this couertly,  
 in dyssymulyng their goyng / to thende, that yf it were  
 aperceyued by some waye / men shold wene that it
- 20 were a manere of a feynynge :

[\* leaf E 5]

then calls  
 Mnestheus,  
 Sergestus, and  
 Cloanthus, and  
 bids them pre-  
 pare the fleet  
 secretly for  
 departure.

¶ How dydo, knowyng the departyng of  
 eneas, ranne through the cytee of cartage,  
 as a woman disperate, and from herselfe.

24

## Capitulum xvij

- THE felawes right gladly dyd fulfyHe ryght soone  
 the commaundement of eneas / the whiche,  
 trowynge that dydo sholde neuer haue thoughte vpon
- 28 y<sup>e</sup> brekyng of soo grete a loue, nor that he wolde  
 habandoune & leue her, stroof wyth hymself / by what  
 wayes he myghte signyfie it vnto her, in what wordes /  
 or what hour / and in what maner, moost honeste, for to
- 32 gyue her lesse sorowe. But the quene dydo, atysed of  
 the grete couetyse, enflammed wyth desirouse loue that  
 can neuer be sacyate ynoughe / felte firste this barate /  
 by cause that the fyne louer that alwayes kepeth hym

They obey  
 gladly.

Aeneas doubts  
 how to break the  
 matter to Dido.

Dido suspects  
 Aeneas.



CAP. XVIII. selfe wythin his warde, and fyndeth noo thyng soo  
 sure but that he putteth it in adoubte, can not be  
 lyghtely deceyued. For fame, that euyH goddesse,  
 reporteth vnto her that Eneas made his nanye to be 4  
 armed and repayred, wherby she ymagnyeth fyrste /  
 that he dyde soo for to departe / and goo oute of her  
 lande; & Incontynente, as aHe furyouse, & oute of her  
 wytte, toke to styre her selfe, & ranne through y<sup>e</sup> citee 8  
 of cartage as a mad woman, as thyas y<sup>e</sup> grete prestresse  
 dyd in tyme \*passed, whan she wente to incyte and  
 somen the matrones and yonge maydens, to renne  
 furiously and wythout shame, thrughe the towne by 12  
 nyghte to the feest / and sacryfices of the goddes  
 Bachus and Venus, atte the daye of theyr solemnyte

Dido hears of his  
 preparations,

and rushes out  
 madly into the  
 city.

[\* leaf E 5, back]

¶ How dydo sorowfully bewaylled the de-  
 partyng of Eneas, by swete and amyable 16  
 wordes Capitulum xviij

Rushing wildly  
 about the  
 streets, she  
 encounters  
 Aeneas, and tries  
 with loving  
 words to per-  
 suade him to  
 remain,

reminds him  
 how she received  
 him after his  
 shipwreck,

And thus rennyng aboute, she recounted Eneas,  
 to whom by grete dyscomforte, reforced wyth  
 merueyllouse sorowe / wherof her herte was surprysed 20  
 in gret accumylacyon of extreme dysplaysur, she sayd  
 these wordes, halfe by manere of a reproche, in dolaunte  
 lamentacyons, rewthes and complayntes / “ O ryght dere  
 eneas, sedyicious & ryght cruel / how haste thou had 24  
 the herte so vntrue, to thynke so grete a treson / as for  
 to wyH departe out of my lande sodaynly, wythout to  
 make me a-knowen therof / Is there thenne nothyng in  
 the worlde that can make the to abyde here? nother the 28  
 grete loue that is bytwyx vs bothe, wherof we haue  
 somoche loued eche other, the grete recuel that I haue  
 doon to the / the grete ayde & secours, the worshyp  
 that thou hast had of me, whan I receyued the in-to my 32  
 londe / that tyme that thou come firste to me / as a  
 man exyled and naufraged; nor the deth horryble &  
 crueH that for the I must receiue, wherof I shaH redyly

slee my selfe at thoure of thy departyng / nor the paynes & traueylles that thenne I sha<sup>ll</sup> must endure. CAP. XVIII.

O man, of a<sup>ll</sup> other, the moost forcede oute of thy wyt, warns him against the winter tempests.

4 & doled out of y<sup>e</sup> sure waye / how in this harde wedder of wynter, *that* the wyndes ben in their furye / y<sup>e</sup> see full of tempest & of grete voraygeouse wawes, & the tyme a<sup>ll</sup>e indisposed more than euer it was / hast *thou* purposed

8 to mounte vpon y<sup>e</sup> see, & to flee from my presence / for to goo with a lityl puissaunce to \*werre and here [\* leaf E 6]

greuaunce to ytalye, a strange londe / wher-from thou shalt be sone expelled at thys tyme / For yf thy wi<sup>fe</sup> and the danger of going to Italy;

12 were to goo to troye, thyn owne londe / yf she were yet in her beyng / & that thou were we<sup>ll</sup> sure to be there honestly receyued / yet thou oughtest not to goo there, nor to take the see now, wythstandyng the

16 daungeours aforsayd / Alas, fle thou not from me! therof I requyre the, & admonest the, for pyte of the sorowe that I bere, and for the grete teeris flusshyng down from myn eyen, that this to doo ineyten & somone the,

20 by the swetnes / by thy we<sup>ll</sup> wyHyng, and by the yestes & a<sup>ll</sup>e other thynges that I haue doon vnto the, a<sup>ll</sup>e at thyne owne wy<sup>ll</sup>, in suche a wyse that no thyng I haue reserued for my selfe / but that it was a<sup>ll</sup>e

24 habandoned vnto the, more redyli than to myn owne body / By oure kyssyng and swete cuHyng, by oure byhauyng and louely countenaunces / by our Ioyes and playsures delyceouse, in fyne loue bytwy<sup>x</sup> vs

28 mutue<sup>ll</sup>, wherof we haue loued eche other soo that in noo wyse my dyligente thoughte hadde neuer no wy<sup>ll</sup>e to be crue<sup>ll</sup> anemste<sup>1</sup> the, but hath be atte a<sup>ll</sup>e tymes [<sup>1</sup>anent]

desirous for taccomplysshe, wythout ony gaynsayng,

32 a<sup>ll</sup>e *that* I knewe was to thy playsur / And thenne yf I haue deserued to haue some good of the / & yf thou euer toke playsunce in ony thyng that by me cam, playse the, thenne, to haue mercy of this poure desolate

36 frende, that shalle be sone broughte to the poynte

invokes their past loves and pleasures

to induce him to stay;

## CAP. XVIII.

recounts the  
dangers his  
going will  
expose her to  
from the  
Lybians and  
Tyrians,

[\* leaf E 6, back]

laments the loss  
of her good  
name,

fears she will  
fall into the  
hands of Pygma-  
lion or Yarbass,

and laments that  
she has no child  
to remind her of  
Aeneas.

mortaHe, and my cytee dispeopled / and to grete ruyne,  
delynered by thyn infortunate goynge; And wyH  
chaunge thy courage / yf my requeste and prayers can  
haue place of merite to acqyre mercy ayenst the. thou 4  
seest that the folke of Lybye / the crueH tyrauntes of  
Myronde, and they of the cytee of Thyre, that many  
tymes I haue offended, hate and haue enuye atte me;  
for the; \*my chastyte pudique and aHe hee praysynge 8  
is there loste; And my first fame & goode renomme,  
wherbi I was electe & taken vp to the sterres as a  
veraye goddesse / is now, by thy departynge, sodaynly  
extyncted. why wolde thou thenne habandoune and 12  
leue me, thy kynde loue, dyscomforted, Redy to deie /  
for to flee, passinge by this countrey, lyke as an hoste  
that lightly forgeteth his lodgyng and the place that  
he goeth fro, & departeth Ioyously wythout to haue 16  
eny rewthe / therunto haa I perceyue weH, that of the  
I wende to haue my frende, my true husbande &  
espouse / & no thing abideth with me nowe / but  
onely the name of an hoste. what can I wayte for nowe? 20  
O, what recomfort may I haue, that am voyde from aHe  
hope / and noon other is there / but to faHe in-to  
the handes of Pigmalion, my crueHe brother, kyng of  
Thyre / that shaHe comme take my cyte, and put aHe 24  
to destructyon, and brynge me to mendycyte; Or  
that Yarbass, kyng of Gectuses, that I haue so ofte  
indygned / for to auenge hys Iniuries, shaHe reduce  
me in-to captyuite / Atte leste, yf afore thy harde 28  
departynge, I had had of the, som lynee, or som lyteH  
Eneas / that I myght haue seen often playnge in my  
haHe, for to take theratte som comforte, wheryn I  
shulde haue take my dysport / thinkynge vpon the 32  
remembraunce of the IoyfuH playsaunce that I haue  
had of thy presence / whyche shulde asswage the  
harde dysplaysaunce that I shaHe haue of thyn  
absence, I shulde thynke that I were not so sore 36

wasted, nor aHe togydre habaundouned, as presently I am /" CAP. XIX.

¶ How dydo, alle in a rage, complayned  
4 her to Eneas and to the goddes.

¶ Capitulo xix.

OF the whiche wordes, Eneas not moeuynge hym self  
in nowyse / but in holdyng hys syght alwayes /  
8 Immoyle atte anothre syde than vpon dydo, & sighynge  
sore \* in his herte for the loue that he had hadde to her,  
sayd in this manere / " Certes, quene, I answere not, but  
that thou haste deserued of me moche more of goodes  
12 than I can nombre, or by som wyse thynke ne telle;  
and so shaH I remembre elysse as longe as lyffe shaH  
abyde wythin me / and by cause that thou hast spoken  
first, I wyH teHe & shewe vnto the that I wold not haue  
16 departed furtyuely out of thy land, vnknown<sup>1</sup> to the,  
but sholde haue sygnified it vnto the / Also I am not  
come hider determyned to wedde the / nor neuer toke  
presumpcion in me for to do so, nor to take aliaunce  
20 wyth the for suche a cause. And yf the goddes wolde  
suffre that I myghte vse my lif to myn appetyte, & to  
be at my ire wyH / I shold take habytacion in the  
grete troye, wyth my kynsmen & other that are there  
24 abyden, escaped from the distruction / And yet sholde  
troye be made vp agayn by me / but the god Appollo  
of the cytee of tymbre, wyth the oracles, in short, pre-  
ceptyue of the lande of lycye / commaunden me to goo  
28 in to ytalie. and syth that it muste be thus doon, it is  
my lande<sup>2</sup> & my desire to accomplyshe aHe theyr wyHe /  
And it semeth that thou oughte not in no wyse to repre-  
hende me, ne to haue<sup>3</sup> enuye vpon y<sup>e</sup> troians, of theyr  
32 goynge in-to ytalie, a strong lande, out of theyr nacyon /  
sith that thou art of thire, come from the meane regyons

[\* leaf E 7]

Aeneas acknow-  
ledges her  
deserts, says he  
would not have  
gone secretly,  
and had not  
presumed to  
marry her.

His own wish  
was to rebuild  
Troy,

but Apollo  
commands him  
to go to Italy,  
and he must  
accomplish the  
will of the gods.

<sup>1</sup> orig. unkonwen

<sup>2</sup> Fr. pays. Strong, l. 32, is *estrange*.

<sup>3</sup> orig. hane

## CAP. XIX.

of fenyce, to enhabyte in libye, & to take thy playsure  
 in thy grete edyfices of cartage, that thou doost make  
 presently for to preside in hit / forsakyng the swete  
 grounde, moder to thy byrth. For to a peple yssued 4  
 out of strange lande, is licyte to seke strange places for  
 theyr / dweHynge. And it sholde be a shame to me,  
 that haue enterprysed the conquest of ytalye, to reside  
 in this land of lybie, wythoute to accomlishe my wyage; 8  
 whiche thyng for to doo, I am incyted in dremys by  
 the soule of my fader Anchisis / the whiche, atte aHe  
 [\* leaf E 7, back] \* tymes that the nyght obscure couereth the landes  
 of her shadowes humyde / whan the sterres togyder 12  
 maken theyr rysyng / apyereth byfore me vndre the  
 speche of a terryble ymage / strongly indygned, and  
 ayenste me sore moeued. Also of a nother side I am  
 sore conturbed wyth a drede merueyHous, for the grete 16  
 Iniurye that I doo to my dere sone Ascanius, whiche,  
 by my longe taryenge, I doo pryue of the possession  
 of the royaume of ytalye / wherof the successyon is vnto  
 hym due of ryghte heredytatHe / and by veraye des- 20  
 tynacy after my deth / but there is no more / by cause  
 that thou shalte not wene / that of my selfe I haue  
 enterprysed this besines for to leue the / yet in trouth,  
 and also I swere it by thy hedde, and also by my owne, 24  
 that Mercurye, the gret messenger and grete Interpretour  
 of the goddys, hath ben hastely sente fleyng by the  
 ayer from Iupyter, souerayne god, whiche hath brought  
 me maundemente for to departe aHe incontynent / I 28  
 haue seen hym manyfestly, in lyght of godhed, to entre  
 the walles of thy cytee / & aH clerly of hym herde his  
 voys wyth myn eerys properly. wherfore it ought weH  
 to suffice the / wythoute to presse me wyth wordes ony 32  
 more, sith that the goynge and enterpryse that I muste  
 doo in ytalye, is not of myn owne wyHe : ”

**I**N sayeng the whiche wordes by encas / dydo lokyng  
 at one side, torned hir eyen sodaynli, wythout to 36

Both on his own  
 account

and his son's he  
 must go to Italy  
 and carry out  
 his destiny.

He tells of  
 Mercury's  
 message to him,

which ought to  
 satisfy her.



speke neuer a worde / as a persone furybounde & fury-  
 ous: and or euer that she coude saye ony thyng, as  
 rauysshed / helde her sighte aH mobyle, wythout to  
 4 areste it vpon one thyng of a long while / and after, by  
 gret yre, gadred by immense sorow intrysiuque wythin  
 her hert, sayd to hym in this wyse: "o man right false  
 and vntrue, *that*, what someuer men sayen, was neuer  
 8 borne of no goddesse, nor procreated of Royalle lynce  
 \*comyng of the puissaunt dardanus, fyrst founder of the  
 grete cyte of troye, but arte engendred of Caucasus<sup>1</sup> /  
 whiche is a mountayne terryble in ynde, aH ful of harde  
 12 stones of dyuerse fygyres, of merueyllous height that  
 recheth almost vnto the heuyns / soo that neuer ony  
 birde myghte passe ouer / where groweth hungre that  
 was neuer satysfied, to exstirpe & waste aHe the goodes  
 16 comyng oute of the erth, The whiche, how be it that  
 she hath chosen there her habytacion, for to deuoure  
 aH thynges that comyn vnde[r] her; AH this nethellesse  
 suffiseth her not / but sendeth down her colde messagers /  
 20 as snowe / froste, heyle / & tempeste, transported & caste  
 of the ayer by the colde wyndes into the lowe regions,  
 and after doeth peryshe the trees & the herbes, the  
 corne, & aH other thyng growyng oute of the grounde /  
 24 and this doon, whan she hathe no thyng more, [s]he  
 parforseth hyr self, wyth hir grete teeth to ete the rotes  
 vnder the grounde, that haue hidde himself wythin  
 the entraylles of thierthe their moder / for to achieue  
 28 that aH were brought to destructyon / as *thou* wylte  
 doo of me, in folowyng the condycions of y<sup>e</sup> subsiduous  
 modre that hath made the to be norysshed and fedde  
 wyth the mylke of the tygres of Yreanye, that are  
 32 made wythoute to haue pyte of ony thyng that is  
 borne in this worlde; what holdeth me / but that I  
 shaHe sone goo fro my wyttes, replenysshed of grete  
 madnesse / why is it that I dssymule to goo aHe oute

## CAP. XIX.

Dido bitterly  
 reproaches  
 Aeneas,

says he is  
 neither of divine  
 nor royal  
 descent, but

[\* leaf E 8]

born of Mount  
 Caucasus, where  
 grows hunger  
 that devours all  
 things,

and whence  
 come cold,  
 snow, etc., to  
 destroy  
 vegetation;

or he has been  
 fed with the  
 milk of the  
 pitiless tigresses  
 of Hyrcania.

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* Caucasus. Fr. Caucassus.

CAP. XX.

Dido upbraids  
Aeneas's want of  
feeling,

[\* leaf E 8, back]

prays to Juno  
and Jupiter,

from my wyttes? wherto wylle I thenne kepe my selfe,  
nor lyue more from hens forth / syth that this euyH  
man / & a traytour, for what wepynge that I make,  
dayneth not gyue oute one only syghe, nor torne his 4  
eyen to loke ones vpon me / nor haue no pyte of me,  
his sorowfuH loue / for to styre hym to one sighynge  
only, or to a tere descendyng out of his eyen / what I  
ought to do / ne what parte to torne me, \*what I may 8  
saye / to what ende shold my wytte mow begynne /  
nor where to haue recours / I wote not / O goddes  
cestial, and Iuno grete goddesse! O Iupiter, and aHe  
othre goddes, gyue socours to me, thys vnhappy / and 12  
wul permute rigoure to equyte, in this bihalue."

¶ How dido, with grete cursynges, gaf leue  
to Eneas / ¶ Capitulo // xx

recounts her  
benefits to him,

"**A** Las, I haue receyued this man, poure, myserable, 16  
and naufragd vpon the ryuage of the see / and,  
as euyH aduysed, haue kept hym, and weH entreated,  
and lyghtly & gretly coloqued, aboue the moost grete  
of my lande / his nauye I haue do make ayen, that was 20  
reduced aH in peces; his folke, that were aHe perissed,  
and aHe lyuered to deth, I haue delyuered them  
therfrom, and receyued in-to my cyte / not onely  
receyued / but entreteyned / furnyshed and susteyned, 24  
as them of my house / And nowe, for to rewarde me  
therof, I haue the rage of furoure atte my herte. O  
what anguyshe / what lesyng, what treson fuH of  
desperacion / how he swereth that the god Apollo, 28  
by his aunsueres and augurementes<sup>1</sup> / the sortes pre-  
ceptiue of lycie, and the interpretour of the grete  
god Iupiter, Mercurius, messenger of the goddes / haue  
pressed hym strongly, by ryght grete commaundementes, 32  
for to goo ryghte sone in-to ytalye / O aHe puissaunt  
lyght permanent / before whome no thyng, be it

disbelieves the  
prophecies and  
divine messages  
he speaks of,<sup>1</sup> orig. angurementes



- neuere so secret nor couertly hept, can not be hyd, CAP. XX.  
 how weneth this man, by his false and deceyuables  
 wordes, made stronge with right grete and horrible  
 4 othes, to make me to vndrestande / that ye aHe ben  
 about for to make hym goo from me, as that ye had  
 non othre besynesse but only to send doune youre  
 knyghtes messagers towarde hym / O, how thou art a  
 8 ryght stedfast lyar, that dredeth not to caHe the true calls him a liar,  
 goddes in testymonage for to con\*ferme thy lesynge; [\* sign. F j]  
 and yet more, to Impute to theym that they ben cause  
 of thyn vntrouth / Now goo, thenne, syn it is soo / into and bids him go,  
 12 what someuer partyes that thou wylt / for I haue not  
 the keypyng of the / I holde the not in no wyse / nor  
 wyH not that thou abyde for me. crye strongly, and  
 caHe the wyndes / and doo the worste that thou  
 16 canste! calle after Yolus & Neptunus, for to lede the  
 in-to ytalye! hie the, and make it shorte / mounte vpon  
 the see, and tarye no lenger / For I truste that the  
 goddes of equitye pyetouse, haue suche puyssaunce, thou  
 20 shalte abyde naufragd wythin the see / thy shyppes  
 broken ayenste the roches / and shaHe caHe me often  
 to thyne ayde, in grete complayntes & merueyllouse  
 rewthes, that thou haaste thus habandouned me, dydo,  
 24 dysplaysaunte and desolate / that sone shalle folowe  
 the / by fyre mortaHe inflammed. & whan the colde  
 deth shaH haue separed me, and taken awaie the soule  
 from the body, my spyrite shaH aproche the nyghe in  
 28 aH the places of thy flageHacyons, peynes & tormentes,  
 for to see thy sorowes, and to here thy wepynges and  
 sobbynges, and grete lamentacyons; wherof I shalle  
 make my reporte vnto the pryue goddis, beyng in the  
 32 lowe shadowes:”

hoping he will  
be shipwrecked,

and threatens  
her own death,

and that after  
that she will in  
spirit haunt him,  
and hear how he  
laments in his  
troubles.

¶ How dydo felle down in a swone / and  
 how & in what manere she was borne  
 awaye by hir wymen; and also how

CAP. XXI.

dyligently the nauye of eneas was made  
redy for to goo in to ytalie.

## Capitulum xxj

Meaning to have  
said much more,

Dido swoons,

[\* sign. F j, back]

and the Trojans  
continue their  
preparations for  
departure.

They are com-  
pared to ants,  
whose method of  
working is here

IN sayeng the whiche wordes, how be it that dydo 4  
hadde purposed to saye moche more / she brake  
her speche aHe atte ones by ryghte grete sorowe ; Toke  
and dystourned her eyen from the lyghte where she  
was inne / And felle in a swoune, as alle ded to the 8  
grounde. she was soone take vppe by her wymmen,  
that bare her in-to her chambre marbryne, & leyd  
her vpon a lityl bedde. Wherof Eneas, \*how be it  
that he had grete pyte and compassyon of her, and 12  
desired sore to comforte her wyth swete & amyable  
woordes, for to assuage her sorowe in grete sobbynges /  
for grete displaysure & sorowe. that he had, to see  
his swete loue suffre suche<sup>1</sup> a payne / Alwayes he 16  
determynd hymself, & went his wayes for to see his  
shippes / Thenne whan his folke and maryneres sawe  
hym / they dyd hie hemselfe yet more fast to werke,  
for to haste their goyng / transported the moste parte 20  
of the nauye, that was talowed / & weH garnysshed  
wyth pytche / oute of the hauen in-to the rode ; made  
coores of wood aH grene, comynge new out of the  
forest / and toke also ryght grete trees, and foyson of 24  
other tymbre, for to apropre to their other businesses,  
in grete desire to departe sone hens. ye sholde se  
troians of aH sides, that ranne, some downwarde / and  
thother vpwarde, aHe of one wyHe to haue furnysshed 28  
theyr shippes, eyn soo as pysmers are wounte to do,  
dredyng sore the wynter / whan they haue founde a  
shokke of whete or other corne, goo some oute of theyr  
nest, and aHe by one waye, for to bere awaye their 32  
proye / Some lade themselfe / som helpen the other,  
and thother drawe after them that / that they can not  
bere ; that other commaundeth and setteth hem aH in

<sup>1</sup> orig. snche

ordre; a nother forseth hym self to swepe the place;      CAP. XXI.  
 a nother kepeth, that other bystoweth it; And the      curiously  
 other incyteth to make dyligence / one renneth, a      described,  
 4 nother cometh agayn / and that other seketh what to  
 lade hym selfe wyth aHe. a nother hath somoche laden  
 that he late faHe som by the waye / And thenne he  
 caHeth for helpe, soo that the waye is neuer deliuered  
 8 of theym, tyH that they haue doon theyr businesses.  
 ¶ Alas, Dydo, where is thy wytte bycome, thy fayr      Dido is in great  
 maynteyn and swete countenaunce? what goode, what      trouble.  
 Ioye / and what playsure, nor solace of IoyefuH re-  
 12 membraunce, maye thou \*haue, byholdyng vpon thyse  
 thinges / What terys<sup>1</sup> and grete siglynges / what  
 complayntes, caHynges and lamentacyons, dyde yssue  
 that tyme out of thy swete brest, whan thou were in  
 16 the highe lotfe<sup>2</sup> of thy grete towres, and sawe the see  
 aHe troubled and tourmented with shyppes and orys /  
 ¶ O right grete loue Importunate, to whome aHe thinge      The power of  
 diffycile / semeth to be facile for to come to her      Love over  
 human strength.  
 20 entent / how hast thou so grete strengthe ouer the  
 corage humaine? This dydo, for to serue the nowe,  
 fonndreth aH in teeris; after, parforceth herself by  
 praiers; and after, submytteth hersilf to aHe daungers /  
 24 and to aHe thinges dyuerse; leueth nothings, how  
 stronge that it is, how sharp, harde nor grete / but  
 that she wyl parforce herself for to experimete them  
 aHe, or euer she delybere herself vtterly to the dethe /  
 28 After she dyde doo caHe anne, her suster germayne, and  
 to her recyteth a part of her sorowe; and with grete  
 rewthe byganne thus to saye vnto her / “ Anne! beholde  
 and see how this folke haste hemself, & assemble from  
 32 euery syde in-to the hauen / they haue drawen vp  
 alreedy theire hyghe sayHes vpon the grete mastes of  
 theyre shippes, aHe spred abroad ayenst the wyndes,  
 desiryng<sup>3</sup> and waytynge after the storme, for to

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* treys<sup>2</sup> *orig.* lotfe<sup>3</sup> *orig.* desiryuge

## CAP. XXI.

The Trojans' joy  
at goingenhances  
Dido's sorrow,

which she can  
bear no longer,

[\* sign. F ij, back]

so comes to her  
sister for help,

and prays her to  
go to the false  
Aeneas, and show  
him that she had  
no part in the  
Greek con-  
spiracy against  
Troy,

neither has she  
offended him in  
any sort of way;

lede hens the nauye aHe attones, whiche they haue  
garnyshed wyth floures, and garlandes, and with crownes  
in sygne of Ioye & gladnes, that maketh my sorowe  
and heuynes to be moche the greter / AHas! yf I had 4  
weH thoughte to haue fallen in the Inconuenient  
where I fynde now myself ynne, I wolde haue purueied  
therto in suche wise / That I shulde not haue come by  
noo waye to thys greuouse tourment of mortaHe sorowe 8  
where I am so ferre come, In to the bytternes of grete  
myserie / that by noo wyse I can not bere it noo  
lenger / socorus to the, must I thenne seke, my swete  
suster, & my right dere frende / \* saue my body! saue 12  
me my lyf! and for to doo this, I praye & requyre the,  
that one message only it playse the for to do for me,  
toward that traytour, that man of euyl corag, that  
hath loued the gretly / and hath vttered his secretes 16  
vnto the entierly, so that thou knowest his condicions  
& his dedes / the places / the houres & mouementes,  
and the oportunyte of the tyme moost propyce for to  
speke wyth hym. Goo thenne anone, my suster, wyth 20  
aH humylite / to requyre myn enmye mortall, the false  
eneas, whiche is ayenst me so fyers, shewynge vnto  
hym pietously / how I haue not be in no wyse /  
thynkinge nor consentyng in the cursed yle of Aulite, 24  
whan of one assente aH the grekes folke swore that  
troye shold be distroyed / The harde conspyracion of  
the same grete excysion was made ferre from my  
lande; and neuer socours ne comforte by me, nor of 28  
my supporte, was gyuen to theym, for to doo that my  
shippes nor my armye were neuer sent thyder for to  
gyue greuaunce to the troians / nor neuer of me came  
euyH vnto them, nor no thyng that was to theym 32  
nuyisible. Also I haue not rented, vyolated ne broken,  
the pyramyde of his faders sepulture. I neuer dyde  
amys, nor neuer offended ayenst hym / wherby he  
ought to leue me aside / Infestaunce obprobre ne 36

vytupere to anchises, whan he liued, that called hym  
 fader of Eneas, nother to his soule after his deth /  
 were neuer doon of my behalue / Alas why, suster, in  
 4 shewynge thyse thynges vnto hym / wyte of hym /  
 why he hath me in suche indygnacyon / that he  
 refuseth to lene his eeres / for to vnderstande my  
 wordes, that ben soo iuste and resonable, as thi self  
 8 knowest: O! he wyHe now goo soo hastily, atte this  
 tyme whiche is so daungerouse / atte leeste that it  
 maye playse hym to graunte a yefte to me, his sorowfuH  
 loue, that is onely / that he wyHe tarye and dysferre  
 12 his departynge vnto \*the newe tyme / that the swete  
 wyndes shaHe putte hemselfe vp in pacifycacion of  
 the see pestilencyaH, that thenne shaHe permytte hym  
 facely & lightly for to do his vyage safly. I do not  
 16 somone hym for taccomplysshe his promyse simulatyue  
 of the mariage of vs two / nor *that* he leue his purpose  
 for to goo in-to ytalie / but I requyre only that he  
 putte this thyng in delaye for a certayn space of  
 20 tyme / Duryng the whiche, I may induce my self to  
 sorow, & that infortune admynystre to me my sorowes  
 by proces of tyme, one after a nother, wythout to  
 suffoke me now vtterli in-to the depe see of amaritude,  
 24 wythout ony reysing / soo doo, I praye the, my suster,  
 hauinge of me remembraunce / that it playse the to  
 goo & make vnto hym this my present requeste / &  
 thus doynge, I shaHe make thee myn heyre, to enioye  
 28 & receyue, after my deth, y<sup>e</sup> renues of aH my londe."

CAP. XXII.

and to ask him  
to put off his  
departure till  
spring,

[\* sign. F iij]

when the  
weather will be  
less stormy.

She does not ask  
him to fulfil his  
promise of  
marriage, but  
only to delay his  
departure a  
little.

If Anne does  
this she shall be  
Dido's heir.

¶ How eneas brake the oken tree for the  
grete loue of dydo Capitulum xxij

32 **T**he whiche thynges, thus sayd by dydo, Anne her  
 suster went incontynent towarde eneas, to  
 make vnto hym her feble legacion. the whiche he  
 wold not graunt, by cause that the dyuine commaunde-  
 mentis inhibytores, that had stopped his eeres of pite,  
 36 were contrarie to the same; and many goynges &

Anne goes to  
Aeneas.



## CAP. XXII.

Aeneas resists  
temptation as an  
oak does the  
tempest,

despite all  
blasts.

[\* sign. F iij,  
back]

The older it is,  
the more firmly  
fixed are its  
roots.

So stands  
Aeneas,

though sorely  
moved by pity  
for Dido,

and her sister's  
remonstrances  
and appeals.

comynges were there made of the sayd anne from one  
parte to thother / that fynably were aH frustratoire /  
and percisted enead / like as a grete oke tre, antyque &  
in-uctered of many yeres among the grete stones harde, 4  
strongely roted, whiche is ofte caste of many wyndes &  
orages, wherof the foure wyndes happen ofte to assem-  
ble togider, one ayenst *that* other, for to ouerthrawe  
hym doune, & wyth their grete blastes taken his hie 8  
braunches, whiche they shake & bowe un-to y<sup>e</sup> grounde /  
& make hem to braye & crie by impetuous moeuynge,<sup>1</sup>  
tendyng to distroye hym vtterli / wherof y<sup>e</sup> gret tronc  
\*auncient, that the more that he is olde / hie braunched / 12  
spacouse & grete, the more thicke & depper ben his  
rotes spred wythin therthe, & related bytwy th[e]  
harde roches, abydeh euer styl ferme, & moeueth by no  
wyse. In lyke wyse dyd semblable Eneas, that, how be 16  
it *that* he was strongli impelled in his corage by y<sup>e</sup> per-  
suasions & harde lamentacions confyte in pietous teeres  
rennyng doune the swete face of dydo / that he somoche  
derly had loued, & by her was restored from deth to 20  
lyf / from anguishe & calamyte, in-to right grete  
prosperite / wherof y<sup>e</sup> remembraunce greued hym ryght  
sorowfuHy by incytacion compatyble, whiche admon-  
nesteth hym to socoure this dolant lady / the whiche 24  
by her suster maketh hym to be induced to doo the  
same / by many exhortacions & pyetous remonstrances  
excytatiue of aH weH wyHyng noryce of loue in dylec-  
tion mutueHe of swete charite / condolaunt ouer them 28  
*that* ben affliged / aH this nethelasse, the resolucion  
intrinsicke of his courage is euer reduced to thobey-  
ssaunce of y<sup>e</sup> goddes, & to their deuyne commaunde-  
mentes, the whiche, aH thise thynges reiecte from hym, 32  
he enterprised for tacomplysshe after his power :

**A** Nd what wyHe y<sup>e</sup> swete fenycce, foundrynge in  
teeres / *that* for ony thyng that she may saye /  
do, or thynke, can not conuerthe the courage of enead ? she 36

<sup>1</sup> orig. moenynges

- taketh her recours to wyshe deth, ouer moche noyeth  
 her to lyue lenger in this worlde / fleeth aH mondayn  
 playsurs / fleeth recomforte & aH companyes, fleeth  
 4 y<sup>e</sup> palayces & her chambre arayed, fleeth y<sup>e</sup> lyghte of  
 y<sup>e</sup> daye / fleeth the sonne, & the heuyn shynynge / In  
 her closet hideth herself, sore sighyng, makyunge grete  
 sorowe. But yet, for to augmente more her sorow in  
 8 desperacion, thus hid, & makyunge her secret sacrificyes  
 wyth y<sup>e</sup> lyght of the fyre brennyng & enflamed vpon  
 her pouldres of frankencens,<sup>1</sup> wherof she decored her  
 oblacions for to Immoile byfore thawtres of her temples,  
 12 \*she sawe & aperceyued horryble thynges that made  
 her fulsore affraied, moche more than she was to-fore /  
 that is to wite, the holy waters dedicate to the sacr[i]-  
 fice, became blacke & obscure, & chaunged in horrible  
 16 licoure. And also apperceyued how the good wyne of  
 swete odour, ordeyned for the lybacions or washynges  
 of the sacryfices, were conuerted & tourned in spece of  
 bloode crueH, aH dede, & almost rotyne, whiche for cer-  
 20 tayne was to her a harde thinge to beholde / wherof  
 a grete malencolie enuaded theenne her herte & her  
 wittes, aH ynoughe troubled of the thynges precedent /  
 whiche thinges she kept clos & shette withynne the  
 24 shryne of her sorowfuH thoughte, without to notyfy  
 them to eny body lyuynge / aHe were he neuer so  
 gretly her frende, not oneli to her suster anne, that  
 afore had weH knowen aH her secrete thoughtes & other  
 28 pryue thinges; amonge the whiche she hadde a lyteH  
 sacraire of marbeH, made in manere of a temple, in  
 remembraunce of Sycheus, that his brother pygmalyon  
 had putte to destruction / whiche, duryng the maryage  
 32 of hem two, dede haunte there fuH ofte / and made it  
 to be weH ornated & hanged with fayre tappytes  
 white, & crowned weH rychely with crownes of  
 golde, weH enameyHed, & ryght curiously & proprely

CAP. XXII.

Dido's great  
distress.She avoids  
company and  
the light of day.

[\* sign. F iiij]

Her sacrifices go  
wrong.Her visions and  
delusions are  
dreadful, but she  
keeps them  
secret.Her shrine in  
remembrance of  
Sycheus, her first  
husband.<sup>1</sup> orig. frankencens



CAP. XXII. kerued / & of other somptuouse thynges in grete  
honoure & reuerence / out of y<sup>e</sup> whiche sacrayre,  
w[i]thin the temple aforsayde, after that this dydo had  
vtterly submytted & dedicate her-self to enea, out of the 4  
place of maryage, in brekyng her first feithe promysed  
to sycheus / her semed that she herd come ther-out  
often some voyces of her sayde late husbände, Sycheus,  
hym complaynyng, and blamyng her by cryes and 8  
lamentacyons, in right grete wepynges & quarellouse  
plaintes / and after, atte euen, about y<sup>e</sup> gooyng vnder  
of y<sup>e</sup> sonne, whan y<sup>e</sup> derk night taketh y<sup>e</sup> landes vnder  
her gouernance / she, beyng alle alone \*in her secrete 12  
and pryue houses / vnderstode & herde at euery owre  
the owle, whiche is a byrde fleyng by nyght, feryng  
y<sup>e</sup> lyghte of the daye / wherof the song termyneth in  
pyetous extermynacion, whiche dooth quake & fereth 16  
theretes of the hereers, & constricteth theym wyth a  
sorowfuH mynde; wherby it is sayd that he is a byrde  
mortaffe, or otherwyse, denouncer of mortalite, And  
conuerseth often in the chircherde, vpon the temples & 20  
symulacres, & in places that ben solitare & pesty-  
lencious / this byrde a-boue declared, cam almost  
euery nyght vpon the temples & hie pynacles of the  
palayce & cyte of elysse, in syngyng of fyne manere, in 24  
grete draughtes & of a longe brethe, his right sorowfuH<sup>1</sup>  
songe / soo that ryght often he mocued of dydo the  
corage, in-to grete teres & sobbynges malencolyouse, fuH  
of trystesses & merueyllouse thoughtes. and of another 28  
side, come to her remembraunce the grete iustices &  
dyuynacions presagyous & aruspicyous, vnto her tolde,  
& somtyme denounced, by the auguryes<sup>2</sup> & prenostyca-  
tures of her harde and aduerse fortunes, that to her 32  
were frusted / wherof the most parte she had weH  
known & approued to haue ben veritable / that con-  
tryste her alwayes to sorowe more than afore / After

From this shrine  
she seems to  
hear her  
husband's voice.

[\* sign. F iij,  
back]

She hears the  
owl,

the bird of ill-  
omen and  
darkness,

which sits  
almost nightly  
on her palace,

and moves her  
to weeping with  
its moanings,

to her prophetic.

<sup>1</sup> orig. sorowfnll

<sup>2</sup> orig. anguryes

whiles that she is lieng in her bedde, wenyng to slepe  
 & take some reste, horrible dremes & cruel, comen to-  
 fore her in hir mynde / that tormente her in tremoure  
 4 merueyllous; her hert semeth somtyme that eneaſ  
 foloweth her of nyghe, as alle forcenēd, replenyſshed  
 wyth rage & tormented in furoure, for to diſtroye her, &  
 vtterly ſubcombe her in-to perſecucion extreme / And  
 8 after ſeeth herſelfe lefte all alone wythout companye,  
 goyng by longe wayes, dyſtroied, deſerte & vnhabytēd,  
 as a woman loſte, vagaunt aboute the landes vnknown  
 to her / where ſhe goeth. After, wyth this dreame  
 12 cometh to her aduſe, that her cyte and landes of  
 Cartage are aH dyſtroied \*and<sup>1</sup> tourned in exyH /  
 wherfore ſhe fleeth, for doubtē to be taken, and  
 retourneth towarde the marche of thyr, wenyng for to  
 16 come to a place of ſauete; but ſodaynly commeth tofore  
 her in her remembraunce, the grete Iniurye that ſhe  
 hathe doon to the tyrynes / withdrawn theire folke,  
 & taken theire goode, and aHe the rychesses of ſycheus /  
 20 the whiche to be had, pygmalion, kyng of aHe the  
 lande, made hym to be ſlayne and mordred falſly;  
 wherfore ſhe doubteth leſt aſmoche ſhulde be doon to  
 her yf ſhe went thidre. And thus ſhe remayneth in  
 24 this poynt deſolate, without eny hope of ſome refute to  
 haue, as aH tourned from herſelf for grete ſorowe in-to  
 a rageouſe franesye; euen thus as was the ſone of  
 pantheus cardynus, whan, in his grete furyoſite, was  
 28 conuerted and tourned by Acho out of his witte, ſo  
 that hym ſemed that he ſawe the felawes of the  
 Emmendes and aHe theire excercyte / that is to wite,  
 Theſypho, Megere, and Atheleto, thei thre furyouſe  
 32 goddeſſes, infernaHe, incytatyue to aHe euyl thyngē,  
 that dyſtroien and bryngen aHe to nought, kutten and  
 choppen / breken and marren, aHe the werke and ſubtyH  
 artyfye that men haue made / Clotho and alſo Latheser,

CAP. XXII.

Dido dreams that  
 Aeneas follows  
 her to destroy  
 her,

[\* leaf F. 5]

also that  
 Carthage is  
 destroyed,

but ſhe fears to  
 return to Tyre,  
 dreading Pygma-  
 lion's vengeance.

She is like Pen-  
 theus tortured by  
 the Furies.

<sup>1</sup> orig. and

## CAP. XXII.

The Fates  
produce all  
creatures.

Dido sees two  
sons.

Two cities of  
Thebes.

[\* leaf F 5, back]

Cadmus (Cadm-  
mus) of Thebes,  
the first inventor  
of letters and  
writing.

A digression on  
the art of  
writing.

The first letters  
were purple.

that neuer ceassen to spynne and weue / To sette to gyder  
and to coagule aHe natives for generacyon / Wherof are  
produced aHe the creatures that out of the erthe ben  
heuēd vp to the ayere. Of another syde she saw also, to 4  
her semynge, two sonnes shynynge one by another, that  
presente himself by symulacyon wythin the fantasme  
of her entendement, aHe troubled in grete confusyon of  
dysplaysures and sorowes excessyue, aHe dyuerse in 8  
contrary qualyte / And y<sup>e</sup> two thebes, grete citees  
merueyHouse, that appieren in aduysion to be bifore her  
eyen / whiche to her semyng are bothe properly one  
lyke another / How be it that there was neuer \*but one, 12  
whiche a kyng of grece caHed cadinus, made somtyme,  
that founde first y<sup>e</sup> lettres & the arte of writyng, whiche  
he sent in to diuerse countrees, & pryncipally in the  
land of fenice, wherre he made scriptures, grete bokes & 16  
cronicles / lerned the folke to rede & to write / wherof  
right grete lawde was to him attributed, to haue founde  
by subtyH artyfice suche a manere of waye, that men  
may doo knowe aH his wiHe, & notyfie it to whome he 20  
wiH, by one symple lettre, be it nyghe or ferre, be it of  
peas or of were, of amyte, or of eny other thing /  
without to departe himself from his place, but onely by  
a messenger whiche is sent ther / whiche haply shaHe 24  
knowe nothing of the matere / & aHe be he dombe or  
specheles, yf he take the lettre vnto hym whome it  
is dyrected vnto, howe be it that he were atte roome or  
in nauarre, in hongary or in englande / he shaH therby 28  
vnderstande the desyre of hym that hath sente suche  
a messenger vnto him / wherbi yet atte this owre, with a  
good right & a Iuste cause, is lefte of the god cadynus  
here in erthe his grete loenge and good renomnee, that 32  
neuer shal be extyncted nor anychiled, nor here after  
abolished. But in token of this, that the first lettres  
wherof he was inventour, came out of fenyce, equypared  
to purple coloure, By cause that in that countrey were 36

the pourpre clothes fyrst made, and the coloure founde /  
 We wryte yet in oure kalenders the hyghe festes wyth  
 rede lettres of coloure of purple / And the grete  
 4 capitaHe lettres of the bygynnyng and princypal<sup>1</sup> of  
 the psalmes and chapytres wythin oure bookes, ben aHe  
 mayde fayre ther wythaHe. ¶ But yet the grete  
 trybulacon of Elysse is equypared to that of horrestes,  
 8 the sone of Agamenon, weHe ofte recyted in the  
 comedies senoyses, makynge meneyon Howe, In sygne  
 of vengauce of the dethe of hys fader, And turpy-  
 tude \*dysonest of clytemestra his moder, after thoe-  
 12 cysion of her, & *that* he torned himself in-to furiosite,  
 him semed *that* he sawe inCESSauntli his saide moder  
 elitmestra / or *proserpine* of heH, the gret goddesse / or  
 the moder of y<sup>e</sup> emendes that I haue named aboue, aH  
 16 enflamed in y<sup>e</sup> face with fire brennyng / & the hed aH  
 fuH of right grete serpentis, graffed there-vpon as thike  
 as heerys, that pursued hym at aHe houres, in aHe places,  
 for to distroye hym, in makynge vyndicacion of the  
 20 deth of his sayd moder / And forto distourne & haue  
 himse[l]f a-side from there waie / was conseiHed by  
 piladis for to goo or transporte himself in-to delphos, &  
 to flee anone hastily aH streighte vnto y<sup>e</sup> temple of  
 24 appoHo / the wiche horrestes, trowinge by this subtyl  
 meane to be escaped / whan he was come byfore y<sup>e</sup> gate  
 of the sayd temple, or there aboute / he fonde the  
 forsayd goddesses infernaH, that sette there ouer thentre  
 28 of the sayd temple, as a-waytyng there after his  
 comyng, whiche was to hym more greuouse a thyng  
 than it was a-fore / wher-by he lost thenne the hope of  
 his entent / The sayd elysse, vaynquysshed & ouercome  
 32 of the grete anguysshes, sorowes & heuynesses, whiche  
 dyde flowe at her herte in grete haboundance, one vpon  
 a nother / as admonestementes & incytacions whiche  
 somone to procure y<sup>e</sup> deth / proposed thenne to

## CAP. XXII.

Red, i.e. purple,  
 letters are still  
 used to signify  
 feasts in our  
 calendars, and to  
 head psalms and  
 chapters.

Dido's sufferings  
 compared to  
 those of Orestes,

[\* leaf F 6]

who for the slay-  
 ing of his mother  
 was horribly  
 tortured by  
 Proserpine,

and attempting  
 to take refuge at  
 Delphi, was an-  
 ticipated by the  
 goddess, and so  
 lost all hope.

<sup>1</sup> orig. princypal

## CAP. XXIII.

So Dido loses  
all hope.

She sends for  
her sister.

habandoune herself, & vtterly determyned for to deye /  
& dyd delibere in herself of the manere more honest /  
& of the tyme couenable to *that* same, how & in what  
manere she myghte do hit / & shortly expose herself to 4  
deth / & she beyng in this tryst thoughte, after her con-  
clusion taken, & her fayt arrested / sent to her swete  
suster anne for to come toward her / & couered her  
tryst thought wyth a manere of gladnes ynough, not 8  
wiHyng to manyfest, ne bi no wise to declare vnto her,  
the caas nor the conelucion *that* she had taken of her  
deth / but assone as she was com, went & said to her in

[\* leaf F6, back] this ma\*nere :—

12

¶ Of the wordes of dydo to hir suster  
anne.<sup>1</sup> Cap / xxiiij

Tells her she  
wishes to find  
some way out of  
her sorrows,

MY right dere suster & parfite frende: wil ye  
reioysshe my corage to the recomfort of my 16  
sorowes and bitternes? Veryly I haue enqyred yf it  
were not possible for to fynde som waye to pease &  
make swete the grete euyhes wherof I am esprysed,  
& to departe myself without heuynes from the grete 20  
loue that I haue to eneas, or to make hym to remeue  
& retourne towârd me without tarynge. & so moche  
I haue doon by my dilygent inquisicion / that I haue  
founde a thinge ryght merueyHouse / It is trouthe, my 24  
swete suster, that about the lymytes of the grete see  
that men caHe oceane, in the marches or the sonne  
goynge-vnder, right nyghe to *that* place where he lyeth  
at the endes, vpon his last part of thierth there habitable / 28  
where connerse thethyopes, is a certeyn contre of  
habitacion merueyHouse, where as men sayen the grete  
athlas, *that* susteyneth vpon his sholders thaxtre of y<sup>e</sup>  
moeuyng of theuen with his sternis brennynge, that 32  
maketh hym to moeue & tourne to what syde that  
he wil / maketh hys princypaH dueHyng. In this

and tells her of  
Mount Atlas,  
where is the axis  
of the heavens.

place, the~~ne~~, wherof I te~~ll~~e you, as I haue be aduer-  
 tised, is a right holy woman, whiche is a prestresse &  
 wardeyne of the faire temples of the Ope~~ry~~des, whiche  
 4 are the doughters of athlas / she is theire maistres, theire  
 tutryce and techer, that lerneth and enterteyned hem /  
 & incyteth & techeth them for to doo sacrifice to y<sup>e</sup>  
 goddesse / & for her grete witte & knowynge, & also  
 8 for her grete science, that be knitte togider with *that*  
 experience *that* she hath within her of aH thinges / was  
 taken vnto her y<sup>e</sup> cure and gouernement of *that* tendynge  
 & of the norryture of y<sup>e</sup> fiers dragon that had that  
 12 tyme the kepyng of the holy braunches of the tree  
 with golden frute, that bare apples aH of golde / &  
 prepared to hym his mete, aHe after his complexion,  
 somtyme wete thinges humyde, whan he was wexed  
 16 lene, for to haue hym soone vp ayen / Another tyme,  
 powdres and \*graynes of poppy & other seedes, for to  
 make hym soone a-slepe, whan he was ouermoche  
 traueyllled / and admynystred to hym his metes after  
 20 that he was dysposed / This lady knoweth many  
 thynges / and emonge other, wyH vndertake, and pro-  
 mytteth, by her sortes and charmes, to deliuer pure and  
 playne the affections and courages that ben bounden  
 24 and enterlaced in loue one towarde an other, to them  
 that she is playсед, and hath theym attones, wythoute  
 prolongacion ne taryeng from y<sup>e</sup> grete loue merueyll-  
 ouse; and to the contrarye, putteth loue sodaynly in-to  
 28 theym that happely thinketh not vpon. But yet this  
 is a lityl thyng to the regarde of the other grete arty-  
 fices and werkes that she can doo, as to tarye &  
 areste sodaynli the flodes & grete ryuers, that they  
 32 goo no ferther doune; And make their bygge strems  
 rennyng, to remounte vpwarde; the sterres also, and aH  
 the fymamente she maketh to retorne abacke / the  
 soules pryuated & lowe, that be descended in-to helle,  
 36 constrayneth theym often by nyghte tyme to speke

## CAP. XXIII.

There is a won-  
 derful woman,  
 priestess of the  
 Ope~~ry~~des  
 (Hesperides),

and nurse of the  
 dragon that  
 guards the tree  
 with the golden  
 apples,

[\* leaf F 7]

who can work  
 wonders in  
 affairs of love,

and do still  
 greater miracles

in things  
 material and  
 infernal.



## CAP. XXIII.

Dido continues  
to recount the  
witch's powers,

but swears she  
will not avail  
herself of the aid  
of magic.

wyth her / she maketh therthe to calle & crye, whan  
she tredeth vpon, and somtyme tourmenteth it in so  
dyuerse manere that she aH to-shaketh it, & pulleth  
oute the grete trees, & maketh them to falle doune 4  
from the mountaynes, by her grete wyndes & terryble  
orages & tempestes *that* she draweth & sendeth in to  
dyuerse contreys. But I swere to y<sup>e</sup>, my dere suster  
germayn, by aHe thy goddes & thy hede debonayr / 8  
that in aH thartes & seyences magicque, wherof this  
lady & prestresse entromytreteth herse[l]f / I wolde neuer  
sett my selfe therto, nor enquire no thing therof / and  
this that I haue enterprysed for to doo / it is by grete 12  
prayer & constraynt, & in my body defendyng / alwayes  
sith *that* I haue enterprised fermly my wyttes therunto /  
it byhoueth me *thenne* to doo *that* aH that therto appar-  
teyneth for to brynge better oure werke to an ende / 16

[\* leaf F7, back]

\*And bi cause that it is of costume & necessarie to  
haue euer fyre without ceasse, I requyre the, my swete  
suster, & praye, that in som place of my palaice moost  
secret, that men be not aware of it, thou doo a grete 20  
fyre to be made / And the armures of y<sup>e</sup> man without  
pite, y<sup>e</sup> false enneas, for whome I calle 'alas *that* euer he  
was borne' / whiche he hathe lefte hanginge in my  
chambre, with aHe his habilimentes & other thinges, his 24  
of owne, lefte behinde in my priue closet, where I was  
perissshed & lay many a night, he & I togider, must  
aHe be cast in to that grete fyer, for to brenne & con-  
uerte theym in to asshes / as doeth teHe & commaund- 28  
eth, that woman of grete science / that men must doo  
perishe & oblishe, distroye & take aHe out of memorie,  
aHe *that* is abiden behinde of that traytour & crueH  
approued.

Dido begs Anna  
to make a great  
fire in some  
secret part of her  
palace and burn  
the armour, etc.  
left by Aeneas.

32

¶ How dydo in grete bewayHynges, praied  
her suster to make a grete fyre in a place  
moost secrete of her palayce, for to brenne



the harneys & raymentes of Eneas / & CAP. XXIV.  
 how, by dyuers sortes, she wende to haue  
 dystroyed him. Capitulo xxiiij.

4 **A**FTER y<sup>e</sup> whiche thinges, dydo kept herself stiſh,  
 without eny wordes more to speke, aH pale &  
 discoloured as a body *that* is taken out of y<sup>e</sup> erthe, or fro  
 som grete & sodaine peril, wherof anne her suster was  
 8 moche abashed / alwayes she doubted her self in noo  
 wyse, *that* her suster wolde entende to doo a newe sacry-  
 fice, *that* afore *that* tyme had neuer be doon / *that* is,  
 to sacryfye hir self with fueraillhes mortalle, by fyre  
 12 horrible; & knewe not *that* she was accensed nor esprised  
 in her corage of so grete a furour, nor *that* her sorowe  
 had be wers / than was that, that she suffred atte  
 the dethe of her late husbonde Sycheus. And went  
 16 and determyned her self for to fulfiſhe the commaunde-  
 ment of her sayd suster Elysse, and to doo aH by  
 ordre that that she had charged her for to doo / The  
 whiche thinges thus doon of the queene dydo / wiH-  
 20 yng to procede to \*her sayd sacryfice, went to see the  
 place where the grete fyre shulde be kendled, whiche  
 she founde aH redy made, garnished with a grete  
 quantyte of logges, and vnder hem and rounde aboute,  
 24 grete foison of drie fagottes & other smaH wood for to  
 kendle the fyre lyghtly / & toke herself for to encence  
 it, and to suffounge the place / And crowned it with  
 garlandes made of herbes and braunches, that men haue  
 28 of costume<sup>1</sup> to putte vpon the corces of the dede bodies,  
 vpon theyre graues and tombes, and also ouer the  
 ymage and fygure of eneas, that she had doo make  
 after the semblaunce<sup>2</sup> of hym, for to be brente ther  
 32 with her. And toke the swerde that he had left with  
 her, that she hidded in the same place, for to accom-  
 plysshe y<sup>e</sup> werke that she thought for to doo / Aftre,

Anna, unsus-  
 pecting, makes a  
 fire as ordered by  
 Dido.

[\* leaf F 8]

Dido goes to the  
 fire;

and crowns the  
 pile and an image  
 of Aeneas with  
 garlands.

<sup>1</sup> custom

<sup>2</sup> orig. semblaunce

CAP. XXIV. she wolde goo with the sayde prestresse to her sacry-  
 fice of magique that she had ordeined to be doo / and  
 were the temples and awtiers weHe prepared and  
 garnyished, of oblacions and other thinges necessarye 4  
 and conuenable to this present obsequye. And thenne  
 came out the olde witch of charmouse magique, in  
 her raymentes made in dyuerse maneres, aHe her hed  
 shauen, for to fuldoo her sacrifyces / Atte the begyn- 8  
 nyng of whiche, she inuoked and called thre tymes  
 by hidous wordes, thre hundred goddes infernaH / and  
 the grete habitacyon of heH sem-pyternaHe wyth their  
 confusion / the moder of magique, in her triple pro- 12  
 poreyon, and the thre faces of the mone that shyneth  
 by the quarfours, somtyme wyth two grete hornes, &  
 somtyme as it were cutte by the myddes / A nother  
 tyme she appyereth aHe rounde, wherof many one ben 16  
 merueyled / By cause that they ygnore the causes /  
 the whiche, yf they knewe theym, they sholde not  
 happely merueylle. Also from wythin it is obscured  
 moche more in some places than in some other. So 20  
 that men myght saye that it encloseth, \* that it is the  
 tryple fygure of the vierge dyane, wherof maketh her  
 Inuocacion this lady olde magicienne / And thus  
 dooyng, she dide asperse the place with the waters 24  
 obscure, venemouse and blak, representyng the lycoure  
 of the hydous fontaynes of heHe / After, she maketh to  
 be brought to her certayne herbes, freshe and newe  
 mowen & taken by nyght whan the mone shyneth, 28  
 with sercles of coper, wherof the Iuse is passyng venym-  
 ouse, and of coloure aHe blake. And with this she tak-  
 eth the lyteH skynne that remayneth of the secondyne  
 within the forhed of the lyteH foole, that must be 32  
 scraped awaye from hys forhed whan he is newly  
 borne, afore that the moder lycketh it of / whereof,  
 after that doon, he shaHe not be knowen of his sayde  
 moder / as it is sayde, so that she refuseth to gyue 36

The Witch.

Her invocation  
of the infernal  
gods,

of the moon,

[\* leaf F 8, back]

in which is the  
triple figure of  
Diana,the sprinkling of  
dark water.The Witch uses  
herbs cut by  
night, and  
hijpomanes.

hym souke / as it were not her owne / And also it is  
 named and called the skynne 'mortaHe loue,' bi cause  
 that after the saide prestresse, the foole shal neuer  
 4 haue luste to souke hys moder, but yf she liketh or  
 eteth the secondying, or atte leste that same skinne  
 that he hathe in his forhede; and men shulde saie that  
 by the same cause shulde procede the moderly loue /  
 8 yf it were not that inclynacion natureHe purposed  
 ageynst the same / But aHe that is sayde aboue, made  
 the forsayde magycyenne, Dydo beynge ther present,  
 that helde in her handes a grete stone aHe rounde, with  
 12 one fote bare, and the other hosse on / AHe vngyrd,  
 and vpon her knees, as a vassaH that doeth homage to  
 his lorde, of a parfytte corage, as she that is redy to  
 Immoile herself vnto aH the goddes, in syght of aHe the  
 16 sterres, that ben coulpable of her faHe by their con-  
 iunctions, and moenyng, and influences celestyaHe, that  
 sygnyfy and denounce the dysposycion secret of the  
 deuine prouydence / saynge, that yf ther be eny mercy-  
 20 fuH god and pyteous, that medleth hym to receyue and  
 beholde \*the consideracyon of louers, that maketh them  
 to enterteyne weH togider wythoute varyaunce / that  
 it wyH playse hym, for his pyte, to corrige and punysse  
 24 thoffence that Eneas hath commytted ayenst her, and  
 wyHe retrybue hym iustely, aHe after his demeryte.  
 After aHe the whiche sacryfices / oblacyons, prayers &  
 requestes, thus made in grete deuocyon and affectyon  
 28 synguler, as aboue is sayd / and that the tyme after  
 the daye is paste and goon, whiche is couenable in aH  
 landes for the bodyes humayn that haue traueylled, to  
 take reste, that thenne is to theym playsaunt and  
 32 agreable, was come to his ordre / that tyme that the  
 grete woodes & forestes / the see also / and aH thynges  
 that ben crueH & nuysyble, take in hem selfe reste and  
 slepe / And whiles that the sterres ben in theyr courses  
 36 weH yocked, whan aHe the feldes ben in silence, the

## CAP. XXIV.

Description of  
 hippomanes or  
 the skin 'mortal  
 love.'

Dido, ungirt, on  
 her knees, with  
 one foot bare and  
 a round stone in  
 her hands,

[\* sign. G j]

prays for retribu-  
 tion on Aeneas.

After which in-  
 vocations and  
 prayers,  
 night comes and  
 other things rest.

CAP. XXV. byrdes / and bestes brute ; and whan the grete poundes  
 and ryuers, aHe thynges aquatyque / the bussches and  
 the large playnes / & aHe that the erthe conteyneth,  
 are in grete ceasse, and in reste vnder the grete maunteH 4  
 of y<sup>e</sup> nyghte, that gyueth triews to aHe labours / and  
 by slepyng maketh swete aHe peynes and traueylles  
 that men hath suffred afore / AHe this neuerthelesse /  
 she, fenycce, elysshe, or dydo, that thenne abydeH 8  
 late and alone wythoute companye, can not by no wyse  
 induce herself to gyue a reste vnto her eyen by a  
 lityH slepe, wherby she myghte aswage the presente  
 anguysshes that she bereth atte her herte / but 12  
 redoubten her sorowes, and<sup>1</sup> her trystesses enforce more  
 vpon her / the fore loue reneweth hym selfe, that  
 torneth soone to madnes, whan it can not be recouered :

But Dido  
 cannot sleep.

¶ How dydo made her lamentacyons re- 16  
 preuyng the periuremente of Laomedon.

Capitulum xxv

[\*sign. G j, back] \* **T**HIS lady, by grete distresse tourmenteth & al to-  
 renteth her self. afre, she thinketh in her courage 20  
 what she may do / “ alas ! ” sayth she, “ poure & wery,  
 where shalt thou mowe become / must I nowe thenne /  
 sith that I am aHe ashamed / that I habandoune my selfe,  
 and retourne towarde theym that firste haue requyred 24  
 me, and that I requyre humbly the companye of the  
 myroundes, & of theym that so ofte I haue caste in-to  
 dyssdayne, & refused to haue me in maryage / Certes  
 I ought not to doo the same / and better it were to 28  
 me for to folowe the nauye of the troyens, and to  
 submytte myself alle togydre to their mercy / They  
 haply shaHe haue recordaunce of the grete aydes and  
 benefaytes that ben comen vnto theym by me / For 32  
 often commeth in mynde, to theym of good recordaunce,

Dido's doubts ;

shall she seek the  
 friendship of the  
 Myrondes,

or follow the  
 Trojan fleet ?

<sup>1</sup> orig. and

the benefayttes that somtyme were doon vnto theym. CAP. XXV.

And supposed that ene-as wold not haue me, nor take me in to his shippe, ther shaH be some of the oost,  
 4 after that he shaH haue refused me, that shal be

Some Trojans  
 recollecting her  
 benefits, would  
 surely take her  
 on board.

content to take me / but sorowfuH, caytyue & lost.  
 who bringeth *thee* in-to this folye / to thinke *that* this  
 might be / art *thou* madde, or out of thi mynde? / hast

8 thou lost thi knowlege? knowest thou not *that* the  
 troienne folke is aH yssued & descended of the for-  
 sworne laomedon / this laomedon was the first fader that  
 dyde enlabyte the grete troie, and brought there a grete

But the Trojans  
 are descended  
 from Laomedon.

12 nombre of peple that made right faire edifices, & also  
 multiplyed within a liteH tyme in grete quantite, & weH  
 grete in nombre, for y<sup>e</sup> good polycie *that* they kept, &  
 also for y<sup>e</sup> fertylyte of y<sup>e</sup> grounde of *that* countreye /

16 And by cause that laomedon was aH ynoughe occupied  
 for to make y<sup>e</sup> palayces & other edyfices intrinsique  
 of y<sup>e</sup> cyte, & *that* hym thought ouer moche diffyeile &  
 to longe a thinge / to make the walles closed rounde

Her recollections  
 of the treachery  
 of Laomedon,

20 aboute y<sup>e</sup> towne, he made a composicion with phebus  
 & neptunus, *that* ben \*goddis grete and myghity / by the  
 whiche he promysed theym, and conuenaunted by his  
 othe, to gyue theym a tonne fuH of golde, yf they were

[\* sign. G ij]

24 playseed to make the walles rounde aboute the cyte  
 of troye / The whiche goddes, hauynge confydence in  
 trustynge his sayd promysse, dyde close hit wyth ryght  
 fayre hie and grete walles. And thus doon, they

who cheated the  
 Gods in the  
 matter of build-  
 ing the walls of  
 Troy.

28 somoned hym for to paye them, that / whiche he had  
 promysed theym / wherof he wolde neuer doo ne paye  
 ony thyng / And for this cause they submytted hym  
 to suffre, bere, & susteyne perpetueHly for euer more,

His curse.

32 the detestable hate and reproche of a man forsworne.

## CAP. XXVI.

¶ Of the vysion that Eneas hadde for to departe towarde ytalye. Capitulum xxvi.

**T**His lady whan she dyde remembre the forsweryng of laomedon, of whom the troians are descended, 4 made grete doubte to folowe theym / and stryuyng wythin her tryst thoughte to herself / sayd in this manere / "Alas, myserable sorowfuH! what may I doo now / oughte I to leue aH the fenyces, & theym that 8 I haue wythdrawen from thyr, for to goo wyth the troians; or that, by puyssaunce & bi my hande strongly armed / I shold goo to destroye their nauye, & brynge theym to perdyceyon? wythout fawte, I wote not what 12 to saye; and me semeth to harde a thyng for to habandoune my good subgettes, whiche by weH subtyl meanes & grete difficulte I haue brought out of thyr, & out of the lande of fenyce, to expose & bryng 16 theym now sone in daungers of the see, & to the harde peryH of batayH / namly ayenste theym of Troye / whom they haue no quareHe / Verely, whan I me aduyse<sup>1</sup> / it is better that I deye, as I haue weHe 20 deserued, And that my sorowe poure & myserable / be sone fynysshed by swerde. O, what hast *thou* doon, my swete suster germayne, of my teeres & emense wepynges / *thou* hast ben the first cause of the \*grete 24 furoure where I am now in / *thou* hast charged vpon my sholdres aH the grete euylles *that* I bere & supporte; *thou* haste absorbed me, & reclosed, in the grete see of amarytude / *thou* haste founde me weH pesible, but *thou* 28 hast betaken me for to werre ayenst myn owne peas; *thou* hast broughte me from solysitude, & remysed into resolysitude; *thou* hast taken rest fro me, & hast brought me in-to ryghT grete turbacion / *thou* hast abolysshed 32 my fraunchise, for to entre in-to grete seruytude; *thou*

Dido doubts whether to follow the Trojans or destroy them.

Finds it hard to bring her subjects into trouble with the Trojans.

Thinks she had better die.

[\* sign. G ij, bk]

Blames her sister.

<sup>1</sup> orig. aduy / seit



hast dyuerted my honour in-to dishonest infamye / *thou*  
 hast conuerted my cyte in feere & drede perdurable ;  
 thou hast aH peruerted my wyttes, & reduced in-to  
 4 madnesse & forsenerie / *thou* haste deliuerde me my  
 traytour & peruerse enmye, vnder hope of loue &  
 benyuolence. what eyleth me, tryst, poure / veri, & fuH  
 of teerys. O fortune euyH fortun'd / why haste *thou* not  
 8 permytted me & suffred, that wythout forfayte or ony  
 cryme / I myght haue vsed the residue of my dolaunt  
 lyf chastly, alone, wythoute companye of man, as the  
 bestes in the forestes doo lye, as it apiereth fuH often,  
 12 aH alone by theym selfe. Yf thus I had mayntened  
 myselfe / I sholde neuer haue come ne faHe in y<sup>e</sup>  
 sorowes & displaysures / *complayntes* & clamours, where  
 I am now in, aH doled, & of grete furour forsened /  
 16 more than euer was woman of moder borne / vnto this  
 tyme presente ; but I beleue veritable *that* it is for to  
 take vengeance of the feyth & of the grete othe *that*  
 I had first promysed to my husbonde sieheus / whiche  
 20 I haue violated falsly, & broken wylyfuHy / wherof I  
 am faHe in grete tormente, replenysshed with langour  
 mortaH / Alas ! what harde destynacye happed to me  
 that daye / that I was so ferre doled from my wytte,  
 24 & so madde, to habandoune my selfe to a man alone /  
 For whom I haue loste aH in a *somme* / at one daye  
 & at one owre / in somoche *that* I abyde aH alone  
 wythout companye, habandouned fro all comfort" / thus  
 28 made this fenyce her rewthes & her sighynges \* in suche  
 a sorowe & so dolant termes *that* she fowndred aH in  
 teeris / duringe the whiche, afre *that* aHe y<sup>e</sup> nauye of  
 eneas was takled, & weH nyghe redy for to departe, ther  
 32 appiered to eneas, *that* nyght *that* he entred his shippe  
 & was leyde a slepe, a certayne god, in *that* propre fygure  
*that* mercure appiered to hym first, for to admonneste  
 him of his departynge, in suche manere of semblaunce  
 36 of voyce / of coloure / of heeris of golde, as weH pro-

CAP. XXVI.

Dido's pitiful  
 lament over her  
 fall,

which is a judg-  
 ment on her for  
 deserting the  
 memory of  
 Sycheus.

[\* sign. G iij]

Mercury appears  
 to Aeneas in  
 his sleep the  
 night he goes  
 on board his  
 ship.



## CAP. XXVI.

Mercury rouses  
Aeneas.

Warns him  
against Dido's  
vengeance.

Urges him to  
depart swiftly,

[\* leaf G ij back]

and vanishes.

porcyned of membres & fayre facion / of yongthe & of  
fayre beaulte, *that* sayde to him in this manere / “O  
eneas, y<sup>e</sup> sone of a goddesse / how art thou so moche for-  
sened to take rest of slepe in this grete daunger wher 4  
thou art now ynne? knowest *thou* not y<sup>e</sup> fortunes &  
perillous aduentures *that* enuyronne y<sup>e</sup> on aH sydes?  
seest not thou y<sup>e</sup> tyme couenable for to sayHe, and the  
swete wyndes propice / why consumest thy self slepyng, 8  
without exploityng y<sup>e</sup> in thy vyage, thou knowest not /  
what the fayre dydo prepareth for the / whiche is  
toured in turbacyon, thynkyng in herself what frawde  
or decepcyon, or som grete myschef, for to doo to the 12  
a greuauunce / why feerest *thou* not lest she doo y<sup>e</sup> to de-  
struction, sith *that* she wyl brynge herself to the *de*the?  
thynke the<sup>n</sup>ne what euy<sup>e</sup>ses, what harde aduentures,  
what displaisirs & what grete decepcions & iniuries, 16  
she ymagyneth ayenst the / but more ther is: yf thou  
departe not with aH diligence, thou shalt soone see the  
see aHe couered with<sup>1</sup> vesselles of werre, with grete  
strengthe, commynge ayenst the, with torches lyght, 20  
And cressettes esprysed of fyre brenny[n]g, for to brule  
and brenne thy, nauye / And wythout respyte ne  
remedye *thou* shalbe dystroyed, yf thou be founde whan  
the [s]prynge of the day shalbe comen / Aryse vp quykly 24  
without taryenge, and abyde here noo lenger / For  
a woman is founde euermore subtyHe in aHe her dedes /  
As sayth the fable / A grete daunger is thenne to the,  
for whom she is thus / \*endulled, and fallen in 28  
dysperacyon, to abyde in hyr iurisdyccyon nor to  
reside in her contree / And to thende that thou be  
not myscheued, yf *thou* loue me, thou shalt departe  
forwyth.” aHe the whiche thynges thus sayd, the god 32  
of whom I haue spoken here, presently remysed hym  
selfe in to a derke cloude, & vanysshed awaye sodaynly.

<sup>1</sup> orig. wth

## CAP. XXVII.

¶ How Eneas encyted the patrons & maysters of his shippes for to depart.

## Capitulum xxvijº

- 4 **A**Nd thenne enneas, aH affrayed of his grete vysion, Aeneas awakes in alarm,  
 awaked sodaynly from his slepe / and thenne he  
 called to hym aH the patrons & aH the maystres of rouses his men,  
 the shipes, & incytyng the maryners for to departe in  
 8 aH dyligence, he made some to hale vp the saylles, &  
 thother for to drawe thaneres / & made theym to take  
 their oores in hande, recountynge & shewyng vnto  
 them aH theffecte of his vysion / & how & by what  
 12 rayson the grete god of heuen commaunded hym, by  
 his messenger, that he must departe ryght soone / And  
 for to hast them yet more / he admonested them of  
 newe for to sprede & dyspoye the sayles & cordes *that* orders them to make ready for immediate departure,  
 16 were wythin the shyppes, & to make soone redy aH  
 thappareylle, & aHe that neded theenre for to departe  
 incontynent / alwayes recommendyng hymselfe & aH  
 his / to this grete god of maieste that had thus incyted  
 20 & somoned hym / and to hym sayd in this manere :  
 “ We folowe the, right holy god debonayr / whosomeuer  
*thou* be, in grete deuocion, redy for to obey thy com-  
 maundementes, ioyful & glade wythout extymacion ;  
 24 and to the we praye deuoutely, that *thou* be of vs con-  
 duyttor, & benygnylly helpyng to the prosperous dys-  
 posicion of yº cours celestiaH & regyon steHyferaunt /  
 yf her moeuyng were irryted ayenste vs by pestyferre prays to Iove,  
 28 influences, & bryng vs sauffe & peassyble to the portes  
 of ytalye ! ” And anone drewe out his swerde clere &  
 bright, & cutte asondre the \*cables that with-helde the [\* sign. G iiij]  
 32 shippe within the hauen, & also made the mariners  
 to rowe myghtyli for to be hastely thens ; the whiche  
 with aHe dyligence forced hem to putte or sette their  
 orys to the see, that soone was couered with the nauye  
 cuts the anchor ropes with his sword, and puts to sea.

## CAP. XXVII.

The sea, angry at  
being oppressed  
by Aeneas's fleet,

becomes im-  
patient and  
stormy.

Aeneas is driven  
to Sicily,

where reigns  
Aeetes, of  
Trojan lineage.

[\* sign. G iij  
back]

that sayHed, partyng the waters asonder, whiche seemed  
brayenge right Impetuously by the tourment & flagita-  
cyon wherof the see was bette in righte grete violence,  
by the oppressions of the shippes, that oppressid her in 4  
their saiHyng, so *that* thei carfe waie in the water / &  
yet the oorys that entred within her entraiHes, smotte  
asonder her auncient waves, whiche she myght not  
suffre nor pacyently bere / but reputed it to be doon 8  
in opprobre and confusion, inhomynouse & fuH of  
despyte / wherof it happed soone after, that the see  
wexed right sore inpaeyent & indigned ; wherfor they  
suffred moche whan the see was weH chaffed, and by 12  
their fayte ayenste them sore moeued, as it is more  
playnly spoken in the .v / boke of eneydos, where as the  
harde & sorowfuH admyracions that thenne made palm-  
yerus, *that* was maistre of eneas shippe, ben declared, 16  
whan he myght not withstande ne contreste the tour-  
ment, fortune & tribulacion of the see, but that she was  
maister ouer him & gouerneresse, and was constraigned  
to habaundoune aHe his nauye to the fortune, that 20  
cast hem in to the ysle of cicyle, wherof was kyng atte  
that tyme, aecestes, comen of the lynage troianne ; and  
ther was be-grauen anchyses, the fader of eneas, that  
deyde in makynge the vyage from troye in-to lybye / 24  
And aHe thus they left the hauene of cartage, takynge  
their way towarde ytalye / But or euer they coude  
make aHe these dilygences for to departe, And that  
they were as yet nygh the hauen in syght of the cyte / 28  
And that the fayre lady Aurora, that holdeth the  
sprynge of the daye enclosed wythyn her chambre wyth  
her swete spouse Tytan, Was rysen out of her couche /  
\* weH arayed, and had opened to hym the gate for to 32  
go sprede abrode his newe lyght to iHustre & iHumyne  
the landes, & delyuer theym from the derknes of the  
nyghte / The quene dydo, that was not a slepe, seeng  
the first openyng of the daye, sore besi to chässe the 36

- tenebres calompnious away / arose vp lyghtly for to see out of her chambre wyndowes, & loked towarde the hauen, whiche she perceyued aH voyde & smothe,
- 4 wythoute any shippe there / And after castyng her sight ferder towarde the see / she sawe the saylles, wyth the flote of the shippes that made good waye. thenne byganne she, for grete distresse, to bete & smyte thre or
- 8 four tymes wyth her fyste strongly ayenst her brest / & to pulle her fayr heres from her hed, as mad & beside herself / And spekyng to himself / sayd in this manere y<sup>e</sup> worles that folowe / “ O iupiter, souerayn god, and
- 12 pryncipaH of aH other, shaH thus departe saufly the false & euyl man enecas, that tratoursly hath mocked me, & fraudulently seducted / Is it not to me weH licyte to send after hym, & by force of armes to
- 16 dystroye hym, and bryng alle to deth / And that alle they of my towne & cyte, goo to confounde and destroye hym alle attones / and breke and brynge his nauye aH to noughte / Goo, goo hastely, and destroye
- 20 alle incontynent / sette aH on a fire ! kylle & slee, and brynge theym aH to perdyccion / haue awaye these oores & saylles ! breune, & brynge aH in-to ashes / take hede that nothing escape ! haue no mercy ne pyte of ony
- 24 man that lyueth / foundre & droune altogider in-to the botome of the see, & perysshe aH in a somme, to thende, *that* of theym be no memorye nor nomore spoken emong y<sup>e</sup> lyuyng peple vpon erthe / Alas, poure dydo,
- 28 what sayst *thou* ? in an euyl houre *thou* were borne / what thynkest *thou* doo / I trowe *that thou* art ferre out of thi good wytte, or eHis taken wyth right ewiH peruerse fantasyes, or that the goddes *that* ben wythout\*te
- 32 pyte & myserycorde, wyH peruerte & retourne thi grete clemence in-to furiose cruelte / Alas, it is not possible at this houre that *thou* sholdest now ouertake them / but this thou sholdest haue doon that tyme that
- 36 *thou* receyued theym, whan they cam first, & arryued

Dido, arising early, sees Aeneas's fleet in the distance.

Her frantic grief.

She invokes Jupiter,

and prays for vengeance on the Trojans.

[\* leaf G 5]

CAP. XXVII.

Men may say  
Dido is cause of  
Aeneas's going,  
as she had not  
endeavoured to  
detain him.

[*orig. & and*]

Might she not  
have destroyed  
him and his son  
while they were  
with her, and  
served up Asca-  
nius as food to  
his father?

Might she not  
have burned his  
ships and slain  
all of them, and  
then burned  
herself?

[\* leaf G 5, back]

She invokes the  
Sun,

and Juno,

in-to thy londe afore that ony alyauunces hadde ben, by  
the, made wyth theym / Men sholde mow saye of the  
now / that thou were cause of his goynge / and that he  
bereth away wyth hym the pryue goddes that ben of thy  
royame, for to assyste to the obsequyes & consecracyon  
of anchyses, his olde fader / and that he is departed wyth  
thyne assuraunce / by cause that in no wyse thou hast  
not letted nor gaynsayd his goyng openly / whan he  
dyde make his appareyl, for to make redy aH his  
nauye / whiche thyng thou knew, and<sup>1</sup> was doon in thy  
presence / Myghteste not thou, whan he was wythin  
thy royaume & wyth the, haue dystroyed his persone, 12  
and his body to haue ben hawen in pyeces / and also  
his felawes to haue ben caste in-to the depe see / And  
in lyke wyse, his sone Ascanyus myghtest thou haue  
made to be alle tohewen and chopped smaHe, And to 16  
be soden and dressed, as it had be good mete, for to  
haue made hym to be eten of hys fader / And to haue  
sette hym in stede of other seruyse atte hys table /  
And yf he wolde haue be wrothe ther-wyth, and 20  
moeued werre ayenste me, Howe weHe that the for-  
tune of ba[ta]yHe is doubthouse. Yet netheles I myghte  
haue doo brenned his shippes / and conuerte hem aH  
to ashes, to thende they myght not haue gone for to 24  
purchase ony socours / And durynge the same, I myghte  
haue doon brynge to the dethe, the fader asweH as the  
sone, wyth aH their parentes and frendes of aH their  
lynage, and myghte haue slayne, brent hem, or otherwyse 28  
haue doon wyth theym after my playsur & wyH; and  
therne wythin y<sup>e</sup> fire I myghte \* haue cast my self, for  
to be ded after *that* I had be auenged of his falsenes  
& oultrade / O fayre sonne, *that* shyneste full bright, *that* 32  
iHumynest with thy beemes aH y<sup>e</sup> werkes & operacions  
of y<sup>e</sup> erthe / O Iuno, the noble goddesse, vnder whome  
aHe werkes & operacyons humayne, with their solici-  
tudes, are gouerned and submysed after theirre disposicion, 36

euerych in certeyne or-ly[n]aunce to theym sette &  
 stablyshed by thy deuyne prouydence; highe,puissaunte,  
 grete patronesse, lady & mastresse of aHe artes & scyences  
 4 magyques, ryght often called with voyces vlutatyue, by  
 the grete quarfours, and by wayes within townes &  
 cytees and eHis wher / In tyme of nyght obscure / O  
 cru[e]He vltryces, wycked vengeresses / Furies infernaHe  
 8 & Iusticers of heHe; O aHe goddes & goddesses, haue  
 pyte on me, sorowfuH Elysse, concluded & delibered to  
 the deth, to y<sup>e</sup> whiche I goo delyuere me vuto / Entende  
 to my wordes, and enduce the crueHe goddes to punyshe  
 12 the euyH men as they haue deserved / & playse you to  
 receyue my prayers & oracions inuectyue *that* I doo make  
 presently to you, yf it be so *that* the sacred destynacyes  
 of y<sup>e</sup> souerayne god Iupyer haue ordeyned that that  
 16 traitour enecas, & vntrewe man, shaHe come sauely<sup>1</sup> in-to  
 som hauen for to descende alonde hole & sounde, or *that*  
 the ende of his lif be not yet come to his terme *that* pre-  
 fixed was to him atte y<sup>e</sup> first tyme of his birthe, at lest  
 20 I prai you & requyre, *that* he may be vaynquissed &  
 recountred of hardy peple cruell / strong & rebell, & alle  
 contrary to him, vexed, broken, & traueilled of grete  
 batailles & assawtes / rebuked, reduced, & chassed from  
 24 his lande & lordshipes / alwayes putte ther-from with-  
 out to recouere eny place of his lande, whiche alwayes  
 be so stronge & myghty ayenst hym, that he be expelled  
 euermore ther-from, namely of Ascanyus his sone, and  
 28 prynated,<sup>2</sup> ouercome, and exyled out of alle / his kynnes-  
 men & \* frendes. to hym also be gyuen by necessite to  
 requyre ayde & socours wyth gret requestes & prayers /  
 and yf it happen *that* some other doo hym ony plaisur or  
 32 som good, he haue therfore a myscheffe, sorow, peyn, &  
 perpetuel myserye / In grete assawtes & in bataylles, be  
 he slayne, & put to a cruel deth, ferful & horryble /  
 AHe his folke, wythout mysericorde afore his eyen  
 36 present, be put to anguysshe, & not mow socoure

CAP. XXVII.

Diana,

and the furies,  
and prays them  
to have pity on  
her.

Dido's fearful  
imprecations on  
Aeneas and the  
Trojans.

If Aeneas's time  
have not yet  
come, at any  
rate may he be  
engaged in cruel  
war, defeated,  
exiled,

[\* leaf G 6]

and his friends  
or allies put to a  
cruel death.

<sup>1</sup> *orig.* saueyl. Mr. Huth's copy has 'saucely.'<sup>2</sup> *orig.* prynated



## CAP. XXVII.

May Aeneas  
never have peace  
or quiet,

but live the life  
of a beggar,

and be buried  
like a dog, and  
his soul cast  
into hell,

This is Dido's  
dying prayer.

She bequeaths to  
her Tyrians an  
undying hatred  
of the Trojan  
race.

[\* leaf G 6, back]

theym, for to encrease his tormente / & whan he shaH  
take ony triews or make peas or alyauce / that it be  
aH at his owne prayer in confucion & greuauce to his  
folysshe enterprise, & his dysuauntage<sup>1</sup> / to his gret 4  
vitupere, hurt & charge / in somoche *that* he may faH  
therfor in a rage & grete sorowe / And yf it be so, *that*  
god forbede ! *that* by his tryews or alyauce / som londe  
abydeth wyth hym for to make there his residence, he 8  
neuer be in a suerte to sojurne there pesible / but aH  
atones, & wythout taryeng, he be cast therfrom sham-  
fuHy / & lyue, like mendycant, a poure lyf and nede-  
fuH / whiche maye come to hym sodaynly afore aH 12  
other werke, Sooner than to be sure of ony goode  
fortune ; And that after hys deth wythoute sepulture, as  
an hownde or other dounbe beste, be he caste in-to the  
depe shadowes of hel, ther to suffre tormentes right 16  
horrible & cruel / this is in effecte that whiche I  
requyre. It is my request & prayer / that to you I do  
make wyth an hole herte, at the last poynt of my lif  
whiche I doo offre to you / redy for to deye at this 20  
houre / receyue now ye my soule, wherof I make to  
you<sup>2</sup> a present / O ye tiryns, & aH they of fenyce *that*  
enhabite presently cartage, aH your parentes & frendes  
alyed / & aHe they of your affynite that now ben 24  
present / And that are to be borne hereafter, yf ye euer  
toke playsure to doo to me ony thyng aggreable, I  
requyre and admonest you, at thys tyme byfore aHe  
other, that ye haue and bere enmyte<sup>3</sup> & mortall hate 28  
pardurable, ayenste \*the false troians *that* goo for to con-  
quere & wyne Italie. And yf it happe by ony wyse  
*that* they may haue dominacion, & conquere by their  
puissaunce som lande or region / I exhorte & admoneste 32  
you to make eternaH werre ayenst theym / this re-  
queste & ordenaunce *that* I make vnto you now, it is  
my bequest, it is my testament & my last wiH, my cou-

<sup>1</sup> for dysauantage

<sup>2</sup> orig. you

<sup>3</sup> orig. eumyte



dieyHe, & my wiHyngre inreucable & permanent. And  
 to thende *that* yf by som wyse ye wil not accomplysshe  
 it, or that your children after youre dethe wold putte  
 4 hit in oblyuion / I haue ordeyned & stablished that hit  
 shalbe writon in harde stone, wherof my sepulchre shalbe  
 closed, & right nyghe my bones it shalbe sette vpon my  
 visayge, to thende *that* it shal bere testymonage ayenst  
 8 you, yf in eny wyse ye putte hit out of memorie / *that*  
 god forbode it shulde so come to / but deffyaunce, with-  
 out to haue peas, and without benyuolence, werres /  
 discordes & bataiHes, I wyl that ye haue euermore with  
 12 theym / for of my bones & of myn ashes, after *that* they  
 be rotyng in erthe, shaH yssue atte leste, how longe some  
 euer hit tarye, a vindicator, and a man of ryght grete  
 courage & hardinesse / that shaH auenge this grete  
 16 treison of y<sup>e</sup> false eneeas & of all his folke, whiche shaH  
 brene hem aH in a fyre & in flamme, & shaH slee &  
 distroie them in diuerse manere, som by wepen, y<sup>e</sup> other  
 by hongre / som shaH be drowne in y<sup>e</sup> see, some he  
 20 shaH make to be byhedde, & their membres to be  
 broken & aH to-hewen, y<sup>e</sup> other to be hanged / & the  
 other within his prisons shalbe flain from hed to fote ;  
 y<sup>e</sup> other he shal doo cast out of y<sup>e</sup> windowes down to y<sup>e</sup>  
 24 pauement ; & to other he shal make their eien to be  
 pulled out ; & many other enyHes he shall make them to  
 endure. their townes, their castelles, cites, lordshipes  
 & possessions, he shall take / their captayns of werre,  
 28 knyghtes & barons, he shall doo destroye, & banysshe  
 out of their landes, & shall tourne them in to grete  
 mendycyte. Theyre \* wyues, that thenne shaH be come  
 to the astate of wydowhed, their daughters, & also their  
 32 children / their grete treysours, & aH that they be  
 worthe, shaH be rauysshed, habandouned / taken, &  
 departed in-to an hondreth thousand shippes / chassed,  
 caryed & transported & exyled from their contrey /  
 36 and putte oute of their nacyon / the one slayne, the

CAP. XXVII.

This is Dido's  
 dying and irre-  
 vocable bequest  
 to her people.

She prophesies  
 an avenger,

and terrible suf-  
 ferings at his  
 hands in future  
 years to the  
 descendants of  
 Aeneas.

[\* leaf G 7]

## CAP. XXVII.

This avenger,  
who is to redeem  
Dido's fair fame,  
is Hannibal.

Dido requests  
her people  
always to war  
with the Trojans.

She finishes her  
harangue, and  
thinks of prepar-  
ing to end her  
life.

[\* leaf G 7, back]

She sends Barea  
to keep her sister  
out of the way,

other in pr[i]son, in right grete seruage & captyuyte /  
they shalbe solde as wylde bestes / iniuried, defoyled,  
& beten / Theyr fayr doughters & their vyrgynes shaH be  
habandouned to men by force, & deflowred / and to a 4  
ryght grete shame deliuered, & vyolated ayenst their  
wyHe. A hondred thousande euylles shaH be ap-  
pareylled for theym, more than men can recounte ne  
teHe / Thenne shaH my shame be socoured, & the 8  
maculates taken from me, by HanybaH, that shaH be  
borne of myn ashes / whiche shal be a man of grete  
power & of grete renomee / preu, hardy, & cheualrouse  
abone aH men *that* shaH be in his tyme, so that memore 12  
shalbe therof as longe as heuyn & erthe shaH last. but  
in y<sup>e</sup> meane while I make a request to you aH / & after  
to your children, whan they shaH be borne, & to aH their  
lygnage *that* of theym shaH come, vnto thende of the 16  
worlde / that they make werre by armes & by bataylles /  
by see & by londe / by assawtes & shippes, ayenst y.  
traytours troians, aslonge as they shaH lyue / & that y<sup>e</sup>  
see whiche is in oure lond, & the ryuages & portes & 20  
the wawes, be to them repulsyng, contrare & rebel, euer  
more." thise thynges sayd by dydo, enraged from hir  
good wytte / troubled in courage more than euer she  
was, esprised fro aH partes, sekyng meanes moost subtil 24  
to thende of her myserable lyf, whiche she can support  
no lenger, soo veri she was of it / wyHyng to fynde som  
meane to voyde oute of hir castel aH them *that* were  
there / as she had of custume whan she wold do 28  
sacrifyces, & *that* she myght abyde alone \*for to delyuer  
herself soon to deth / and *that* she were not empeshed  
there-from / she dyd caH presently a goode olde woman  
*that* made herself to be called barthe / y<sup>e</sup> whiche long 32  
tyme afore, whan she dweHed in thyr, was noryce, as it  
was sayd, of hir late husbonde Sicheus / and kept her-  
self yet alwayes styH wyth the sayd Elysse / as are  
wonte to doo thise auneyent good ladyes wyth their 36

firste mastresses ;—but she called not her owne noryce  
*that* had kepte her in her childhode, by cause that she  
 was decessed in the regyon of fenye ;—And sayd in this  
 4 maner to the for-sayd barthe, for to be rydded of her :  
 “ My good moder barthe, goo lyghtly towarde my suster  
 anne, & teHe her that she make hast for to rise, & araye  
 herself as it was of custome whan men wolde doo  
 8 sacrifice / and that she brynge wyth her promptly  
 the shepe & other bestes, wyth the other pynacles  
 dedycated to the sacryfice, that long agoo I dyde shewe  
 to her / And also it behoueth of thy parte, for to  
 12 admynystre the werkes, that thou take the vestymentes,  
 & the myter vpon thy hede, for to fulmake thoblacyon  
 to pluto, the grete god of heH, admyraH of the styge /  
 whiche is a grete pounde of fyre brenninge, that renneth  
 16 through all heHe / composed & made of brymston & of  
 pitche: this immolacion I haue purposed to doo vnto hym  
 wyth my besy thought, for to put an ende to my grete  
 tribulacions & care ennuyouse / for the whiche cause  
 20 I wyHe kindle a grete fire, for to brenne the raymentes  
 of eneas, his ymage, *that*<sup>1</sup> are lefte wyth me / wherwyth  
 I shaH do sacrifice to y<sup>e</sup> grete flood infernaH, to thende  
 he be mœued wyth hate ayenst hym / whan by deth  
 24 his trist soule shalbe delyuered to him after thise  
 thynges.” this said, barthe went hir waye hastely, as her  
 olde age myght suffre it ; & lefte there her mastres dido,  
*that* quyuered & shoke of grete rage, & entred into a  
 28 grete fransie, desiryng taccomplysshe *that* purpos of hir  
 deth / wherof y<sup>e</sup> dredfuH remembraunce, redy to be exe-  
 cuted, troubled hir in suche wy\*se, that it made aH hir  
 wyttes to torne in to a wyked kynde, and in a mynde for  
 32 to destroye the first composicion, coagulate in couenable  
 proporcion for the entreteyny[n]ge of the spiryte vitaH ;  
 wherof her fayre eyen, grene<sup>2</sup> and lawghyuge, were in-  
 continent tourned in-to a right hidouse lokyng mobyle,  
 36 & sangwynouse to see / the swete baHe of the eye,

CAP. XXVI.

on pretence of  
 preparing a  
 sacrifice to Pluto,  
 at which Barce  
 must assist.

Dido will burn  
 Aeneas's raiment  
 to move the in-  
 fernal regions to  
 hatred towards  
 him.

Dido's agitation  
 when left by  
 Barce.

[\* leaf G 8]

<sup>1</sup> for his thynges that    <sup>2</sup> orig. greue. See p. 112, l. 25.

CAP. XXVII.    whiche is the veraye receptacle interyor of lyght visible /  
 and Iuge of the colours by reflection obgectyf, whiche  
 she bryngeth vnto the Impression cogytyue of the  
 entendement / wherof she maketh a present to the 4  
 suppost indicatyf, discernynge without interuaHe the  
 differences abstractyue adherynge to theyr subgete,  
 was sone made obscure, & her lyght empesched from  
 the veraye Iugyng in parfyte knowlege / her tendre 8  
 chykes and vysage, that afore was playsaunt & debon-  
 nayre, of sangwyne coloure tournyng vpon white /  
 becam aHe pale sodaynly in hydouse manere, & aH  
 mortyfied for the crueHe deth, wherof the harde ang- 12  
 wysshes had enuahyshed her already, & with grete furye  
 betaken & cast, went & mounted the degrees aH<sup>1</sup> highe  
 vpon her palayce, tyl *that* she came ther as y<sup>e</sup> wode was  
 assembled for to kendle ther a fyre. In whiche place, 16  
 y<sup>e</sup> habilements, the bed, & *that* other thinges, with y<sup>e</sup>  
 Image of enecas, & also his swerde, were brought for to  
 be brente, & cast out of memorye; the whiche dydo, aHe  
 thus vexed & troubled in her wittes, drewe y<sup>e</sup> swerde 20  
 out of y<sup>e</sup> shethe for to murder & slee herself. but or  
 euer she wolde doo this, she dide loke vpon y<sup>e</sup> habili-  
 mentes / the bed, & other remenaunt, *that* by other tymes  
 afore had plaised her soo moche / & thenne she began 24  
 somewhat for to lacryme & syghe vpon the bed, where  
 she put herself, in proferryng her last wordes in this  
 manere: "O right swete dispoillynges plaisaunt, weH  
 loued & honoured of me somtyme, aslonge as god & 28  
 fortune wolde, I beseche you take my sowle, and  
 delyuere her out of thys care, And from these sorowfuHe  
 peynes / \* in whiche I am absorbed in the grete viage  
 of heuynes / I haue lyued vnto this tyme presente, and 32  
 haue fynysshed the cours of my lyffe that fortune had  
 gyuen to me. It is now tyme presently that the ymage  
 of my semblaunce be sent vnder the erthe / I haue had  
 of peynes and traueyHes by my brother pygmalyon, 36

Dido's appear-  
 ance is changed  
 by her distress.

She ascends  
 alone to where  
 the altar was  
 made, and  
 Aeneas's dress,  
 image, and sword  
 laid out.

She looks on  
 these memorials  
 and laments.

[\* leaf G 8, back]

- that made to deye crueHy my first husband sycheus, CAP. XXVII.  
 wherof I haue ben ynonghe<sup>1</sup> auenged by me, and holde  
 me content therof; I haue edified my cite, fayre, noble,  
 4 puissaunt and riche; I haue seen the waHes, and batel-  
 mentes, & the deffenses, accomplysshed. O felycyte  
 merueiHouse, wherof I shulde be weH happy, and aboue  
 aHe other honoured, weH loued and holden fuHe dere, yf  
 8 the nauye of the troyens had not come wythin my  
 streemes of the see! O hard commynge, and cursed re-  
 cepcion intrynseque / false, daungerouse, and fuH of  
 grete dispite, that hathe brought me in-to confusion /  
 12 O tryste machynacyon of trayson, approued fuH of  
 frawdulouse induction / that hath delyuered me to  
 a shamefuH dethe, whiche shaH come to me sodaynly,  
 and presently without taryenge." And ascryed wyth a  
 16 hyghe voyce, saynge in thys wyse: "Must I thenne  
 deye thus falsly, wythout to be auenged of that traytour  
 theffe, and crueH, by whome I am vitupered so sore and  
 defyled / Nowe thenne sith it is so, I wiH soone deye  
 20 lastly, and sende my goost sodaynly vnto the lowe  
 shadowes / I shulde deye more gladly yf Eneas were  
 here present, for to see the dethe and grete tourmente  
 that for hym I muste endure, to thende that he were  
 24 therof contryste, in remembraunce pardurable, aslong as  
 that his lyffe shaH laste; and syth that otherwise it can  
 not be, I goo to my dethe, whiche to hym shalbe in-  
 puted and represented by the inspecyon of the grete  
 28 fyre that soone shalbe kendled in this place /"
- ¶ How dydo, fuH of grete rage, and dys-  
 powruyed of witte, \* slewe herself with  
 the swerde of eneas / And how be it that  
 32 aboue is made mension of this ocacion,  
 it was nothing but for to shewe the

All went well  
till the coming of  
the Trojans.

Dido laments her  
approaching  
shameful death,

and grieues that  
Aeneas is not pre-  
sent to see the  
torments she  
suffers for him.

[\* sign. H j]

<sup>1</sup> orig. ynonghe

CAP. XXVIII.

diuersite of fortune. And here the execution of the dede is shewed

## ¶ Capitulum xxviii

Dido falls on  
Aeneas's sword.

**T**He whiche thynges thus made & sayde, without 4  
eny more langage / dydo, full of rage, seased  
thenne the swerde of eneas, whiche she helde  
the poynte vpward, & vpon hit dede cast her self, so that  
the swerde entred within her brest, vnto the bake of 8  
her / This lady thenne felde doune to the grownde, sore  
hurt with a wounde mortall, wherof she lost her speche,  
labourynge sore harde atte the entree of her dethe so  
cruell / as many one doo whan they be atte the poynt 12  
of deth, that tormente himself strongli for the harde  
distresse that they haue atte the partynge of the  
spyryte of lyffe fro the bodye, that wyl not leue the  
membres pryncipall, of whom he is susteyned / but yf 16  
it be by grete violence, atte leste whan the cause is  
meanely sodayne, & not all mortyfied attones. all thus  
was this sorowfull lady founde on the grounde,<sup>1</sup> that  
coude not ryse, her handes, & her persone all couered 20  
& defyled with blood without mesure, & the swerde  
that dropped yet of bloode, and all bloody, laye by her.  
wherof a grete sorowe, a grete crye, and grete clamour  
was thenne attones sodaynly made thurgh all the 24  
palayce, that perced the wailes & tours vnto the  
myddes of the toun / ther shulde ye haue seen make  
grete lamentacyons, grete cryes / grete playntes and  
grete moone; wymen wepe, sighe, & makynge sorowe; 28  
& all y<sup>e</sup> peple was all forsened with wrathe / Wher-  
of the cytee was sore moeued in grete desolacyon, by  
suche wise & forme as though y<sup>e</sup> enmyes capitalle  
of the towne had entred by force of armes wythin 32  
the same, for to brynge theym all to destruction.  
or as that the grete and auneynt towne of thyr,

She is found  
covered with  
blood.

Great lamenta-  
tion and uproar  
in the city.

<sup>1</sup> orig. grounde



that hath \*nourysshed theym, and the same cyte of  
 cartage, had be bothe embrased wyth fire alle kyndled  
 in a flamme / By the whiche grete noyse and  
 4 disaraye, anne, the suster of dydo, that was goon sone  
 for to make redy the thynges *that* neded for to make the  
 sacrifyce / vnderstandyng thenne weH / that the sorow  
 & grete moone that was made thurgh the aHe the towne,  
 8 was for her suster dydo, that had slayne herselfe /  
 wherof she aH atones forsened, as a persone that ys  
 madde & out of her mynde / toke herselfe for to renne  
 as faste as she myghte, passyng thurgh the multytude  
 12 of the people that was there, smytyng her brestes  
 wyth her handes & fustes, and aHe to-cratched her face  
 wyth her nayles / And cryed aHe highe & pyetously,  
 made grete rewthes and lamentacyons / callyng vpon  
 16 dydo, sayeng in this wise / "My righte swete suster, alas,  
 what haste thou doo / and by what maner & rayson  
 hast *thou* broughte thi selfe thus to eternaH perdyeyon /  
 and has deceyued me wyckedly & falsely wyth a bytter  
 20 deth / whiche I wolde gladly haue suffred & endured  
 wyth the / Alas, what nede was it to me to make redy  
 the sacrifyces / sith that a fyre for aH other obsequyes  
 & a swerde weH sharpe slyped, myghte haue broughte  
 24 the two susters to deth bothe atones, wythout to haue  
 be departed one from the othre. Alas, what shaHe I  
 saye, ne what begynnynge maye I now take for to  
 make my mone / Why haste you thus dysprayed me  
 28 that am thy suster and true felawe? aHe my lyf I haue  
 honoured, worshiped, serued & praysed the / and eke  
 moche loued the. For to folowe the, I haue alle  
 habandouned / I haue knowen thy werke. I haue  
 32 knowen thy wyll / and also thy secretes thou wolde  
 neuer hide from me / Alas now, what furye hath taken  
 the atte this nede / whiche is the sorowe mortalle /  
 for to haue caste me thus abacke from thy presence / by  
 36 cause *that* I sholde \*haue had not knowen this faicte.

CAP. XXVIII.

[\* sign. H j,  
back]The noyse reaches  
Anna's ears.Anna's lament  
over Dido.Why did Dido  
deceive her?

[\* sign. II ij]



## CAP. XXVIII.

Anna would have  
died with her  
sister Dido,

who by her  
death has  
brought disgrace  
on her city.

Under Anna's  
care Dido re-  
vives a little.

[\* sign. H ij,  
back]

“Alas! yf I myght haue knowen the same thyng, veraye  
trouthe I wolde haue deyed with the / O what sorowe  
I doo supporte, whan I haue lost aHe my force / and  
noon ther is that me recomforteth; but of aHe sydes is 4  
brought to me peyne & traueyHe without mesure /  
the grete wrathe and the grete care that wrongly,  
and magre myself, I doo endure, whan I me recorde  
of the Iniure that my suster hath falsly doon, not 8  
only to me / but hathe defyled vylaynsly the good  
name and the enhaunsynge of the cytee that she  
hathe coummysed, and submysed to a grete vilete &  
shame; for aHe tymes shalbe recyted the enormyte 12  
of this fowHe befaHe, whiche euer shalbe imputed  
to a grete infamy, wherof they of cartage shaHe  
haue a blame, *that* shaHe torne vnto them to a grete  
diffamy. And moche more, bycause of their good 16  
fame that was knowen / that had be weH entreteyned,  
and in grete worshp susteyned / yf my suster had  
mayntened and kept herself wythout dysperacyon /  
Wherof aHe hope / as weH to theym as to me, failleth, 20  
by her *that* hath extyncted oure goode renomnee, &  
brought vs in a grete blame; & now be we without  
pastoure, as the sheep that is habaundouned! Now  
thenne, sith that it is thus come / lete vs loke to her 24  
wounde, and in her face, yf she is thrughly passed” / and  
thenne she toke her vp bytwene her armes, and with  
ryght grete sorowe and heuynesse / wasshed the blode  
away from about the sore, and made it clene fuHe 28  
swetly wyth hir owne raymentes / And perceyued  
and knewe that yet some spyryte of lyffe was wythyn  
the persoune of Dydo, that forced her self for to open  
her eyen / And thre tymes made her effort to reyse 32  
her self vpon her elbowe. But her strengthes sore  
fayHed, of the dethe that alredy hadde her aHe in her  
rewle, myght not therto suffyse, but that she \* muste  
falle ayen attones vpon her bedde, where she hadde 36

- be layd / And knowynge that she wasted alle awaye, CAP. XXVIII.  
 she dyd forse her owne self for to open her eyen / to Dido opens her  
eyes,  
 see the lyghte of the daye, that gryened her sorowe  
 4 weH harde and sharpely, and by suche a wyse that she  
 entred incontynente, in grete peyne, to the extreme then falls into  
the death  
struggle.  
 angwysshe of the dethe, where she was ryght longe /  
 Wherof Iuno, the noble goddessse conseruatye of  
 8 yongthe, that hadde pyte of the longe sorowe mortalle  
 in whiche was constytuted the fayr Elysse or dydo /  
 sente towarde hir, for to brynge atte an ende hir  
 Immense trystesse, hir noble messenger named Yris /  
 12 whiche, as some saen, is the rayen bowe, with hir fayr  
 cote of dyuerse fygures, For to vnbynde the rotes of Juno sends Iris  
to unbind her  
struggling spirit.  
 the spyrite vytalle from the membres of hir body,  
 whiche were thenne in grete opposicyon and debate  
 16 one ayenste another / By cause that the humydyte  
 radycalle, and other complexeyons in proporecyon con-  
 uenable, coenclyned<sup>1</sup> togyder, Dyde receyue the gooste  
 soo that it coude not goo there-from by hit selfe,  
 20 wythoute ayde of other / Also that hir deth natur-  
 alle oughte not to hauen comen yet of longe tyme /  
 But by accydente and harde fortune / whiche is  
 gladdely euyl and dyuerse to theym that she by-  
 24 holdeth awrye, was broughte in to suche dysperacyon /  
 not for noo crymynatte cause, nor for noon other  
 thyng wherof she oughte to suffre dethe / nor to  
 endure any peyne or sufferance / that she slewe her  
 28 self And thenne after that, arose proserpyne, wyffe and  
 spouse to Pluto, the ryghte grete god infernalle /  
 whiche holdeth vnder her domynacon the persones The power of  
Proserpine  
over mortals.  
 that be Inueterate of euyl dayes / And they that ben  
 32 in grete sorowes, to whom she admynystred alle the  
 deturpacyons and the \*hardenesse of olde age / as to [\* sign. II iij]  
 some while that they be slepyng / she setteth white  
 herres on the grounde of their hedes; Some she  
 36 maketh scabbed and full of yteche, the feete to be grete

<sup>1</sup> for coenclined.

CAP. XXVIII. and swollen / And thenne the gowte or the poplesie,  
 The evils in- the styches or the paraleseye, The dehylyte or feble-  
 flicted on mor- nes / and of the eyen appayreth the sighte, and  
 tals by Proser- replenysseth theym alle wyth teeres / and the lyddes 4  
 pine, loss of sight, of the eyen wyth fylthe, soo that whan they ryse in  
 the mornynge, they must be wasshed wyth wyne or  
 of memory, wyth some other lauatorye / And to other, she maketh  
 theyr memorye to wexe feble, and conuerteth it in-to 8  
 ygnoraunce; She taketh from them the puyssaunce  
 of strength, that they hadde fyrste, and hath awaye fro theym  
 furtyuely, by proces of tyme, aH theyr strengthes, one  
 after another, by cause noon shalle be aware of her, for 12  
 doubte that she be not deceyued. And after, she  
 of stature, maketh theym coked, and boweth theyr bodyes,  
 hangynge theyr hedes to the grounde-warde, alle fuH  
 of care, and as countrefete, asweH the men as the 16  
 wymmen / to the whiche, for to bere to theym a  
 dyffame / taketh theyr fayr colour awaye, and maketh  
 of complexion, theym as pale as asshes / To other, she gyueth rednes,  
 wyth a highe coloure ouer excessyue and dyshonneste; 20  
 and the yelow heres of theyr heddes, she maketh  
 theym to loke lyke rousset / or lyke the coloure of an  
 of breath, olde bere / She after shorteth theyr retentyue brethe,  
 and molyfyeth in theym alle theyr bloode: And noon 24  
 otherwyse it ys to be supposed, but that she doeith in  
 lyke wyse of alle the remenaunte / For she goeth  
 ledynge alle in equaH proporeyon, and maketh theym  
 of beauty, dystribucyon by the temples and in the face, of grete 28  
 ryueles and fromples, that putte oute the beaulte of  
 the playsaunte vysage, that she sheweth aH wyth  
 cordage, \* asweHe in the nek as aboute the temples /  
 We haue therof many exemples / Nomore therof 32  
 we wyHe now speke / It is so lothely to here / Also  
 weH harde it is to me, to teHe therof that I haue sayde  
 afore / but to thende that eny gaynsaynge sholde be  
 Imputed ayenst me / to haue obmyssed for to dyscute 36

[\* sign. H iij,  
back]

som of the condycyons and euyH operacyons of the  
 cursed proserpyne, that is more sore pryckyng than  
 the thorne / I haue sette thees here for to vnderstande  
 4 the other better, that men shaHe mowe take In lyke  
 conformyte, as it is recyted aboue /

CAP. XXIX.

Proserpine's  
evil deeds.

¶ Of the beaulte of dydo

¶ Capitulum / xxix

8 **T**His proserpyne, of whome I speke / how be it  
 that of aHe her werkes and subtyHe artyfyces  
 wherof she is wonte to vse, had not in noo wyse  
 wrought for dydo, nor hade not yet enprynted in her  
 12 persone eny sygne of olde age, nor other thyng  
 wherby she shulde directly haue pretended vpon her  
 eny ryght, Alwayes she wolde force her self to haue  
 for her part the soule of Elysse / sayenge, that she  
 16 hadde slayn herself by dysperacion, as for cause of  
 furye and of rage, whiche is a thinge Inhumayne,  
 dependynge of the operacyons and wodnesses of heHe,  
 that she herself hathe enprynted in her persone,  
 20 wherunto she hath subdued and submytted herself,  
 wherfore by reson she oughte to abyde vnder her /  
 as we see by example famyler, whan som body hathe  
 submytted hymself by oblygacion to the iurisdicyon of  
 24 some Iuge, the saide iuge is capable for to haue the  
 knowlege therof, how be it that to-fore the oblygacyon  
 was made / the persone was exempt of his Iurisdicyon.  
 And afre thees raysons, and othre that were to longe  
 28 to be recounted, proserpyne sayde that elysse ought to  
 abyde with her, as she that had submyted \*her self to  
 her lawes and Iurysdyctions / But the fayre Iris, that  
 departed from heuene by the commaundement of the  
 32 goddessse Iuno, descendynge by the clowdes with her  
 gylte feders at the oposyte of the sonne, ornated with  
 a thousaunde colours / Came and sette her self vpon  
 the hede of Dydo / And for an aunswere to the

Proserpine  
claims Dido's  
soul,as she had caused  
her own death,  
and so come  
under Proser-  
pine's jurisdic-  
tion.

[\* sign. II iiij]

Iris descends on  
Dido's head.

CAP. XXIX. adlegacyons of Proserpyne, sayde to her thees thynges /

Iris opposes  
Proserpine.

“Thys is of rayson wryton, whan eny persone noble is  
in debate betwene two partyes, that the mooste parent  
heyre of the lynage, and that commeth of lawefuHe 4  
yssue, shalbe proferred afore that other partye, and  
shaHe bere the name awaye wyth hym, namely whan  
he is of the fyrste yssue / And also that he hath the  
gretter parte in the herytage, and hath doon many 8  
aquysycions, amendinges and reparacyons / ¶ Now it  
is soo, that the goddesse Iuno, whos ryghte for to  
deffende and kepe I am sent hither / hathe produced  
in her, beynge in this possessyons / that is to wyte, 12  
Elysse, wherof we vnderstande betwix vs two / And  
hathe made her to be borne, hathe brought her to the  
worlde, and hathe alymented and noryshed her from  
the owre of hyr birthe vnto this tyme present / And 16

Iris recites the  
beauties of Dido,

hathe gyuen vnto her soo many fayre yestes of nature /  
As in beaulte corporeHe / yongthe, weH made of her  
membres, eche in his qualyte, and ryght egaH in  
proporeyon, without eny dyfformyte / the hede weH 20  
sette by mesure vpon the nek, fayre heerys and long  
yelowe tresses, hangyng betwene two sholders to the  
heles of her / her forched brod and highe ynoughe /  
the browes traytice and broun, and the lydes of the 24  
eyen acordyng to the same ; the eyen grene, & open by  
mesure, lawghyngeand of swete loke ; a fayre & weH com-  
passed visage ouer the forhede, aH ynoughe coloured /

[\* sign. H iij,  
back]

both in face and  
figure.

A \*meane noose, not to grete nor to lyteH, wythout ouer 28  
grete openynge / A lyteH moulthe with roddy lyppes /  
And atte the chiekes, two lyteH pittes / & one, In lyke  
wyse, at the chynne / The tethe whȳte / smalle, and  
weH Ioyned togyder / A rounde chynne that was not 32  
ouer longe ; A whyte coloure, with a bryght hew there-  
with-aHe, some what tendynge to the rede / the necke  
longe ynoughe by goode mesure, bygge ynoughe towarde  
the lowest part, and traytysse on the backe syde / the 36

throte quyeke, and without spotte or macule / longe  
 armes and smaHe, the sholders and the backe flat, the  
 brestes weH sette, with a grete space betwix bothe the  
 4 pappes, that be rounde and sette of a heyght / smalle  
 of body, and large atte the Raynes / The thyes harde  
 and grete, withoute eny blemyschyng / Fatte ynoughe,  
 asweHe the body as the membres / The legges weH  
 8 Ioyned, and somewhat smaH on the neder parte / lyteHe  
 feet and smaHe, with the toes weH eyn sette togyder /  
 white vnder clothes, and fulle swete and smothe of  
 skynne / smale handes, soupple and thynne, with long  
 12 fyngers and smaHe, and the naylles weH eyn; swete  
 voyce, of fayre eloquence and weH in langage, sadde of  
 behaouure, and of symple contenauce / plaisaunt for  
 to see, & replenyshed of aH good condicyons, like as it  
 16 were one of y<sup>e</sup> wymen best accomplished *that* nature had  
 produced syth her begynnyng vnto that tyme. Where-  
 fore thenne, sith that thou, proserpyne, can not shewe  
 noon other rayson but the sayde submyssion wherof  
 20 thou hast spoken here afore / I saye, for to kepe  
 equyte / that ther was som deceptyon or frawdulent  
 induction that hath made her to condescende therunto,  
 as men may manyfestly apperceyue by the premysses a-  
 24 boue writon, that see theym all alonge; wherfore the  
 falle well vnderstande, well \*assoylled well & deffended,  
 may welle haue releuement / But a nother waye I shaH  
 take with the, yf thou wylt be of accorde and content /  
 28 bicause thenne that, after thy poure and myserable  
 descendynge in-to heHe, in the coniunction makynge of  
 the with Pluto, Thy fayre heerys were tourned to  
 In-horyble and hydouse serpentis sette vpon thy hede, I  
 32 shaH gyue to the, theym of dydo, for to make sacrefyce  
 therwith vnto the derk shadowes, and tygres infernaHe /  
 Yf thou wiHe renounce aHe the ryght that thou pretendest  
 vpon her." Wherfore thenne Yrys made the fayre herys  
 36 of dydo to be cutte, and toke theym to proserpyne;

CAP. XXIX.

Iris describes  
Dido's beauty,declines to give  
up her soul,

[\* leaf H 5]

and gives Pro-  
serpine Dido's  
hair in exchange  
for her claim,  
Proserpine's  
hair having been  
turned into  
snakes when she  
went down to  
the infernal  
regions.



## CAP. XXX.

Iris unbinds the  
members from  
the spirit, and  
Dido expires.

And thenne she toke vp-on her selfe for to vnbynde  
the membres from the spyrite of lyffe, wherof the hete  
was soone extyncted, and was anone rauyshed with the  
wyndes, that bare her awaye a grete pas, and delyuered 4  
her free and quytte to that place, after her demeryte,  
that to aHe folke is propyce, as it is ordeyned by the  
prouydence deuyne, wherof the regne shaHe neuer  
fynyshe / 8

¶ how Eneas saitted, & how by tempest he  
arryued in cecylle ¶ Capitulum xxx

We leave Dido.

Aeneas's voyage  
to Italy.

A storm turns  
their course.

[\* leaf II 5, back]

They land in  
Sicily.

Accestes the King  
receives them  
gladly.

What shaH I more saye of the quene dydo, nor  
of her sorowe that she made, nor also of the 12  
grete moone *that* her folke made for her after that she  
was dede / But now I shaH teHe of Eneas, *that* went in  
to Italye, for to haue the londe that y<sup>e</sup> goddes had  
promysed vnto hym / whan thenne they had rowne & 16  
saylled so moche *that* they were in the highe see / a  
stronge weddre arose, that brought to them a grete  
tempeste, soo that they wist not what they shulde doo  
nor saye, & habawdouned theyr saylles, for to bere 20  
theyre shippes atte y<sup>e</sup> wille of y<sup>e</sup> horrible wyndes, in  
whos power they were / y<sup>e</sup> mayster maryner said, after  
his semynge, by y<sup>e</sup> sterres *that* he sawe, \*that they made  
waye towarde Cecylle, wherof Accestes was kynge / 24  
Whan Eneas herde thus speke the maryner, he was  
therof gladde / and sayd, that to noone other londe he  
wolde more gladdely goo, yf the goddesse wolde ; For  
Accestes was his frende, and of the lygnage of the 28  
Troians ; And also the sepulture of his fader Anchises  
was there / Soone after ceassed the tempeste / and they  
saylled soo longe that they arryued in Accestes londe /  
that hadde grete Ioye whan he knewe of theyr 32  
comynge / And soone after that they were entred in-to  
the hauen / Accestes ryght gladdely receyued theym  
wyth grete Ioye / Whan the morne come, Eneas spake



to Acestes, the kynge of the londe / and to his barons /  
 and sayd to theym in this wyse / 'That the annyuer-  
 sarye of his fader he wolde make, and that he was  
 4 ryght gladde that he was come there soo sone / And  
 that he wyste weHe that hit was the wyll of the  
 goddes' / Thenne ordeyned and aduysed, Acestes and  
 Eneas, for to make playes of dyuerse maners abowte  
 8 the tombe of Anchyses / Wherefore the yonge bachelers  
 shewed there theyr prowesse, Tourned theyr horses,  
 and ranne and lepte / and proued theym selfe one  
 ageynste another / And atte this annyuersarye that  
 12 Eneas dyde doo make for his fader / was made moche  
 of prowesse, For alle they that were there dide putte  
 hemselfe in peyne for to doo weH, asweH Eneas folke,  
 as they of Acestes

Aeneas cele-  
 brates games at  
 the sepulchre of  
 Anchises.

16 ¶ How Eneas toke the see for to seke the  
 region of Ytalye: Capitulum xxxjº

Whan they were comen ayen from y<sup>e</sup> sepulture of  
 anchises, theyr shyppes were set in a fyre, & had  
 20 ben aH brent, yf it had not be a messenger *that* anonced  
 this to theym \*there as they were / And sayde / that  
 the ladyes that were within the shippes, hadde set  
 theym In a fyre / Bycause they wolde fayne make  
 24 there theyre dweHyng place; for they hadde ben  
 seuen yere and more out of theyre countreye, & were  
 sore wery and broken of theyre longe vyage.

[\* leaf H 6]

During the  
 games, the  
 women, un-  
 willing to go  
 farther, set fire  
 to the ships,  
 which are with  
 difficulty saved,

¶ Whan they vnderstode thyse tydynges, Aescanyus,  
 28 that was sette vpon a ryche courser, went with other in  
 hys companye, and rescued the shyppes wyth grete  
 peyne / but aHe wayes there were thre of theyme loste  
 and brente / After thys was doon, Encas was  
 32 counseyHed<sup>1</sup> that he shulde begynne to bylde ther a  
 newe cyttee, whiche he sholde people with the folke  
 that were comen with hym, that were not able to bere

Aeneas founds a  
 town, first called  
 New Troy, after-  
 wards Aesta,  
 for the aged and  
 infirm.

<sup>1</sup> orig. conuseylled

CAP. XXXI. armes, nor for to goo to batayHe / And thus he dede it  
 by the wyHe of Acestes / And deuysed the gretenes  
 of the cytee, and sayde that it sholde be called the newe  
 troye / But they of the countrey named her aftrewarde 4  
 Acestre, for the worshype of Acestes, by whome aHe  
 the lande was gouerned. In the same cytee, lefte Eneas  
 the wymmen, and the chyl dren, and the olde men / and  
 helped hymself with thoos that were stronge, and that 8  
 myghte weHe endure the traueyHes of batayHe, for to  
 haue theym with hym In Italye / A fewe men he  
 hadde, but they were gode and socourable, bothe by see  
 and by the lande / whan this was doon, and that Eneas 12  
 hadde doo make the tombe of hys fader / He toke hys  
 leue of the kyng, and of hys owne folke that he lefte  
 behynde for to enhabyte there, that made grete sorowe  
 for hys departynge / Thenne retourned Eneas, with his 16  
 folke that sholde goo with hym In-to Italye, and entred  
 hys shyppes that were weH appareyHed, And made the  
 sayHes to be \*hyssed vppe, toke vp theyr ankers / and  
 departed from the rode. Thenne myghte ye haue seen 20  
 the ladyes and other wepe fuH sore / makynge grete  
 moone for their frendes and theyr chyl dren that they  
 sawe departe from theym. Eneas wente streyghte /  
 towarde ytal y / but one thyng happed euyH to theym / 24  
 For theyr chyeff maryner, that vpon a nyghte was halfe  
 a slepe vpon the forcasteH / felle down in to the see, and  
 was drowned, wherof Eneas was ful sory, and alle his  
 folke also / And soone after, they landed in an yle 28  
 whiche is called Tulyola, where was a cyte that was  
 named Thetys, after Thetys the neuewe of Eneas, that  
 gatte hit and peopled it, after that he hadde conquered  
 alle Ytal y. ¶ I haue broughte this cyte to memorye, 32  
 by cause that many haue harde speke of Dedalus, that  
 fleded there for fere of the kyng Mynos of Crete, that  
 wolde slee hym ¶ I shalle telle you the cause why, and  
 shalle leue awhyle to speke of Eneas / The wyffe of 36

The women,  
 children, and old  
 men are left  
 behind in Sicily.

Eneas bids  
 farewell to  
 Acestes, and  
 sails for Italy.

[\* leaf H 6, back]

Death of  
 Palinurus.

They land at  
 Cumæ in Italy.

The story of  
 Dædalus, and  
 how he came to  
 Italy from Crete.

- kyng Mynos of Crete, was named Pasyfa, that was a grete lady and a fayre, aboue alle other ladyes of the royaume / Dedalus dwelled that tyme in Crete / and  
 4 was a wyse man called, and a goode man of werre.  
 The quene Pasifa was wyth chylde by kyng Mynos / and whan her tyme was comen, she was delyuered of a creature that was halfe a man and halfe a bulle, whiche  
 8 was called Mynothaurus / and was norysshed by the commaundemente of the kyng, that wende hit hadde be his sone, And became soo terryble, that the kyng was counseyllled for to shytte hym vp som where in a  
 12 stronge holde / And for this cause, was dedalus sente for to the kyng Mynos / by whos requeste & commaundemente, this dedalus deuysed & made a house of \*merueyllouse composicyon, where were asmany  
 16 walles as were there chambres, that were in grete nombre; and euery chambre was walled and closed rounde aboute, and yet myghte one goo from one to a nother. And yf some body had be shette therin / he  
 20 coude never fynde the firste entree therof, for to come oute ayen; For an hondred dores were there; and whosomeuer went in, after he was ones paste the firste dore, he myghte neuer come oute ayen / and wyst not  
 24 where he was. Wythin this place was Mynotaurus broughte / They of Athenes muste sende eueri yere for a trybute to the kyng Mynos of Crete, as to theyr souerayne lorde, seuen men and seuen wymen / vnder  
 28 the age of xxv. yeres / And whan this foureten<sup>1</sup> persones were come to Crete / the kyng made theym to be putte wythin the forsayd house wyth his monstre, that deuoured theym full soone / Egeus was at that tyme  
 32 kyng of Athenes, whiche was sore an-angred in his herte of suche a seruage / And by cause he myghte not amende hit / he wente and soughte after an aunswere, to

CAP. XXXI.

Pasiphaë was wife of Minos, King of Crete.

The Minotaur, for whom

[\* leaf H 7]

Dædalus constructs the Labyrinth.

The tribute of Aegens, King of Athens, to Minos, seven youths and seven damsels.

<sup>1</sup> orig. foureten

## CAP. XXXI.

Aegeus consults  
the oracle of  
Minerva,

and sends his  
son Theseus to  
Crete.

The signal  
agreed on by  
Aegeus and  
Theseus.

[\* leaf H 7, back]

Story of Theseus  
and Ariadne, the  
daughter of  
Minos.

Ariadne consults  
Dædalus as to  
how to save  
Theseus from  
the Minotaur.

Advice of  
Dædalus.

the temple of Mynerue / for to knowe what he sholde  
doo of this thyng.

¶ The goddesse Mynerue gaaffe hym answeere / that  
he sholde sende his sone Theseus in-to thraldome to 4  
the kynge of Crete. This Theseus was a fayr knyghte /  
preu, valyaunt / and hardy / And sayd to his fader  
that he sholde goo there / Syth that the goddes were  
soo playسد. he thenne made hym redy, and toke his 8  
waye / And whan he toke hys leue of his fader / he  
commaunded to hym that he sholde bere whyte saylles  
in his shyppe, yf he happed to retourne sauffe wythout  
pereille / In sygne of vycторыe. 12

And theseus sayd he sholde doo soo, yf the goddes  
wolde brynge hym ayenne alyue. kynge Mynos hadde  
a doughter that was called Adryane / whiche, whan  
she sawe \* Theseus, that was so fayre and so amyable, 16  
and that was come for to be in thraldome vnder her  
fader / she hadde pyte of hym / and for hys honneste  
behauoure / Began to be taken with his loue / And  
vnto hym vpon a daye she sayde / that ‘yf he wolde 20  
brynge her in-to his countreye with hym / She shulde  
soone delyuere hym from the handes of her fader  
Mynos’ / Theseus made this couenaunt with her and  
promysede her for to kepe it truly and weH / The 24  
lady wente anone to Dedalus, and requyred and asked  
hym how she myght delyuere Theseus / Dedalus tolde  
her / that ‘theseus shulde medle pyche and towe bothe  
togyder, and that he shulde bere thesame with hym / 28  
And whan he shulde come afore the monstre, he shulde  
cast it before hym, whiche anoon sholde come for to  
ete it ; But he shulde neuer conne chewe it so moche,  
that he sholde not swalowe hit, nor haue it out of hys 32  
mouthe / And whyles that the monstre were thus besy  
and sore occupied / theseus myght slee hym lyghtly /  
And whan he shaHe come to the fyrst dore of the  
house, he must take wyth hym a botom of threde, and 36

the end of hit he shaHe make fast to the fyrste dore,  
 and so goc forthe, wyndyng of this botom of threde  
 tyl he be come to his aboue of hys entrepryse; And by  
 4 the threde, that he shaHe wynde vp to-gyder, he shaHe  
 mowe retourne lyghtly to the fyrst dore where he went  
 ynne' / Thus dyde Theseus, by the counseyHe of the  
 lady, and slewe the monstre, and came ayen oute of the  
 8 place fuH soone / And anone after, he toke Adryane  
 wyth hym, and secretely entred in-to his shyppe / and  
 made as goode waye as the wyndes wolde / wythout the  
 knowleche of Mynos the kynge / Theseus was soo  
 12 gladde of this good<sup>e</sup>le aduenture that was happed to  
 hym / that he forgate for to doo as his fader hadde com-  
 maunded hym atte his departyng from Athenes / that  
 'yf he scaped, he sholde sette vppe white sailes; and  
 16 yf he were perished, his men sholde come home ayen  
 beryng blacke saylles / and thus he sholde be in  
 certayne of his lyffe or his deth :'

CAP. XXXII.

Theseus kills the  
 Minotaur,  
 escapes from the  
 Labyrinth, and  
 flies with  
 Ariadne.

[\* leaf H 8. orig.  
 te]

He forgets the  
 signal.

¶ How kyng Egeus lete falle hym selfe in  
 20 to the see, for y<sup>e</sup> deth of his sone Theseus.

### Capitulum xxxij<sup>o</sup>

**W**Han Egeus sawe the shippe of his sone comyng  
 ayen wyth y<sup>e</sup> blacke saylle sprede abrode /  
 24 lyke as whan he departed from hym / he wende verely  
 he hadde be del / And for grete sorowe that he hadde /  
 dyd caste hymself oute of the wyndowes of his  
 casteH in-to the see, and loste his lyf in this wyse.  
 28 And whan kynge Mynos wyst that Theseus was escaped  
 by dedalus / he put hym in pryson, and his sone wyth  
 hym / But Dedalus made wynges, and fastened theym  
 to his armes, and to his sones armes, of federes, of pythe  
 32 and of wax, connyngly made / and floughe oute at the  
 wyndowes fro the prison where they were. But sycarus,  
 the sone of dedalus, floughe alle to highe / wherby the  
 wax waxed hoote, & beganne to melte, and the feders

The death of  
 Aegæus.

Dædalus im-  
 prisoned by  
 Minos.

He makes wings.

Flight of  
 Dædalus and  
 Icarus from  
 Crete.

CAP. XXXIII. to faHe of; wherefore he felle down in to the see, and  
 Death of Icarus, was drowned; but his fader floughe soo longe, as  
 Salamon telleth, that he came in-to the isle of Sardayne,  
 and escape of and escape of Dædalus. dedalus oute of the pryson of Mynos kynge of Crete /  
 Now shalle I leue to speke of this mater, and shalle  
 telle of Eneas and of his werkes.

¶ How Eneas arryued in Ytalye. 8  
 Capitulum xxxiiij

[\* leaf H 8, back] \* **W**Han Eneas and his folke were arryued in the  
 saide yle of Enlyola, they landed anone /  
 And eneas went to a forest, where was a ryche temple 12  
 that dedalus had founded there / In-to this temple  
 went Eneas / and there he wolde reste hym self awhyle.  
 There dweHed the goddessse Cryspyne, whiche shulde  
 haue brought eneas in-to heHe, for to see the sowle of 16  
 Anchises his fadre / and the sowles of aHe his meynce  
 that were decessed / but this mater I leue, for it is  
 fayned, and not to be bylcuyd / who that wiH knowe  
 how eneas wente to heHe, late hym rede virgyle, 20  
 claudyan, or the pisteHes of Ouyde, & there he shaH  
 fynde more than trouthe. For whiche cause I leue it,  
 and<sup>1</sup> wryte not of it. Whan Eneas had taken his reste  
 there awhile / he and his folke departed from thens / 24  
 And went so moche, that they came in ytalye, in a  
 grete forest, where the ryuer of the tonyre renneth, and  
 faHeth there in-to the see. thenne commaunded<sup>2</sup> eneas  
 his maryners, that they shulde sette hym alonde there, 28  
 and aHe his folke / and they dyde somoche that they  
 came and entred wthin the hauene; for they sawe the  
 countrey fayre and delectable, and the forest grete, &  
 fuH of bestes / Of this lande was lorde, kynge latynus, 32  
 that had noon heyre but a fayre doughter that was  
 named lauyne / The kynge latyne, her fader, was of

Aeneas goes  
 down to  
 Avernus.

This is dis-  
 believed by the  
 scribe!

They arrive in  
 the land of  
 King Latinus.

Latinus's only  
 child Lavinia

<sup>1</sup> orig. aud

<sup>2</sup> orig. commanuded



grete age / and many one had requyred his doughter to be their spouse. And amonge other, a bachelere of ytalie shulde haue had her, whiche was called turnus, CAP. XXXIV. courted by Turnus.  
 4 that was moche preu and hardy / but kynge latyne wolde not gyue her to hym, though the puceHe was in age able to be maryed to a prynee of a lande /

¶ Here It is shewed how many kynges had  
 8 ben In ytalye afore that eneas came ther fyrst.

## ¶ Capitulum xxxiiij

\* Afore that Eneas was come in to ytalye, there had  
 be seven kynges that successuely hadde kepte [\* sign. 1 J]  
 12 the londe : The firste was Lanus, whiche dyde enhabyte there firste, & peopled the contree / and after hym Saturnus / but this was not the fader of Iupyer, of whom the auctours speken. After saturnus, was Pyrrus

16 kynge of thys londe ; after hym came Famus / and after hym, his sone Latynus, that thenne was a lyue, and kepte the royaume. There reygne lasted a hondred & fyfty yeres / afore that Eneas wedded Laune, by

20 whom he had the royaume / And after theym regned eneas in ytalye / and they that yssued of hym, foure hundred and seven yeres, vnto Romulus tyme / and thenne seven kynges reygned there after him / that

24 is to whyte, Pympeyns, Iulys hostylius / Marcus aneus / Pryseus tarquynus / Suluyus / TuHyus, Lucyus / thyse kynges reygned two hundred & xl<sup>o</sup> yeres / vnto Brutus, that fyrste was made consulle of the

28 londe / And fro brutus, & theym that after hym reygned, vnto Iulys cesare that was the fyrste emperour, was v. hondred & iiij yeres. ¶ Now wyH I telle of eneas & of his folke, & that assone as that

32 they were come a londe / they sette hemselfe atte dynere, & made trenchers of brede for to putte theyr mete vpon / For they had nother dysshes ne trenchers / and atte laste they hadde soo lyteH brede, that they ete

The Kings of Italy before Latinus, for 150 years.

Aeneas and his successors, 407 years.

Romulus and his successors, 240 years.

Brutus and the Consuls for 504 years to Julius Caesar, emperor.



CAP. XXXV.

Fulfilment of  
Anchises's vision  
of trenchers.Aeneas under-  
stands it.

[\* sign. I j, back]

Aeneas and his  
men rejoice.

alle theyr trenchers, and aH that was lefte / And whan  
ascanyus sawe this, he began to lawgh / And soone  
whan eneas vndrestode it / he wyste weH that he was  
come in-to the contre that the goddes had promysed to 4  
hym / For his fader hadde tolde hym in a vysion, that  
where he sholde happe to ete the releef or brokelynges<sup>1</sup>  
of his borde, there sholde be his dweHyng place /  
Eneas hadde this thyng sore faste in his mynde. And 8  
whan he sawe that this was soo fallen / he was right  
gladde \*in his corage / and sayd to his folke, that he  
wyste weH for certayne that they were in the royaume  
that the goddes hadde promysed vnto theym, and that 12  
theyr traueyH sholde be fynyssed there. Thenne they  
made grete Ioye togyder, and broughtte oute theyr  
goddes from the shyppes, that they hadde broughte  
wyth theym oute of Troye; and to theym they made 16  
saeryfices, and their orysones & prayers, that they wolde  
helpe theym. Thenne demaunded Eneas of som folke  
that he met by the waye, who kepte the contrey / and  
who was lorde therof / And they tolde hym the kynge 20  
Latyne, that was sore auneyente and hadde no children  
but a doughter / and that dweHed not ferre from thens,  
that is to wyte, atte Lawrence :

¶ How Eneas bygan to buylde his fortresse 24  
vpon the Tonyre. Capitulum xxxv.

Why King  
Latinus's capital  
was called  
Laurentum.

NOW shaHe I telle you why this cyte was called  
Laurence, for she was fyrste named Lamyna /  
kynge Latynus hadde a brother that was called Lauynus, 28  
that founded the same cyte, and sayd, that after his  
name she sholde be called lamyna / and whan he was  
ded / the cyte apparteyned to kynge latyne / that made  
it more stronge than it was a-fore, and was alwayes 32  
called Lamyna, tyH that it happed that a laureH tree  
grewe there vpon a hyghe toure wythin the cyte : And

<sup>1</sup> orig. brokelyngs

therof it fortunéd that kynge latyne dyde calle this  
 towne Laurence / whiche he loued ryght moche / For  
 it was the chief cite of alle his royaume. whan eneas  
 4 vnderstode that the cyte where the kynge of the londe  
 dweHyng was soo nyghe / and that this cyte was soo  
 noble / and soo weH peopled, he was ryght gladdé  
 therof. And after, he loked abowte hym where a place  
 8 was moste strong, and there he broughte aHe his ooste /  
 and rounde aboute this place he dyd make diches &  
 barreys for to defende hemselfe, if \*nede were / And  
 for certeyne, wythin a lityH space of tyme, they made  
 12 the place so stronge, that thei doubted no body that  
 coule hurte theym, nor take theym vnbeuare.

CAP. XXXVI.

Aeneas settles at  
the mouth of the  
river Tiber,[\* sign. I ij]  
and fortifies his  
camp.

¶ How Eneas sente his messagers towarde  
 kynge Latyne. Capitulum xxxvi.

16 **W**Han Eneas had begonne his fortresse / he called  
 to hym a hondred of the wysest men that  
 were in his ooste / for to sende theym towarde kyng  
 Latynus, in his cyte of Laurence, for to requyre hym of  
 20 peas & of alyauce; and that he was not arryued in  
 his londe for to doo to hym, nor to the contrey, ony  
 damage / but besoughte hym that he wolde not lette  
 hym of that he had enterprysed to make a casteH vpon  
 24 his grounde that was begonne / For he made this for  
 to rest hym and his folke / and for to dwelle wythin  
 his royaume, by the commaundemente of the goddes,  
 wythoute to doo hym ony hurte nor greuance. The  
 28 messagers wente soo longe wyth theyr ryche presente  
 that they bare from Eneas / to kyng Latynus, and  
 wyth garlandes vpon theyr hedes, made of olyue tree /  
 and also in theyr handes, braunches of the same / that  
 32 peas and loue sygnyfieth / that they came to the cyte  
 of Laurence, where they fonde, a lityH wythoute the  
 towne, a grete feest of yonge men / that proued and  
 assayed theyr streyngthes in dyuerse wyses / Thenne

Aeneas sends an  
embassy to  
Latinus,

at Laurentum.

CAP. XXXVI.

The ambassadors  
are introduced  
to Latinus,

[\* sign. I ij, back]

who receives  
them cour-  
teously

understanding  
that they were  
from Troy,

and enquires  
why they came.

Ilioneus explains  
their coming.

entred y<sup>e</sup> troians wythin the yates of the towne / and  
one of the IouenceHys that thus dyde sporte hym selfe  
there, wente a pase afore theym, and cam & shewed  
to kyng latyne / how that a companye of noble men / 4  
and to his semyng, of ryght hygh astate / were entred  
wythin his cyte, for to come speke wyth hym / & *that*  
they semed weH to be riche & pesable folke / for they  
bare braunches of olyue tre in their handes / the kyng 8  
*commaunded* anone, whan he knewe of it / *that* they  
sholde be broughte \*vnto hym / And so it was doon /  
The messagers come before the kyng Latyne, to whom  
they made reuerence prudently, and hym dyde salue in 12  
theyre lordes byhalue / The kyng, that satte highe in  
his throne withyn hys haHe, where as were purtrayed  
fuHe rychely aHe the kynges of his lynage, connyngly  
made, how they hadde kept ytalye one after another / 16  
with the aduentures that were come to theym, and the  
grete batayHes that they hadde made,—Answered weH  
peasibly to the troyens / For alre dy he hadde weH  
vnderstande that they were of troye, that was alle 20  
distroied / and asked theym ‘ what they sought, and  
what nede had brought theym in-to the londe of Lom-  
bardye / whether the tempeste hadde chassed theym /  
or yf they hadde lost theyre waye / For in many 24  
maners comen payne and traueyHe<sup>1</sup> often vpon ’ / “ but  
how so euer ye be arryued and comen hyther, sith that  
ye requyre peas, ye be ryght welcomen to me. The  
londe is gode & fayre, and the countrey swete and 28  
delectable / And weH ye may ease youre self therynne /  
and also ryght and rayson requyareth that ye doo soo /  
For dardanus, that fyrste kept the regne of troye, was  
of this countrey borne ” / Thenne gaffe the kyng 32  
seassyng to hys wordes / And dyoneus, one of the  
troyens that were there, beganne to speke / saynge In  
thys wise / “ ¶ Gentyll kyng, and of hyghe lynage,

<sup>1</sup> orig. traneylle

- and puyssaunt prynee / Thou shalte vnderstande weH CAP. XXXVII.  
 that none stronge wedrynge ne tempeste / hathe con- No tempest sent  
them here after  
leaving Troy,  
 strayned vs for to comme In-to thys londe ; but we are  
 4 comme hether with oure goode wyll / For we ben  
 departed from the ryche cytee of troye / That of lorde-  
 shyppe surmounted alle other cytees that were In her  
 tyme. And after the destruccyon of the same, that was  
 8 soo grete as / thou haste weH herd telle, We departed  
 fro thens, \*and haue hadde syth soo moche of peyne, [\* sign. I iij]  
 bothe by see and by londe, that longe after we hadde  
 lefte and habandouned our owne contree / we were  
 12 commaunded of the goddes that we sholde come in but the com-  
mand of the  
Gods.  
 to thyse partyes, for to haue therin our residence /  
 And we requyre onely to haue a lityH plotte of grounde They require  
only a plot of  
ground on which  
to dwell in  
peace.  
 where we maye dwelle in peas / and no hurte, domage,  
 16 ne greuauunce, shalle not be doon to the, of vs, by no  
 maner of wyse / And ye muste knowe, that we myghte  
 haue be receyued in many places, and in a good contrey,  
 for to make there our dweHyng / But the destynacyes  
 20 of the goddes, sente vs in to thy reygne, for to haue  
 our permanente residence there / as Dardanus was  
 borne, And appollo commaunded vs the same / and  
 for this thyng,” sayd Dyoneus, “we are arryued in this  
 24 londe / And also Eneas, that is our kynge, sendeth vnto  
 the of his Iewelles that he hath brought with hym  
 oute of troye, where he was in grete honour, and a  
 prince of grete lordeshyppes.” And thenne he toke to  
 28 the kynge a riche mauntelle, & a crowne of fyne golde  
 aH sette wyth precyouse stones, and a cepter royaH, that  
 kyng pryamus dyde bere often in his honde.

Italy is their  
home, by  
command of  
Apollo.

Ilioneus gives  
King Latinus  
Eneas's present.

¶ How kyng Latynus made grete ioye &  
 32 good chere to y<sup>e</sup> messagers of enecas :

Cap<sup>o</sup>. xxxvij

**T**He kyng latynus receyued the ryche present, and Latinus accepts  
it.  
 dyoneus helde his peas / & the kyng latyne

CAP. XXXVIII. prayed moche the troians, not for the present that  
 eneas had sent to hym, but for lone of the maryage  
 of his doughter / And why he dyd soo, it was for  
 bycause that he had graunted his doughter to a wor- 4  
 shi[*i*]fuH knyghte that was called Turnus, the sone  
 of kynge Darynus, of the cyte of Darda / that was not  
 ferre from Laurence / To hym he hadde couenaunced  
 his doughter Lanyne / but theropon he had an answer 8  
 of y<sup>e</sup> goddes, that he sholde not gyue her to hym /  
 but he sholde gyue \*her vnto a knyght straunger.  
 And whan kynge Latyne hadde mused a lytyH in hym  
 selfe / he ansuered to the message: "Fayre brother, the 12  
 gyfte that thou hast brought to me from thy lordes  
 byhalue, I shalle not refuse / but I receyue it gladly /  
 and so teHe hym that I am ryght glad of his  
 commynge, and that my londe, whyche is goode / Is 16  
 atte hys wille; and yf yt playseth to hym, he may  
 herberrowe hymself wyth me within thys cytee / And  
 also ye shalle telle hym, that I haue a doughter, whiche  
 the goddes deffende me that I shalle not gyue her to 20  
 no man of this countreie, and wyl that I gyue her  
 to a stranger, of whome shaHe come a roayalle lygnce,  
 and of grete name thrughe aHe the worlde; and but I  
 be deceyued, It most be he." 24

Latinus sends a  
 message of wel-  
 come to Aeneas,  
 whom he con-  
 sideres the person  
 destined to  
 marry his only  
 daughter

Lavinia, whom  
 he had pre-  
 viously granted  
 to Turnus.

[\* sign. I iij,  
 back]

¶ How kynge Latyne sent his presentes  
 to Eneas / ¶ Capitulum xxxviiij.

Latinus feasts  
 the messengers  
 and sends them  
 back with gifts.

WHan the kynge latyne had thus spoken / he  
 made to be brought afore hym a honderd 28  
 fayre horses, weHe rychely enharnyshed and nobly  
 arayed / and to euery messenger troyen, he gaffe one  
 of thys horses / and sent to Eneas a ryche chare, aHe  
 appareylled for to fyght In a bataylle / Thenne toke 32  
 the messagers there leue of the kynge latyne, after that  
 he hadde made theym goode chere, and ryally fested,  
 and came alle ayen gladde and Ioyouse to theyre

They return in  
 joy to Eneas.

- lorde / And recounted to hym altogyder as it was  
 sayde and doon / Wherof enecas was ryght gladde, &  
 made grete Ioie / The tidynges were spred aHe aboute  
 4 the londe of lombardy, and was announced vnto  
 Turnus, that the troyens that were escaped out of  
 Troye, were aryued in that londe, and hadde a lorde  
 that was called Eneas / To whom kynge Latyne hadde  
 8 halaundouned aHe hys londe, and also hys doughter,  
 that Turnus sholde haue by maryage / But the kynge  
 wolde \*gyue her to the troians, for to enheryte his  
 royaume of the lynce of troye / And that kynge Latyne  
 12 hadde aH-redy consented to theym for to buylde and  
 sette a casteH vpon the ryuer of Tonyre / soo that they  
 sholde not be cast oute lightly from the royaume by  
 force. Assone as Turnus wyste of thyse tydynges, he  
 16 was sore an-angred in his herte. And was ouermoeche  
 wrothe for the damoyseH, that hadde be graunted and  
 gyuen firste of aH vnto hym / And weH he swore that  
 Eneas sholde neuer haue her, as longe as he were man  
 20 on lyue. Turnus, by the counceyH of his fader, sente  
 for his nyghe frendes and kynnesmen, for to haue  
 counseyH vpon this thyng / And whan he had  
 assembled theym togyder, they did counseyH hym that  
 24 he sholde goo towarde kyng Latyne, atte lawrence, &  
 towarde the quene / for to knowe whi they wolde  
 gyue theyr doughter to a nother, contrary to their  
 promyse that they hadde made to hym. Duryng  
 28 that these wordes ranne / Eneas and his people  
 wroughte styлле to make vp theyr fortresse / And  
 ascanyus, by the lycence of enecas his fader, wente to  
 the foreste that was nyghe by Lawrence, and dyuerse  
 32 of his knyghtes wyth hym, for to hunte the wylde  
 bestes / Turnus hadde two sones, and a fayr doughter  
 whiche was named Syluya. this siluya had norissed a  
 herte tyH that he was ouergrowen <sup>1</sup> and grete, that her

CAP. XXXVIII.

News of the  
embassy  
spreads.Turnus hears of  
it,

[\* s'ign. I iiij]

and is angry.

He swears Aeneas  
shall never  
possess Lavinia,and calls a  
council of his  
friends and  
kinsmen.Ascanius hunts  
in the forest.<sup>1</sup> *orig.* ouergrowen



CAP. XXXVIII. bretheren had broughte to her from the foreste / soo  
 Ascanius wounds a tame deer belonging to Sylvia, Turnus's daughter. yonge they had take hym awaye fro the moder. This  
 herte was soo tame, *that* he suffred weH that the  
 damoiselle layed her hande ouer him, for to make hym 4  
 fayr and eyn / and that she shold make him a  
 garlonde aboute his hornes. he was weH fed, and moche  
 loued of her / and also of Turnus her brother. And  
 whan that this herte had be longe atte home, he wente 8  
 in-to the forest among the other / and cam ayen atte  
 eyn. The houndes of \* Ascanyus founde thys herte,  
 and hunted hym sore, tyH that Ascanyus hadde espyed  
 hym, and shotte an arowe att hym, and rought the 12  
 sydes of hym. This herte, aHe thus wounded and sore  
 hurt, came home ayen as fast as he myght, there as he  
 was norysed, and cryed and made mone after hys  
 manere. Syluya came fyrst there where he was, 16  
 whiche was ryght sory whan she dyde see the hert,  
 that bled sore and was a deynge. Thenne came<sup>1</sup> there  
 turnus, that was moche an-angryd and wroth therfore,  
 & founde the wounde, and blew a horne for to moeue 20  
 his folke ayenst theym that had slayne this hert.  
 And no moo wordes were made there; But they went  
 toward the forest aHe armed, where they founde the  
 troyens that were come after the hert: And the 24  
 churles ranne soone vpon theym with suche armures  
 as they had / The troyens deffended theymsel with  
 theyre bowes and with theyr swerdes, but the most  
 strengthe was styH with the men of the countree / 28  
 Neuertheles the medlee waxed so strong, that ascanyus  
 kylled there the eldest son of Turnus with an arowe.  
 Therne rose ther a grete crye, Soo that the troiens  
 were of the wors syde / And whan Eneas wist of hit 32  
 in his fortresse, he came & brought there a grete part  
 of his folke /

[\* sign. I iijj,  
back]

It flies home.

Grief of Sylvia.

Turnus in anger  
goes to the  
forest with his  
followers,

and attacks  
Ascanius and his  
hunters.

Turnus's son  
killed.

Aeneas comes to  
the rescue.

<sup>1</sup> orig. caae



¶ How turnus sente for his folke, for to CAP. XXXIX.  
chasse & dryue Eneas out of his londe /

¶ Capitulum xxxix

- 4 **F**Or this occasion bigan the bataylle to be grete  
and mortaH, that was not apeased anone / There A general fray  
between Aeneas  
and Turnus's  
men, in which  
Latins and  
others join.  
was grete effort made, & bigge estoure, after that Eneas  
was come there / For of that othre part of the batayHe,  
8 they of Laurence came there, and of aHe the other  
contrees about, that cursed the kynge Latyne, that so  
euyH folke had receyued and lodged In his contree /  
To this sorowe came Tur\*nus / and whan he sawe (\* leaf I 5)  
12 aHe the folke of laurence so moeued ayenste the kynge  
Latyne / he bigan thezne to swere and saye, that euyH  
sholde come therof to the kynge Latyne and to the  
troyens; for yf he had not Lauyne to his wyff, he sholde  
16 doo brenne the cyte, and the palays also / And thenne  
he aseryed his folke, and aHe theym of the cyte, in Latinus tries to  
quiet Turnus in  
vain.  
whiche were many knyghtes, and sayde that hym self  
and theym of the cyte sholde yssue in batayHe /  
20 Thenne spake kynge Latyne to his folke and to  
Turnus, and tolde theym that, ayenst the witte of the  
goddess, and without rayson, they wolde fyght aienst  
the troyens / But for thise wordes / turnus nor the The fighters  
separate at  
night,  
24 other wolde neuer withdrawe theym self. the kynge,  
that sawe they wolde noon other wyse doo, he lete  
theym shyfte / & fought tyH that the eynyn departed  
theym / Thenne came ayen they of the londe to  
28 lawrence / & enneas & ascanyus went ayen to their  
fortresse / turnus had sent for his aide in the contreye  
aH about, & made grete folke / first of aH, came to  
him mescaus of eusy, & causus his sone, & brought  
32 folke wyth theym. & thenne came they of lombardy,  
of to-scane, & of the ualles of ytalie. besides aH thees,  
came ther canuHa, a mayde *that* was lady of prouerne,

## CAP. XL.

Turnus  
assembles the  
Italian chiefs  
and their tribes.  
Among them  
comes Queen  
Camilla.

& medabus was her fader: this damoyseHe brought  
with her grete companye of medens aH in armes, for  
to gyue socours to turnus, *that* she loued<sup>1</sup> sore. whan  
she was come to laurence, she was gretly loked vpon 4  
of y<sup>e</sup> ladyes of the cyte, bicause that she mayntened  
herself lyke a knyght: she was stronge & hardy, more  
thenne eny other creature /

How eneas went to seke socours of y<sup>e</sup> kynge 8  
euander / cap<sup>o</sup> xl

**T**Hus had turnus assembled his folke for to chase  
eneas & his folke out of lombarde / for he wold  
haue y<sup>e</sup> doughter of y<sup>e</sup> kyng latyne / eneas had with him 12  
litol aide, but of them *that* he had brought with hym.  
he toke no care, nor abashed hym not bicause *that* y<sup>e</sup>  
same londe was promysed to him for to dweHe \* in hit /  
vpon a nyghte cam to hym a vysion, that tolde hym 16  
that he sholde goo to seke helpe to a kynge that was  
called Euander, whiche was neuewe to kyng Thalamus  
of Archade. This euander slewe his fader, by exhort-  
ynge of his moder, that vyceta was called / and for this 20  
cause he lefte archade / and came in-to ytalye / and  
dyde so moche, that he herberowed hym selfe, and his  
folke that came wyth hym, vpon the mounte palatyne,  
vpon the tonyre, Where Euander beganne a lityH 24  
cyte that he named Palence / after the name of kyng  
Palantyne of Archade, that now is called Rome / thys  
kyng Euander had a doughter, whiche was called after  
the name of his cyte, Paleneya / and also he had a sone 28  
that was preu and hardy, that had to name Palas, y<sup>e</sup>  
whiche werred euer ayenste turnus / and the ytalyens /  
Also turnus wolde neuer haue concorde nor peas wyth  
this kyng Euander / Eneas sayd the<sup>ne</sup> to his folke, 32  
that he sholde goo fette socours and helpe. And then<sup>ne</sup>  
he entred his shyppes, and his felawes wyth hym /

[\* leaf I 5, back]

Aeneas scorns  
Turnus and his  
allies, but is  
warned in a  
vision to ask  
help of Evander,  
an Arcadian

settled on the  
Tiber, on  
Mount Palatine,  
where is now  
Rome.

<sup>1</sup> orig. loned

And rowed so moche that they cam to Palence, where  
 kyng Euander receyued theym wyth grete Ioye, &  
 honoured moche eneas, and sayd to hym that he had  
 4 weH knowen his fader Anchises / Soo longe they spake  
 one to thother, that euander sayd that he sholde helpe  
 eneas, & shold take to him his sone palas, & foure  
 thousand men, good fyghters / Eneas thanked the kynge  
 8 right moche of the good wyH that he had to hym.  
 And whan the mornyng came, & that they had con-  
 cluded togyder of ther besines, they toke leue of  
 kynge euander / & they *that* were most in age entred  
 12 in to the shyppes / And the other that were strong,  
 wente by londe :

CAP. XLI.

Evander receives  
 him well, and  
 gives him assist-  
 ance in men  
 under his son  
 Pallas.

¶ How a grete sorow was made / whan  
 Eneas and Palas departed fro palence :

16

Capitulum xli<sup>o</sup>

\* **W**Han tyme came that they sholde departe, the  
 quene wepte sore tendrely, and the kynge  
 also, that called hys sone fuH swetly, saynge / “ Ha a,  
 20 fayre sone ! yf I were as yonge as I was somtyme / with  
 grete payne I sholde late the goo without me / And I  
 promytte the, that Turnus sholde neuer make so good  
 watehe to kepe hym self, but that I sholde doo to hym  
 24 dommage ryght grete / But olde age reteyneth me here,  
 that happeth to hym weH. Now praye I oure goddes,  
 that of the, they make vs gladde / And that I may see  
 the agayn alyue afore that I shalle decesse. For I  
 28 hadde moche leuer deye / than to see thy dethe.”

[\* leaf 16]

Pallas's mother  
 grieves.

Evander's  
 lament.

¶ And thanne Palas and Eneas made sacrificye to the  
 goddes, & prayed theym *that* they wolde be to theym  
 socourable. & this doon, they toke theyre leue of y<sup>e</sup>  
 32 kynge euander, & walked so long that the nyght was  
 come ; & thenne they herberowed themself behinde  
 a montayne.

Pallas and  
 Aeneas start for  
 Aeneas's camp,  
 and rest under  
 a hill.

## CAP. XLII.

¶ H[o]w turnus came afore the casteH of  
eneas for to sawte hym

¶ Capitulum : xliij

Turnus lays  
siege to Aeneas's  
camp in his  
absence.

The Trojans  
under Ascanius  
decline Turnus's  
challenge to  
fight in the  
open, singly.

[\* leaf I 6, back]

Turnus burns  
Aeneas's ships.

WHan that Eneas was goon towarde kynge 4  
euander / cam turnus afore his fortresse.  
ascanyus was with y<sup>e</sup> troyens, for to wite yf he coude  
take theym, or entre within y<sup>e</sup> casteH / but the troyens  
that sawe theym come, putte theymself in-to theire 8  
fortresse, and made hem redy vpon the waHes, for to  
deffende theym of their enmyes weH and vigorously ;  
and visus & eryalus, two valiaunt knyghtes & hardy,  
kept the gate. turnus *that* was weH horsid, came, & eight 12  
felawes with him, vnto y<sup>e</sup> walles, & called & saide, '*that*  
yf there was eny man that to him wolde fight in the  
playne, that he sholde come out / and that he sholde  
haue no harme, but onely of him, body to body' / And 16  
they of wythin ansuered not ; wherfore he launched  
theym his dart ouer the walles, & went agayn In the  
playne felde for to make a tourne of grete chialrye ;  
& he, & the other \*eyght that were come wyth hym, 20  
ascryed theym / of the casteH wyth an hie voys / and  
sore merueylled that they were of the troians soo  
coward, that they wolde not iuste wyth soo fewe a  
folke as they were / and whan he sawe that thei wolde 24  
not come oute of theyr casteH / He wente rounde aboute  
it, where he myghte ride, for to see and knowe of what  
parte the place myghte sonest be take / And whiles  
that he dyde thus, approached the ooste that came 28  
towarde the fortresse / & Turnus apperceyued the  
shyppes, that were nyghe the shore, for the men to  
come a lande ; whereof he hadde grete Ioye, and com-  
maunded soone that the shyppes of the troians sholde 32  
be sette aH in a fyre / by cause that they of the

castelle sholde not flee thyderwarde for to saue theym  
 selfe. They dyde thenne as turnus hadde commaunded /  
 and breuned alle the shyppes, sauße some, of whom  
 4 y<sup>e</sup> cables brak, & escaped away / wherof they of the  
 oost had grete merueylle / turnus sayd that the casteH  
 must be take wyth stre[n]gthe of armes / And also he  
 knewe weH that Eneas was not there, but came faste  
 8 ayenste hym, accompanied of Palas and of many other  
 knyghtes. Whan the nyghte cam on / turnus ordeyned  
 xviij knyghtes for to make good watche / of whom  
 Mesapus was chieff / and thenne they made grete Ioye,  
 12 and ete & dranke, & made goode chere / The troians  
 byhelde theym / and garnyssed theym selfe in the  
 best wyse that they coude. Menestus & segestus, that  
 Eneas had made constables, hadde theyr folke wel  
 16 ordeyned for to fyghte / and for to defende the  
 fortresse / And made redy for to sende to Eneas / But  
 noo body durst not auenture for to goo to hym, by  
 cause that they knew not the contrey :

CAP. XLIII.

Some ships  
escape.The Italians set  
a guard to watch  
the Trojan camp  
at night.From ignorance  
of the country  
no one dares to  
go to acquaint  
Eneas with the  
danger.

20 ¶ How Vysus and Eryalus made theym  
 redy for to entre vpon the oost of Turnus

## ¶ Capitulum xliij

\*  
 24 **W**Han came toward the mornynge, the ytalyens  
 that assured, were not doubted of ony body  
 that myght greue hem / feHe aslepe, alle fulle of metes  
 and of wynes / Thenne visus that kept the gate, be-  
 though[t] hym self, and sayde to his felawe : “Goode  
 28 brother, loke how the ytalyens be weHe assured In  
 theyr tentes / there is nowe no lyght atte aHe, and  
 they be alle a slepe / I wylle goo In-to theyre oost, for  
 to make slawghter of theym / And after I shalle goo  
 32 to Eneas In pallence / For I shalle fynde well the  
 waye thyder. and yf I may brynge thys myn entrepryse  
 to purpos, I shal be rewarded ryght welle therfore” /  
 Whan Eryalus vnderstode hys felawe that spacke soo /

[\* leaf I 7]

Nisus proposes  
to sally out at  
night on the  
Italians, and  
then go to tell  
Aeneas of the  
siege.

## CAP. XLIV.

Euryalus insists  
on going too.

They tell  
Ascanius.

Ascanius  
consents,

and promises  
great rewards  
for their  
courage.

he answered hym anone in thys manere / “ Ha a, goode  
and true felawe, we haue be so famylier, and haue hadde  
so goode felyship togyder, and nowe ye wyH vndertake  
this thyng without me / ye shalle knowe, that without 4  
my companye, ye shalle nowhere goo ” / They bothe  
togyder went to Ascanyus, and to the other that were  
in counceyHe, for to wyte whom they myght sende to  
En[e]as / Thenne spake visus, and sayde how they had 8  
entreprysed y<sup>e</sup> waye for to goo to eneas / and whan  
Ascanyus vnderstode theym, he toke theym in his  
arnes alle wepyng / and sayde to theym: “ O ye  
knyghtes! who shall mowe yelde to you so grete a 12  
meryte of so grete hardynes *that* ye haue enterprised  
for to doo? the goddes shall rewarde you / first ther-  
fore / & after, my fader eneas, & also my self, that neuer  
shalle forgete thesame whiles that I shall lyue / and 16  
also I telle you, that yf ye bryng me my fader agayn,  
I shall neuer haue so grete a lordsip / but that ye  
shalle haue part of thesame / and ye shaH be proferred  
In alle maneres /

20

¶ H[o]w visus and eryalus entred in y<sup>e</sup> tentes  
of turnus oost, & made grete slawghter &  
destruccion / ¶ Capitulum. xliiij

[\* leaf I 7, back]

\* **W**Han vysus, and eryalus his felawe, were 24  
armed & arayed, they yssued oute of the  
gates moche richely appareylled, and weH  
mounted vpon two goode horses, stronge & able and  
weH rennyng / And thus they entred in-to the lodges 28  
of theyr enmyes, whom they fonde a slepe / Thenne  
spake Vysus to Eryalus, and sayd, “ felaw myn, this thyng  
somoneth vs for to proue oure hardynes. Now holde the  
behynde, & kepe that none escape, and I shaHe goo 32  
forthe, and shaHe make large the waye ” / And whan he  
hadde that sayd, he loked wythin a tente / and sawe a  
kyng lyenge, that was grete frende with kyng Turnus /

The sally of  
Nisus and  
Euryalus.

For he entermytted hymselfe for to telle that that was  
 to come, & of many other thynges / The same, dyde  
 vysus smyte his hede of / and thenne they made occy-  
 4 sion soo that no bodye durste moeue ; for they sawe  
 theym armed / and theyr swerdes aH bloody / Thus  
 lasted this euyH aduenture almoste to the daye / thenne  
 came they to Mesapus tente, & sawe fyre lighte ; thenne  
 8 sayd vysus, “ good felawe, late vs take on our waye, for  
 it is almost daye. we haue hurte our enmyes ful sore ;  
 and also we be wery ” / thenne went they awaye, & left  
 there moche rychesse *that* they myghte haue taken yf  
 12 they had wolde ; but they wente oute of the tentes, &  
 walked streighte y<sup>e</sup> waye towarde palence, for to goo to  
 enneas their lorde, that was departed thens alrede, wyth  
 palas, the valyaunte and noble knyghte :

CAP. XLV.

A terrible  
 slaughter made  
 by Nisus and  
 Euryalus.

As day ap-  
 proaches they  
 set out for  
 Palence,  
 abandoning all  
 plunder.

16 ¶ How the two felawes loste eche other in  
 the forest / whan the knyghtes of laurence  
 chased theym. ¶ Capitulum xlv.

20 **A**Nd whilis that they wente faste awaye from the  
 tentes, Foure hondred knyghtes were yssued  
 oute of lawrence, aH armed / & wente to  
 turnus, for to bere tidynges from the kynge Latyne /  
 And whan they werre \*comen nyghe the tentes, they  
 24 sawe ouer atte the other syde, the two felawes that  
 went the waye to Palence / Also they perceyued theym  
 by theire helmes that they hadde on theyre hedes, that  
 resplendyshed ayenst the mone / Bolcus thenne went  
 28 ayenst theym, and caHed, “ Abyde ye ; And teHe me  
 what ye be, and from whens ye comme ” / They answerde  
 not, but withdrewe theymself toward the forest. And  
 than bolcus<sup>1</sup> and his men spored there horses, and  
 32 chased theym / but<sup>2</sup> they were alrede withyn the

[\* leaf I 8]

Nisus and  
 Euryalus are  
 pursued by a  
 band of horse-  
 men coming  
 from  
 Laurentum.

<sup>1</sup> orig. botcus<sup>2</sup> orig. bul



CAP. XLV. forest, where as they lost eche other ryghte soone / For  
vysus dyde putte hym self in-tyl a path, and was soone  
goon ferre from hys enmyes. And Eryalus entred in to

[<sup>1</sup> orig. thilkke]

Nisus and  
Euryalus lose  
one another in  
the forest.

a thikke<sup>1</sup> busshe, where he founde nothre pathe nor 4  
noo waye atte aHe; and so he coude not flee ferre from  
hys enmyes that chassed hym / Vysus, that alre dy was  
escaped sauf, loked behynde hym, and sawe not his  
felawe nor Erialus were, wherof he was ryght sore 8  
angri; And sore sighynge, he began to saye, "O swete  
felawe, where haue I lost the? where myght I seke  
the?" And whan he hade said this, he retourned ayen  
bak that waye that he came. And he had not gon longe, 12  
that he herde the noyse of the horses about erialus, that  
his enmyes had taken alre dy; and aslong as he myght,  
he had deffended him self; but aHe that he coude doo,  
awayhed him not / visus went so longe rennyng, tyl 16  
that he sawe his enmyes about his felawes whiche they  
helde / Thenne he wist not what to doo, nor how he  
myght delynere hym from theyr handes. And whan  
he had aduysed hym ynoughe, he loked vpon a dart 20  
that he helde in his hande, and threwe it with aHe his  
strengthe, and smotte a knyght betwene two sholdres  
therwith-aHe, so that the yron went thrughe the body  
of hym, whiche feHe doune ded to the grounde frome 24

[\* leaf I 8, back]

Nisus returns,  
and endeavours  
to resete him,  
slaying several  
of the Latins.

hys horse / Hys felawes that sawe thys, loked \*alle  
aboute theym / and had grete merueylle / and wyste  
not fro whens that myghte come / And whiles that  
they merueylled theym selfe of suche a fortune that 28  
was come thus sodaynly to theym, Vysus casted ayen  
a nother darte, and smote a nother of theym in the  
breste, and soo slewe hym, and feH down ded afore his  
felawes, that were therof sore abasshed.

32

¶ How Bolcus slewe eryalus, & how Vysus  
his felawe slewe Bolcus / Of the deth of  
the sayd Vysus / & how y<sup>e</sup> hedes of the

sayd two felawes, eryalus & vysus, were  
brought vpon two speres afore the fortres  
of Eneas. CAP. XLVI.

Cap. xlvj

4 **T**Henne beganne boleus, the conestable, to be alle  
fornced wyth grete rage, for to knowe fro whom  
these strokes cam / & in a grete anger sayd to  
eryalus, "who euer hath doon y<sup>e</sup> same, y<sup>e</sup> peynes therof  
8 shaH abyde vpon y<sup>e</sup> / & with y<sup>e</sup> swerde aH naked in  
his fust, cam nygh hym / & wold slee hym. & whan  
vysus sawe this, he coude no lenger suffre it, by cause  
that he wolde not see hys felawe to be slayn / but he  
12 began to crye, "late hym be in peas / & take me, &  
putte me to dethe! For he hath forfayte nothyng."  
While that vysus spake thise wordes / boleus smote  
eryalus wyth his swerde thorough the body of hym, &  
16 wythoute moo wordes kylled hym. And whan vysus  
sawe the same, he ranne ayenste theym alle, and  
adressed hym towarde boleus wyth his swerde in his  
fuste; and so nyghe he approached hym / that whan he  
20 dyd ascrye vpon his men that they sholde take hym /  
vysus smote hym wyth his goode swerde thurgh the  
mouthe, that he made hit to come oute at the necke of  
hym / soo that he slewe hym, and fylle down ded afore  
24 hym & aH his folke / His knyghtes that sawe hym  
thus slayne, ranne alle vpon vysus oute of alle sides /  
soo that they gaaffe to hym his deth \*wounde / and  
neuertheles he defended hym selfe vygoryously as longe  
28 that he myghte stande. But his ennyes charged hym  
soo often wyth grete strokes of their swerdes wel sharpe  
cuttynge / that he spred hym selfe vpon his felawe  
Eryalus / and soo fynysshed there his lyff / Thenne  
32 toke the ytalyens their armures, and that they bare /  
and the body of theyr lorde Bolcus / and<sup>1</sup> departe  
wyth grete heuynesse, and wente to the lodges of Turnus

Volocens  
(Boleus) slays  
his prisoner  
Euryalus, while  
Nisus offers to  
take his place.

Nisus slays  
Volocens,

[\* sign. K j]

and is in turn  
slain himself.

The Italians take  
the bodies to  
Turnus's camp.

<sup>1</sup> orig. and

## CAP. XLVII.

Great lamentation for those slain by Nisus and Euryalus.

The heads of Nisus and Euryalus cut off and set on spears before the Trojan camp.

The siege is renewed furiously, and the Trojans defend themselves with vigour.

[\* sign. K j, back]

Fire and scaling-ladders are brought by the besiegers.

ooste: And whan they cam / they sawe there theym  
that made grete sorowe & grete cryes for theym that  
were slayn wythin the tentes / Whan thenne the daye  
was come / Turnus commaunded that aHe the ooste sholde 4  
be armed / And that euery prynce sholde ordeyne his  
folke for to assaylle the casteH / And they dyd soo by  
grete wrathe / And thenne turnus made the hedes of  
eryalus and Vysus to be smytten of from theyr bodyes / 8  
and sette vpon two speres, and broughte theym afore  
the castell wyth a grete noyse & grete caHyng / for  
to fere and abasshe the troians therwyth, that were  
wythin wyth Ascanyus, the sone of eneas. Whan they 12  
of the casteH sawe theym, they were fuH sory & sore  
tryste / and anone they ordeyned theyr folke, & putte  
theym in araye for to defende the place. And thenne  
they of the ooste blew vp their trompettes for to gyue 16  
a sharpe sawte / And taried not, but dyde hie them  
for to fylle the dyches / and for to dresse vp the laddres  
ayenste the walles / And they that were there vpon the  
walles, brake theyr sheldes and theyr pauesses / And 20  
the hardy knyghtes troians that had lerned for to de-  
fende / casted vpon theym grete logges, wyth sharpe  
yron atte the ende, and gret stones. They that cam  
firste to assawte the place, myght not suffre no lenger 24  
the strengthe of the troians, that were vpon the walles  
of theyr fortresse. For they brake theyr sheldys &  
\* helmes and theire limmes & aH-to burst theyre bodyes /  
whan Mesancus sawe this, he made fyre to be cast to 28  
theym / and Mesapus made the diches to be filled vp,  
& the ladders to be sette vpwarde ayenst the walles /

¶ How the assawte was grete atte the gate  
of the castel / ¶ Capitulum xlvij 32

**B**Efore the gate of the casteH was a grete toure,  
and knyghtes were within, that deffended it:  
they that were without, assailed strongly, & by

grete rudesse / and all they that were within, deffended  
 theymselſ ryght weH & vigorousli / but they of y<sup>e</sup> oost  
 made so greete force ayenst them, that they dyde sette  
 4 the toure on a fire / and whan they of within sawe the  
 toure, that brenned alle in a flame, they were aferde to  
 be brente there-ynne, so that they most nedes haban-  
 douzne it. And thenne they wolde haue yssued out  
 8 aienst them of the oost, but the toure fille seone down /  
 And thus alle they that were within, were ded, sauf<sup>1</sup>  
 two of hem, Elenor and Elecor / And whan elenor sawe  
 hymself amonge his enmyes, he ranne vpon theym with  
 12 his swerde in his hande, as he *that* wolde not escape,  
 nor saue his lyffe / But elecor, that was ryght swyfte  
 & lyght, fled toward the castel for his waraunt.

CAP. XLVIII.

The gate-tower  
of the camp  
is burned down.The garrison are  
lost, save  
Elecor, who  
flies towards the  
camp.

¶ How Eneas came ayen from palence with  
 16 moche folke for to socoure his sone & his  
 folke ayenst turnus / ¶ Capitulum xlvij

**M**Any were there slayne, of one part, of the other /  
 but the assawte was lefte, for the nyght that  
 20 came thenne vpon, toke awaye fro theym the  
 light of the daye. The troyens kept weH theire walles /  
 For they knewe weH that on the morowe they sholde  
 be assayned agayn. Eneas<sup>2</sup> thenne, that was goon for  
 24 to seke helpe and socours, and had with hym all the  
 barons, and namely the kynge Carton / \*abode not  
 longe after this / But that he came wyth .xxx. shippes  
 weH laden with men of armes, whiche approched soo  
 28 moche that they came to the socours of theym / that  
 awayted sore after theym, And that hadde grete  
 nede of helpe. / Whan Turnus<sup>3</sup> vnderstode thise  
 tidynges, he wente agaynste theym wythoute taryenge.  
 32 Alle the sayd shippes entred wythin the haven, excepte  
 the shippe of kynge Carton, that was to grete. Turnus

The assault  
ceases at night.The Trojans still  
hold their walls.

[\* sign. K ij]

Aeneas comes  
with 30 ships  
and lands his  
men.King Carton's  
ship alone is left  
outside the  
harbour.<sup>1</sup> orig. fauf<sup>2</sup> orig. Eeasn<sup>3</sup> orig. Turnus

## CAP. XLIX.

Aeneas lands his  
men despite the  
opposition of  
Turnus.

A fierce battle.

Aeneas slays  
many Italians.

Turnus slays  
Pallas and takes  
his ring.

Ascanius and  
his men sally  
out of the camp.

peyned hymselfe full sore, and his knyghtes also, for  
to lette theym of theyr landyng / But Eneas, that wyth  
his barons that were in his ship wyth hym, was landed  
first of alle / And defended the porte ayenst the 4  
ytalyens, tyll that all the folke were come alande /  
Thenne beganne the bussynes and the trompettes for  
to blowe, of the one parte / And of the other, Eneas,  
atte his comynge vpon, he ouerthrewe & slewe Sythera, 8  
that was moche rychely armed, and of noble and ryche  
armes / And after, Latam, & also the geaunte / that  
bare a clubbe / wherwyth he hadde take the lyff awaye  
of many troians. there sholde haue enneas adommaged 12  
turnus ryght sore, yf it hadde not be a heuy aduenture  
that happed; For Turnus slewe there Palas, the sone  
of kyng euander / & whan he was ded, he toke awaye  
from hym a riche rynge of golde / Whan Palas was 16  
slayne, there was made grete sorowe for hym, of Eneas /  
and of his felawes / But therfore ceassed not the  
bataille. his men bare hym oute of the bataille /  
And made for hym grete sorowe Whan Eneas knewe 20  
it, he came all wrothe and sore an-angred vpon his  
enmyes, whiche he hewed and slewe wyth his swerde,  
as preu and hardy that he was. Thenne yssued oute of  
the casteil, Ascanyus his sone / and the goode knyghtes 24  
troians that were enclosed therin / and that hadde  
suffred grete assawtes the daye afore.

[\* leaf K ij, back]

¶ \* How Eneas sought Turnus alle a-boute  
In the bataile, for to slee hym for the 28  
dethe of Palas. ¶ Cap<sup>o</sup> xlix

Aeneas seeks  
Turnus in the  
battle.

**E**Neas was thurgh the bataille, sekyng a-bout  
after Turnus, that was ryght valyaunt / preu,  
and hardy In bataille / The fende, that sawe 32  
that Eneas sought Turnus for to slee hym / that wolde  
not that he sholde be ded so soone, to thende that he





CAP. L.

¶ How Eneas smote Merencyus wyth his  
spere in his thye a grete stroke :

Capitulum. L.

Aeneas, seeking  
Turnus in the  
press, slays  
many Italians.Turnus, to his  
horror, is carried  
away by the  
current to  
Ardea, his father  
Daunus's city.Mezentius, his  
son Lausus, and  
Messapus slay  
many Trojans.[\* sign. K iij,  
back]

**D**Vrynge this while that Turnus wende to haue 4  
chassed Eneas / was enneas in the thyekest presse  
of the bataylle, callynge after Turnus wyth a  
hyghe voys / and broughte many ytalyens to their deth  
wyth his swerde. Turnus, that sawe hym selfe brought 8  
ferre from the shores / knewe weH thenne that he  
was deceyued, and wyste not what he myghte doo, nor  
where he sholde become / soo sore an-angred he was /  
whan he founde hym selfe in that plyght. Thenne 12  
be heued vp his handes towarde heuen swetly, and  
began to calle vpon Iupyer / why he hadde broughte  
hym to this grete sorowe / that he sawe his folke  
that were kylled & slayne afore his eyen / And that 16  
he myghte in no wyse socoure theym / one tyme he  
thought for to slee hym selfe / another tyme he wolde  
haue drowned hym selfe / And while *that* he was thus  
in this thought for to doo the one or thother, y<sup>e</sup> shippe 20  
went doune the ryuer of tonyre, wyth the streme *that*  
was so bigge, tyH that it cam in-to the hauen of the  
cyte of darda, where as kyng daryus, the fader of turnus,  
was. Merencius was yet in the batayH, & forced hymselfe 24  
to dystroye & sle enneas folke / & wyth hym was his  
sone Lansus, *that* was preu & hardy / this merencyus  
ranne vpon the troians with grete force, his swerde in  
his hande, & made grete fayttes of armes / he slew 28  
aeren, & Merende, & many other / mesapus made also  
grete slaughter of the troians / for he slewe Lamon &  
lycormon, cycartem, & many other worthi folke. thus  
were medled y<sup>e</sup> bataylles. merencyus confounded & 32  
distroyed wyth \*his swerde aHe that he fonde afore  
hym / And whan Eneas sawe hym, he beganne to



come towarde hym. and Merencyus byhelde hym  
 comynge / whom he doubted not / And eneas auauunced  
 hymselfe soone / and launched at hym his grete  
 4 espyotte or spere / and smote hym thorughe the thye /  
 whan Merencyus sawe the bloode come oute, he was  
 therof sore an-angred / And anone ranne vpon Eneas /  
 sayenge that he sholde auenge it vpon hym / But his  
 8 knyghtes toke hym, and hadde hym awaye fro the  
 bataylle / for his wounde bled aHe to sore / and yet  
 was a parte of the spere wythin / that greued hym  
 ryght sore :

CAP. LI.

Aeneas wounds  
Mezentius.Mezentius is  
removed by his  
knights.

12 ¶ How Merencyus made grete sorowe /  
 whan he sawe his sone dede

## Capitulum Lj

26 **W**Han Lansus sawe his fader merencyus thus sore  
 hurte, he wexed therof aH full of wrathe /  
 And assembled ayen aHe the bataylles togyder / and  
 ranne vpon Eneas. There was slayne many knyghtes  
 of the one parte / and of the other, eneas smote Lansus  
 20 wyth his swerde vpon his helme, and cloue hym vnto  
 the teeth. there was grete sorowe made whan Lansus  
 was ded / Durynge the while that this happed,  
 Merencyus, wyth a grete flote of knyghtes, was  
 24 descended vpon the ryuage of the Tonyre, and made  
 his wounde to be shwed vppe, that was yet full sore /  
 Thenne asked he after his sone Lansus, and com-  
 maunded that he sholde be broughte from the ooste ;  
 28 And that he wolde wyte how he hadde mayntened hym  
 selfe in<sup>1</sup> the bataylle, For he wolde here and knowe  
 of his proesse / And as he spake thyse wordes /  
 They came wyth the corpus / making gret mone, &  
 32 cryeng full heuely. merencyus knewe soone *that* it was  
 his sone / for his herte was heuy & full of tristesse /  
 who thenne had seen hym complayne & sighe, wolde

A great  
slaughter.Aeneas slays  
Lansus.Grief of  
Mezentius for  
his son.<sup>1</sup> orig. in

CAP. LI.  
[\* sign. K iiiij]

Mezentius has  
his wound bound  
up, and goes to  
take vengeance  
on Aeneas.

He calls Aeneas.

Terrible fight  
between Aeneas  
and Mezentius.

Mezentius is  
slain.

Night separates  
the combatants.

\*]haue hadde grete merueyHe / He rented his clothes,  
and tare hys herys from his owne hede, and was an-  
angered and wrothe without mesure / And whan he  
hadde sorowed longe ynoughe, he made hys thye to be 4  
dressed and bounden vp / And commaunded that hys  
hors sholde be brought to hym, for to goo to the  
batayH, to auenge y<sup>e</sup> dethe of his sone vpon Eneas /  
And whan he was sette ahorsbacke, he toke a darte for 8  
to launche or cast / and thenne he went streyghte to  
the batayHe / And, as a worthy knyghte, smote amonge  
hys enmyes. And anone he dyde caH Eneas with a  
hyghe voyce / Eneas herde hym, and came towarde 12  
hym / and whan he sawe hym, he sayde to hym /  
“Nowe, Eneas, that hast slayne my sone, I am here  
present, and wote not whether I shaH here deye / but  
or that I deye, I shaH gyue the suche strokes *that* shalbe 16  
to thy grete grief /” And thenne he launched to hym  
a darte sore harde, And syn another; and after, the  
thirde. Eneas ranne about, that durst not abyde hym /  
And after this, Eneas myght suffer hym noo lenger, but 20  
went vpon hym with a spere, and wende to haue stryke  
hym with it / But he myssed of hym, & smote his hors  
so that he feH, and Merencyus vnder hym / Thenne  
rose there a grete noyse and a grete crye of Merencyus 24  
folke, that came there aH to gyder with theyre swerdes  
naked: But Eneas, that sawe Merencynus agrounde,  
came towarde hym or euer he coude be vpon hys fete,  
and gaffe hym suche a stroke with his swerde, that he 28  
slewe hym. Thenne were they of the oost aH dyscom-  
fytet. And more dommage they sholde haue hadde,  
yf the nyghte hadde not departed theym one from  
another.

¶ How Eneas sent the body of Palas In to  
the shyppe, & sente It to his fader /

¶ Capitulum : .liij.

4 \* **T**Henne went they of the ooste towarde laurence,  
and Eneas toward his fortresse / but they  
coude not entre aHe wythynne, But lodged  
theymsel without vpon the ryuere. And whan the  
8 mornynge came, Eneas made to take the corpus of  
palas, and made it to be moche rychely appareißed, as  
to a sone of a kynge apparteyneth, & putte it in to a  
shippe / and sent him ayen to his fader, with the gayne  
12 of the knyghtes, & wyth the proye that they had gotten  
afore that he deyed / The messagers that bare hym,  
recounted weH his grete proesse, and retourned ayen  
assoone as they myght comme / Ouer longe a thyng  
16 it were, for to reherce the sorowe that his fader  
Euander made, & his moder in lykewyse, for his  
dethe / And in this maner while, came messagers out  
of Laurence, with brannches of olyue tree, & asked  
20 tryewes of eneas, for to take vp the dede bodies, & gyue  
theym sepultures / eneas graunted theym their request  
gladly for / xii dayes. And whan this triewe was  
graunted, eneas saide to the messagers / “ha, a, lordes  
24 latyne, what aduenture is it that maketh you to fyght  
ayenst me that wolde be your frende? Ye requyre me  
of peas & tryewes for theym that ben deed / but ye  
shaH vnderstande, that more gladli I wolde gyue them  
28 to theym that lyue. For I trowed not for to haue  
fought here / nor I come not hither for to fight, yf ye  
wolde leue me in peas / but I come here by the com-  
mandement of the goddes, for to haue a dweHyng  
32 place. Nor I fight not with them of laurence; but I  
make were aienst turnus, that wold haue lauyne, the  
doughter of kynge Latynus, ayenst the wille of the

[\*sign. K iiij,  
back]

The body of  
Pallas sent  
home to  
Evander.

Evander  
sorrows.

A truce to bury  
the dead.

Aeneas remon-  
strates with the  
people of  
Laurentum for  
fighting against  
him.

## CAP. LIH.

Aeneas proposes single combat with Turnus, to settle their differences.

[\* leaf K 5]

The Latin messengers report Aeneas's speech to Latinus.

The bodies are burnt.

The ladies of Laurentium curse Turnus for beginning the war.

goddess. And yf turnus wyl haue vs out of this  
royalme, me semeth that it were fulle couenable a  
thyng, that he & I sholde fight togyder, body ayenst  
body / & that he that sholde haue the victorie ouer 4  
the other / he sholde haue the puceHe lawy\*ne, & her  
faders good wyHe with-aHe / and the other that were  
ouercome, sholde lese his lyffe. And thus, they that  
be not gylty, sholde not deye, nor y<sup>e</sup> londe not be 8  
dystroyed / Nowe goo youre waye, & reporte to the  
kyng that that I haue saide, & that I wyH abyde by.  
And that he doo me to knowe yf Turnus wiH be  
agreable to the same" / The messagers were moche 12  
merueyHed of hys fydelyte, & of that that he had  
sayde; and they toke theire leue, and retourned ayen  
toward the kyng / to whome they declared aH alonge,  
aHe that enecas hadde sayde vnto theym, and that 16  
the triews were gyuen. And incontyent they made  
theym redy for to brenne the bodyes ded; and lyke  
wise dyde enecas, of the other syde; & ye ought to  
knowe, that grete sorowe was there made by theym 20  
that hadde lost theire frendes in the bataylle. The  
ladyes of the cyte cursed turnus, & the owre in  
whiche he bigan first the bataylle, for to haue the  
doughter of kyng latyn / Thus lasted the sorowe thre 24  
dayes and thre nyghtes, that they neuer dyde cease /

¶ Of the messagers that Turnus hadde sent  
to dyomedes. Capitulum. Liij

**T**Henne assembled agayne kyng Latynus his 28  
barons, for to haue counceyHe what he myghte  
doo agaynst Eneas, that wolde not but peas and con-  
corde / And while that they were comynge to this  
counceyHe, the messagers that turnus had sente to 32  
Dyomedes / whan he soughte his ayde for to fighte  
ayenste Eneas / and that bare to Dyomedes ryche  
presentes in-to the cyte of Agryppa, whiche is in one

Venus returns to Latinus, from his embassy to Dionides at Agryppa,

of the partyes of PuyHe / where Dyomedes hadde  
 dwelled euer syth the tyme that he was departed  
 frome byfore the cyte of / Troye, And helde there the  
 4 cyte and the lordeshyppes, After that he came agayne  
 \*from puyHe: The kynge commaunded that they  
 sholde comme afore hym, for to telle what they hadde  
 founde / vernylus began to speke ahyghe, and sayde /  
 8 “Barons and lordes, we dyde see Dyomedes, and a grete  
 parte of theym that were with hym afore Troye / we  
 made to hym due reuerence, and tolde hym what we  
 were, and who hadde sende vs / And also tolde hym  
 12 ayenst whome we wolde make werre, And dyde  
 presente vnto hym the yeftes that we bare vnto hym  
 from the kyng Latyne / & whan kynge dyomedes  
 hadde herde vs / he dyde answeere to vs peasybly, and  
 16 sayde / “Ha a ! folke of ytalye, what aduenture commeth  
 nowe to you ? I lette you wite for certayne, that we that  
 dyde fyghte ayenst the Troyens, and that theyre lordes  
 we dyde dystroye, Gatte nor waune therby nothyng /  
 20 For howe be it that Pryamus the kynge was dyscom-  
 fyted, and his knyghtes destroyed, Right soo was  
 Agamenon loste and slayne, that cheffe gouernoure was  
 a boue vs aHe, by the meanes of his wyf that loued  
 24 more another than she dyde hym, whiche holdeth nowe  
 the londe. what shaHe I telle you of the vnhappy  
 Pyrrus, nor of the other grekes, nor of my self / wyte  
 weH that I shaH neuer fyght ayenst the Troyens, yf I  
 28 may. For more wors it is to vs happed in dyuerse  
 maner, of that we dyde fyght ayenst theym, than it is  
 to theym for to haue be dyscomfyted by vs. But goo  
 youre waye ageyne, and here thees gyftes vnto enecas, &  
 32 ye shaH doo wysely / & I lete you wite, *that* wyth hym  
 I haue foughte, body ayenste body / and by cause *that*  
 I haue founde hym of so grete strengthe and proesse,  
 I saye yet that, yf he had nowe with him two houndred  
 36 knyghtes suche as he is, & in theyre companye, hector &

CAP. LIII.

[\* leaf K 5, back]

with Diomedes's  
answer.Diomedes will  
not fight against  
the Trojans,  
and advises  
Latinus to make  
peace with  
Aeneas.Misfortunes  
befell all the  
Greeks that  
helped in the  
destruction of  
Troy.

CAP. LIV.

[\* leaf K 6]

Diomedes  
recounts the  
heroism of  
Aeneas.

troylus / aHe grece myght be soone bi theym aHe  
wasted & distroied ; and weH ye oughte this to beleue  
of me, for I haue assayed hym / And \*Also ye muste  
vnderstande for veraye certeyne, that aH the reeystence 4  
that was made ayenst vs grekes afore Troye, it was  
made by the strengthe of Eneas, of Ector, and of  
Troylus / that socoured and reioysed the other. And  
were almoste equalle, Hector, Eneas & Troylus ; But 8  
eneas was of more symple corage : Retourne agayn  
toward eneas, and make peas wyth hym, yf ye be sage.”

¶ How kynge Latyne counseyllled for to  
make peas wyth Eneas.

12

## Capitulum Liiij°

**W**Han the messagers hadde thus reported their  
wordes / grete spekyng arose thurgh aH  
the halle / And whan it was ceassed, the 16  
kyng spake and sayd / “ Lordes, I wolde we hadde goode  
counseyH afore that more damage sholde come to vs /  
We be not wyse for to fyghte agaynste eneas, as longe  
as that the goddes wyH be on his side ; Nor ayenste 20  
his folke that neuer were very for no batayHe that  
they hadde. Now truste nomore vpon Dyomedes ; lete  
vs thynke and see how we shaH mowe eschewe this  
paryeH / For vpon vs falleth the werke / and I maye 24  
nomore helpe my selfe. wherfore I haue bethoughte me  
of one thinge / that is to saye, a pece of londe *that*  
marcheth toward cecylle : Lete vs gyue that grounde  
to the Troians / and accorde vs to theym. And yf they 28  
loue the countrey, lete vs suffre<sup>1</sup> theym for to buylde  
there townes, cytees and castelles : And yf they wyH  
not doo soo, but wyll go in some other countrey, I shaH  
doo make for theym ryche shippes<sup>2</sup> and goode / And 32  
shaH doo delyuere vnto theym aH that they shaH  
nede / And I shaHe now sende vnto Eneas ryche

Latinus pro-  
poses to give the  
Trojans a tract  
of land next  
Sicily.

If they like to  
stay, let them  
build there, if  
not he will  
expedite their  
departure.

<sup>1</sup> orig. suffre<sup>2</sup> orig. shippes



presentes, for to knowe his wylle in this byhalue."

CAP. LIV.

Thenne rose vppe an hondred knyghtes, *that* sayd they shold goo to eneas ; & also drastes, *that* loued not turnus, 4 sayd in this wyse to y<sup>e</sup> kyng / "haa, goode \* kyng ! aHe they that ben here, knowe weH wheronto the thyng is come, but none dare speke hyt / Alle we oughte to putte ourselfe in peyne for to haue peas / For many a 8 man is aH-redy ded / wherby Eneas is wexed more stronge / Graunte vnto hym your doughter / for she shaH be weH employed wyth this two yestes that ye doo promytte to hym : And thus shaH we haue peas / 12 And yf ye dare not doo it for Turnus / I shaH mow praye hym fyrste, that he haue mercy of me and of other / And that he take the hardynes vpon hym for to fyghte hym selfe alone / For folke ynunghe are aH 16 redy slayne / wherby the lande is dystroyed / And yf he feleth in hym selfe<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> vertue & strengthe for to haue your doughter and the royame by force / Lete hym fyghte, body ayenst body, to his enmye that 20 calleth hym therto / and that he wyH not see that the poure people be dystroyed / and that he haue in-to his remembraunce the proesse of his fader, and that he goo ayenste Eneas, for to fyghte wyth hym, hande for 24 hande" / And whan turnus, that was come ayen to Lawrence, herde the erle Drastes speke soo, he toke it in a grete anger ; For he knewe weH that he loued<sup>2</sup> hym not / and thenne he spake by grete anger, and 28 sayd : "Thou haste grete habondaunce of wordes wyth y<sup>e</sup>. whosomeuer fyghte, thou wylte not come nyghe yf thou mayste kepe the a side / But in the ples amonge the senatours, thou wylte be the firste that shaH speke / 32 and therof we haue not to doo nowe" / And yet sayd Turnus to Drastes, afore kyng Latynus, that he neuer sawe dyomedes fyghte wyth eneas / but and yf Eneas came ayenst hym / he sholde not refuse hym, nor flee

100 knights offer to go to Aeneas with the proposal.

[\* leaf K 6, back]

Drances advises the King to give his daughter in marriage to Aeneas, and Turnus to engage Aeneas in single combat,

to save the lives of the poor people.

Turnus replies fiercely to Drances, but does not refuse to fight Aeneas.

<sup>1</sup> orig. felfe

<sup>2</sup> orig. loned



CAP. LV. ferre from hym / But sholde gladly fyghte wyth hym,  
thoughe he were as stronge as the deuyH :

[\* leaf K 7] ¶ \* how eneas came afore the cyte of laurence.

Cap<sup>o</sup> lv 4

Report that  
Aeneas and the  
Tuscans march  
on Laurentum.

Uproar in the  
city.

Turnus arrays  
his men.

The ladies curse  
Aeneas now.

Queen Canulla  
(Camilla) begs of  
Turnus the first  
combat with  
Aeneas.

**D**Vryng that thise wordes were, the sayd Eneas had  
ordeyned his folke for to come afore the cyte  
of laurence / thenne came a messenger, cryng to  
the kynge & to the barons, that the troiens were 8  
departed from their tentes for to comme and take the  
cyte by force / ¶ Thenne was the cyte aHe in a rore  
and sore moeued ; the cytezeyns ranne to fette their  
harneys, and made stones to be borne vpon the waffes 12  
for to deffende theym / ¶ Turnus went and armed  
hymself, and commaunded to his folke that they sholde  
be redy right soone for to yssue out with hym / Turnus  
dyde putte his folke in araye, & made his bussynes and 16  
trompettes to be blowen, and yssued out to the bataille.  
¶ The queene Amatha, & lauyne her doughter, because  
of this euyH aduenture that was moeued, and the other  
ladyes, went vp in-to the temple of Mynerue, for to see 20  
the assembles, & who sholde flee, & who sholde abyde,  
and who sholde doo moost of armes / And sore they  
cursed Eneas and aHe his felyship. ¶ Whan Turnus  
was yssued out of the toure aHe armed / The quene 24  
Canulla, with aHe companye of knyghtes, and of may-  
dens aHe armed, came toward hym, And demaunded  
the fyrst batayHe ayenst Eneas and hys knytes and  
that Turnus sholde abyde wythin for to kepe the waffes 28  
of the cyte / And she sayde, “ syre, lete me doo with the  
bataylle ” / Turnus behelde her thenne, and sayde, “ Ha  
a Lady, that are aHe the proesse of Ytalye, who shalle  
mowe Rewarde you the meryte of the goodewylle that 32  
ye shewe nowe vnto me / I lete you wyte, that to me  
are come messagers, whiche doo teHe me that Eneas  
sendeth here afore, one part of hys folke and of hys

- knyghtes; And that the other comen aHe away by the \*mountayne, and wylle assaylle the towne atte the other side. And I shaH telle you what I haue thought
- 4 for to doo / I shaHe putte my selfe wyth my folke vpon the mountayne, emonge the bussches that enuyronne the grounde, there wyth mani archers, and my crosbowes and my knyghtes. And whan our enmyes shaH be
- 8 come in to / the narrow waye / we shaHe thenne sette vpon theym / and shaH bere to theym gret damage. and ye, lady, wyth your folke, ye shaH abyde atte this side, for to goo vpon the troians whan they shaH come /”
- 12 And thenne came there Mesapus wyth a goode bande of folke, whiche Turnus exhorted for to doo weH / and that he sholde fyghte that daye vnder the banner of the noble & preu lady CanuHa / And after that he
- 16 hadde sette aH his knyghtes in goode arraye, he departed wyth his felawshippe for to go wayte after Eneas, atte the descendyng of the hille / And the quene CanuHa, and Mesapus, & conroe, & his broder
- 20 caules, rode aH armed in fayre ordonaunce vnto the barryers: Thenne the troians hasted themselfe for to come afore the towne / But assone that they myghte espye eche other, they approched for to fyght togyder.
- 24 they thenne lete renne theiyr horses / And gaaff grete strokes, the one to the other, wyth their speres. And atte their comynge hande to hande togyder, there was grete noyse of horses and of harneys / And they
- 28 launched and shotte soo thycke and soo faste, the one partye ayenste the other, that aH the ayer was troubled / The Latynes hadde the wors atte the firste comynge togyder / For the troians rebuked theym / and caste
- 32 theym abacke vnto the gates of the towne ¶ Thenne retourned agayne the chyeff capytaynes of the Latynes, wyth theyr companye weH horsed, vpon the troians. and beganne the medle and the crye of newe / And the
- 36 Latynes bare theym selfe fuH weH a \* while, that by

CAP. LV.

[\* leaf K 7, back]

Turnus agrees to occupy the mountain passes and leave Canilla the plain.

The forces are disposed.

The Trojans advance on Laurentum.

A bloody battle.

The Latins are repulsed.

They renew the battle.

[\* leaf K 8]

CAP. LVI.

force of armes they made the troyens to retourne bak /  
 But atte the last, the troyens that were neuer wery of  
 bataylles / made there merueyHes of armes, so that the  
 latynes myght susteyne noo lenger the weyght of theyre 4  
 swerdes / but were ageyne putte abak /

The Latins are  
 repulsed again.

¶ How the queene Canula was slayne In  
 bataylle. ¶ Capitulum / lvj

**T**Hus It happed that tyme, that the Latynes were 8  
 putte twyes abacke by force of grete fayttes of  
 armes / And whan came to the threde tyme  
 that the batayHes were all ordeyned, thenne was ther  
 grete destruction and grete slawghter made, bothe of 12  
 men and of horses, byfore the barres of the towne,  
 where the valyaunt knyghtes made merueylles, of the  
 one part and of the other / but aboue alle other that  
 were ther, the queene Canle dyde best In armes, and 16  
 kylled and slewe the troyens on eyther syde of her.  
 For with the swerde she had a bowe, and a sheeffe of  
 arowes hangynge by her syde ; One tyme she shotte /  
 Another tyme she smotte grete strokes with her swerde, 20  
 and hewe, cleued, and cutted of hedes and armes clene  
 from the bodyes /

Prowess of  
 Camilla, who  
 slays the Trojans  
 in every  
 direction.

¶ In the batayHes of the troyens was a ryche man  
 that was called Cleonis, that afore hadde be a byshop 24  
 In troye, of the temple of one of theyre goddesses / He  
 hadde lefte his offyce, and hadde taken hym self to the  
 fayttes of knyghed. This man hadde moche Ryche  
 armes, alle couered with fyn golde, and of preycous 28  
 stones / ¶ And whan the queene Canulla sawe hym, she  
 dyde coueyte sore moche his armures, and made her  
 self redy for to slee Cleonyus / ¶ A Troyen that was  
 named Anyus apperceyued thesame / And with this, he 32  
 was also wrothe for the grete ocysyon that this queene  
 Canulla hadde made of the noble \* troians ; this man  
 began for to praye Iupyer, that he wolde gyue hym

She pursues  
 Cleonis for the  
 sake of his rich  
 armour.

Aruns perceives  
 it.

[\* leaf K 8, back]

strengthe, poure and hardynes, for to auenge his wrathe /  
 and his frendes that CanuHa hadde slayne: And  
 whan he had thus finysshed his oroyssen, he lete go his  
 4 horse towarde the quene / whiche was not aware of  
 hym: he smote her vpon the lefte sholder wyth his  
 swerde a vengable stroke / soo that he dyde cutte the  
 harneys / and made his swerde to entre in to her white  
 8 flesshe ferre wythin the body of her / soo that anone  
 after, she felle ded to the grounde: And after, as lightly  
 as he myghte, he departed awaye; For he doubted sore  
 the quene / But nought auaylled hym his fleynge, for a  
 12 mayde slewe hym, in vengeance of her lady the  
 quene:

CAP. LVII.

Aruns attacks  
her unawares,

and slays her,

but is soon  
after slain  
himself.

¶ How Turnus cam to the feelde, & his  
 folke wyth hym ¶ Capitulum lvij.

16 **W**Han CanuHa was fallen down from her horse,  
 thenne was there gret sorow made; and the  
 bataylles of Latynus began aH for to tremble  
 and shake for fere; and noo recoueraunce was there  
 20 more / but cam agayn wythin the barreers / and many  
 of theym were thenne ouer throwen and cast down in-to  
 the dyches. And the ladyes of the cyte mounted vpon  
 the walles for to defende the towne. And whan they  
 24 sawe bryng the body of CanuHa, the worthy quene,  
 they sette nomore by their lyues, but gaaf theym selfe  
 to traueyH for to defende, sooner than dyd the men.  
 thenne was sente a messenger towarde turnus, that was  
 28 at his watche wyth his chyualre vpon the mountayne,  
 as it is said afore / Whiche shewed vnto hym the grete  
 sorow of the batayH, and how CanuHa was ded. turnus  
 toke soo grete a sorow therfor, that he wyste not what  
 32 to doo / But lefte his watchyng after Eneas / and came  
 to the batayH / After this, taryed not long that Eneas  
 came and descended from \*the mountayne for to come  
 afore the towne for to conduytte his folke / And thus

The Latins  
retire within the  
barriers.The women  
mount the walls  
to defend the  
town.A message sent  
to Turnus,who quits the  
pass and comes  
to Laurentum.  
Aeneas comes[\* sign. L j]  
through the pass.

## CAP. LVII.

The Latins and  
Turnus's men  
are driven into  
the city.

came Eneas and Turnus almoste bothe togyder attones  
to the medlee / But it was soo nyghe nyghte whan  
that they came there, that lityH faytte of knighthode  
was there made / But the Turnyens and the Latynes 4  
wythdrêwe theym selfe in-to the cyte / And Eneas and  
his folke dyde lodge hemselfe withoute the walles of  
the towne / where they dyde pyghte theyr tentes.  
And whan the mornynge was come / Turnus, that was 8  
fuH sory and wrothe for his folke that he sawe dys-  
comfyte and slayne, came byfore kynge Latyne in a  
proude manere / And sayd that he was redy for to doo  
the bataylle, body ayenste body, ayenst Eneas / “But 12  
sende for hym, syr,” sayd Turnus, “and take his othe, and  
doo deuyse the couenaunte / And yf he ouercome me,  
lete hym haue the lande, and the pucelle lauyne to his  
wyff / And yf I maye conquere hym, lete hym goo his 16  
wayes, and leue me in peas wyth Lauyne your doughter /  
and wyth your royaltie” / The kynge thenne sayd  
peassibly to turnus: “Ha ha, valyaunte bacheler, I  
doubte sore the aduentures of bataylle / and yf thou 20  
bethynkest weH thyselfe, how grete a londe thou shalt  
haue in thy holde after thy fader is deceassed, and also  
that thou haste conquered grounde ynoughe by thyne  
owne proesse, And how many ryche maydens ben in 24  
ytalye, of noble blode / and of highe estate, of whiche  
*thou* myghtest chose one to be thy wyff / Syth that the  
goddess wyl not, nor graunte not, that I gyue my doughter  
to no man that is of my royame, how be it that, for the 28  
loue that I haue vnto the, I had graunted her to the  
for to be thy wyff / and namely atte the request of my  
wyff / I haue taken her ayen from Eneas, the preu &  
worthy knyghte, and haue suffered the for to vndertake 32  
the crueH batayHe wherby I haue loste \*myn owne  
folke / and thou haste hadde grete *dommage* / and we are  
atte this owre in soo grete peyne, that we maye nomore /  
and no longer we may not weH abyde wythin this 36

Turnus offers to  
Latinus to  
fight Aeneas in  
single combat,  
for the land and  
Lavinia.

Latinus advises  
him to retire  
home.

[\* sign. Lj, back]

cyte / Also the feldeſ ben aH couered wyth our men / CAP. LVIII.  
 that lye ded vpon the erthe. what ſhaH I reherſe aH  
 our euylH fortunes? were it not thenne better for the,  
 4 that thou were wythin thy londe, whiles that thou arte  
 hole & ſounde, in good plyghte and ioyouſe / and alſo  
 afore that thou had loſt thy liſſ / Loke & beholde the  
 aduentures of the bataylle, how they ben grete ! haue  
 8 mercy on thy fader / whiche is in grete age” /

Latinus adviſes  
 Turnus to avoid  
 further fighting.

¶ How the couenaunte of the bataylle was  
 made bytwene Eneas & Turnus.

### Capitulum lviii.

12 **W**Han Turnus herde the kyng ſpeke thus / he  
 taryed tyH that he had finyſſhed his wordes /  
 and ſone whan he myght ſpeke / he ſayd, “good  
 kyng, haue no drede for me, nor no doubte / but ſuffer  
 16 that my honour and prayſinge be increaſſed / Am I  
 thenne ſoo feble? and doeth my ſwerde cutte ſoo  
 lityH / that I dare not fyghte wyth Eneas? and is my  
 fleſſhe more tendre, & the bloode of my body more  
 20 nyghe goon / more than is his / And I doo hym weH  
 to wytte, that yf he come ſo nyghe me that he be  
 wounded / he ſhal be ferre from y<sup>e</sup> goddeſſe, his moder /  
 to whom he truſt moche yf I fyght wyth hym :” To  
 24 thiſe wordes came there the quene Amatha, that was  
 ſore troubled, and aH a-ferle of the bataylle, & of the  
 ſiege of the cyte. And whan ſhe ſawe turnus, that  
 wolde fyghte wyth eneaſ, ſhe beganne to wepe & make  
 28 grete mone, and ſayd / “Turnus, I praye the, by the teeres  
 that thou ſeeſte falle fro myn eyen / and by the honour  
 that I haue alwayes borne and doon to the, that thou  
 fyghte not wyth Eneaſ / For yf thou deyed, I ſholde  
 32 neuer lyue after, nyght ne daye. For that owre I  
 wolde neuer ſee, that eneaſ ſholde haue my doughter  
 \* to hys wyffe” / Whan Laayne ſawe her moder wepe,  
 ſhe was thereof fuHe ſory & wrothe ; and with thiſe ſhe

Turnus deter-  
 mines to fight  
 Aeneas deſpite  
 the remon-  
 ſtrances of  
 Latinus

and of Queen  
 Amata, who  
 tries hard to  
 diſſuade him.

[\* ſign. L ij]



## CAP. LVIII.

Turnus sees  
Lavinia with the  
Queen, and is still  
more impelled to  
insist on  
fighting.

be-came rede In her face / And whan Turnus sawe her /  
the more that he dyde beholde her / The more he  
was taken of the loue of the puceHe, And more wyH-  
ynge and sore chaffed for to fyght with Eneas, And 4  
sayde to the queene / “Madame, wepe not for me / Nor  
doubte not of no thyng / For it is better that we two  
fyght togyder / Than that oure folke sholde slee eche  
other.” Whan turnus had spoken thus, he dyde make 8  
his hors to be broughte afore hym, and his harneys, &  
armed himself moche rychely, as of custome was, after  
the faeyon & manere of the londe atte that tyme /  
And the kynge Latyne had sent his messagers toward 12  
Eneas, for to annouce vnto hym that Turnus was  
alredy appareyld for to fyght, body to body, aienst  
hym / Of the bataylle, was enneas ryght glad, and anone  
armed him. And of bothe partyes, they assembled 16  
theym aHe, In a fayre playne afore the cyte, for to see  
the batayHes of this two barons, whiche sholde haue  
be merueyllouse. And the ladyes & the puceHes were  
mounted vpon the waHes, & the quene also. The 20  
kynge latyne was yssued out of the cytee, with Turnus  
and with hys men / And of bothe sydes they made  
sacrefyces for hym with whome they helde / And the  
kynge Latyne and the other barons deuysed the couen- 24  
aunces / ‘That who some euer were vanquyshed, Other  
Turnus or Eneas / that he and hys hoost sholde voyde  
out of the Londe, and sholde goo In to another countreie.’  
¶ Whyles that they spake thus, and that the conuen- 28  
auntes were deuysed and made, and that rested theyre  
nothyng / But for to goo bothe togyder / An anenture  
happed there, a merueyllouse thyng, whiche appiered  
to aH theym that were there / An egle grete and ouer- 32  
growen, came \*fleyng hyghe bytwene the cyte and  
the tentes; And thenne lighte hym selfe down harde  
among a grete many of swaznes that were in a water  
nyghe by / And toke one of theym bytwyxx his clawes, 36

Aeneas is  
willing.

The ladies mount  
on the walls to  
see the fight, and  
Lavinia and the  
others go  
outside.

The covenant of  
single battle is  
made.

[\*sign. Lij, back]

The marvel of  
the eagle and the  
swans.



whiche were grete and sharpe / and bare hym vpwarde  
 by grete force. And anone aH the hepe of theym  
 arose / For they were aferde, and floughe aH highe  
 4 towarde the clowdes, And were soo many, that aH  
 the ayer was couered wyth theym. And soo moche  
 they dyde enuyronne aH aboute the egle / that she  
 lete faHe the swanne oute of her clawes in-to the  
 8 water / And the egle fledde, and heelde on his waye :

CAP. LIX.

The swan  
 escapes from the  
 eagle.

How Tholomeus made the bataylle to  
 begynne ayen, grete and horryble.

## Capitulum lix

12 **W**Han the Turnyens and the Latynes sawe this  
 thyng / they hadde therof grete Ioye / For  
 they trowed that it hadde be to theym a  
 oode bytokenyng: And therof arose thorughe aH  
 16 the ooste a grete murmure & a grete noyse, and houered  
 in theym selfe soo sore / that for a lityH / they wolde  
 haue ronne vpon the troians / Thenne spake a deuy-  
 noure that was called Tholomeus: and sayd in audy-  
 20 ence / “ Lordes turnyens, this was that I desired for to  
 see some tokens from the goddes / That egle that  
 lighted amonge the hepe of swannes, sygnyfieth our  
 enmye stranger, that is, Eneas, that wasteth and dys-  
 24 troyeth our londe / But lete vs aduyse also that we  
 enuyronne hym rounde aboute wyth goode men of  
 armes, as the swannes dyde the egle / And lete vs  
 deffende Turnus agaynste hym / and weH I wote that  
 28 he shaH flee awaye oute of oure countrey; And thus  
 shaH we be delyuerde of hym.” And thenne whan he  
 hadde thus sayde, He shotte an arowe towarde the  
 troians / and smote a knyghte, and ouerthrewe hym to  
 32 the \*grounde bytwyxx the other, that were therof aH  
 abashed.

The Latins think  
 this a good  
 omen

A great  
 murmuring in  
 their host.

The battle is  
 again made  
 general by  
 Tolumnius the  
 augur, who urge  
 the Latins to  
 defend Turnus,

and shoots a  
 Trojan with an  
 arrow.

[\* sign. L iij]

## CAP. LX.

¶ How Turnus dyde grete dommage to  
Eneas folke : Capitulum Lx :

The battle is  
renewed.

**T**<sup>[H]</sup>Enne beganne agayne the batayHe of the  
one parte / And of the other, Eneas ascryed to 4  
theym and sayd : “ Lordes, why doo ye fyghte /  
Ye knowe weH that the couenaunte ys deuysed and  
made / That Turnus and I shaH fyghte for you aHe / ”  
Whyle that eneas sayd thyse wordes, and cryed vnto 8  
his folke that they sholde not fyghte / There was a  
quareyH launched in-to his hande / and wyste neuer  
who shotte hit. Thenne departed Eneas from thens /  
and Turnus and his folke ranne soone to fetche theyr 12  
armures. And thenne Turnus smote hym selfe in to  
the troians / Turnus, atte his comynge on, dyde grete  
dommage to the troians, For he was a ryghte valyaunte  
knyghte of his body, And desyred moche for to 16  
dyscomfyte theym. He satte vpon a charyette wyth  
foure wheles, and foure whyte horses dyde lede hym ;  
He hadde wyth hym the dartes for to launche and  
caste / And hys other armures for to assaylle and 20  
fyghte, from ferre and of nyghe ¶ Soone after that  
he was come to the medlee, he slewe Thelemon and  
Thamytoun, and Potym and Glathome / and Tasdome /  
And after came there a troien towarde hym / that was 24  
sone of Ozon of troye / that was ryghte weH armed of  
ryche armures / And to the same, launched<sup>1</sup> Turnus a  
darte / and ouerthrewe hym, fuH sore wounded. And  
assone as he sawe hym a grounde / he made his horse 28  
to tarrye, and alyghted doun from his charyotte, and  
sette his fote vpon his necke, and shoued his swerde  
in-to his throtte / And after, he sayd to hym : “ Troian,  
here is the londe that thou hast requyred for \*to fyghte 32  
ayenst me / wherefore I shalle gyue to the thy fylle

Aeneas is  
wounded and  
retires.

Turnus makes  
terrible havoc  
among the  
Troians.

He slays many  
chiefs.

[\* sign. L iij,  
baek]

Gives Dolon's  
son his fill

<sup>1</sup> orig. launched

- therof" / and with the same, he toke hys hand fulle of  
 erthe fro the grounde, and fylled hys throte therwith-  
 alle, while that he was a passynge / And wite for veraye  
 4 trouthe, sayde Turnus to hym, that "alle thus I shaft  
 rewarde theym of thy nacyon that shaft comme ayenst  
 me In bataylle." Anoone after that he hadde sayde thyse  
 wordes to the troyen / He recountred another, that was  
 8 called Habitem, and was the felawe of hym to whome  
 he had thus spoken / And slewe hym incontynent; and  
 after hym, many other moo / And while that Turnus  
 went thus thurgh the bataylle, alle att hys wylle,  
 12 sleynge the troyens, Eneas and Menesteus and  
 Achates and Ascanyus came to the medlee / for Eneas  
 hadde be a longe espace therfro, for cause of the  
 wounde that he hadde had In his hande, and spored  
 16 hys horse atte that syde where he wist that turnus  
 was. And he had hys knyghtes made roome afore  
 theym, and slewe doune many of the Latynes and  
 turnyens att every hande of hem, and soone abashed  
 20 the Ytalyens, so that they trembled for feere. Eneas  
 slewe Afram and Osanum, Achetym and Pulerum, and  
 gyas, and also Atherantum / And tholomus, that be-  
 ganne the medlee, lost there hys lyffe / for ascanyus  
 24 slewe hym atte firste stroke that he smotte hym with  
 the glayue / Thenne a-rose the noyse and the crye  
 sore grete of bothe sydes / But the Latynes myght noo  
 lenger endure, and tourned theyre bakkes, and went  
 28 awaye / Eneas that chassed, wolde not slee theym  
 nomore, But dyde caHe and sought after Turnus In  
 the grete presse / And with noon other he wolde fyght.  
 Turnus taryed not longe In one place, But went euer  
 32 here and there alonge the wynges of the batayHes,  
 wherby he dyde grete damage to the troyens / thenne  
 \*dyde Eneas assemble alle the grete bataylles / And  
 aduysed hym selfe / that he sholde drawe towarde the  
 36 cyte, that was aH abasshed / Thenne called he to hym

CAP. LX.

of Italian soil.

Aeneas returns  
and slays many  
of the Italians,  
who tremble.Tolumnius is  
slain by  
Ascanius.

The Latins fly.

Aeneas seeks  
Turnus alone.

[\* s'gn. L iiij]

## CAP. LXI.

Aeneas draws his  
army under the  
walls of  
Laurentum,

Menesteus and Sarestum, that were connestables of his folke, and of the bataylles, And<sup>t</sup> sayd to theym / “make oure folke to withdrawe theym from the bataylle, And brynge theym towarde the mountayne nyghe to 4 the cyte, For I wolde take hit yf I maye / or elles Turnus shaH fyghte wyth me” / And they dyde soone as Eneas hadde commaunded theym; They made theyr folke for to drawe towarde the walles of the 8 towne or cyte / and broughte ladders wyth theym / Eneas was a-fore, and cryed on hyghe to kynge Latyne / that fuH yHe he kepte his couenauntes.

and cries to  
Latinus that he  
keeps not his  
covenants.

¶ Amonge theym wythin the cyte, moeued thenne a 12 grete dyscorde and varyaunce. For some wolde hane opened the gates to Eneas; But theother wolde not soo / but wolde defende the londe ayenste hym / For they heelde theym selfe of turnus partye : 16

The citizens are  
divided whether  
to admit him or  
not.

¶ How the quene Amatha hanged herselfe  
by dyssperacyon : Capitulum lxj

**W**Han Amatha sawe the thyng goo thus / and apperceyued the ladders that the troians dyde 20 sette vppe to the walles / And the fyre that they casted in-to the cyte, and sawe not Turnus that sholde defende her / Wherefor she wende that he hadde be slayne, Thenne hadde she her thoughte sore 24 troubled / And anone she wente in-to a chambre wythoute companye / and toke the lyffe from her, and hanged her selfe. And whan the tydynges therof were knowen in the towne, they were soo affrayed, that lytyH 28 deffence was made there. Who thenne hadde seen Lauyne puHyng and rentyng her yelowē heeres,\* hadde hadde of her grete pyte / And kynge Latyne, that more abasshed was than Lauyne, rented his roobes / And 32 pulled of his heeres, And blamed hym selfe ryght sore that he hadde not gyuen his doughter to Eneas / Duryng this, Turnus vnderstode the grete

Amata hangs  
herself.

[\* sign. L iijj  
back]

Grief of Latinus  
and Lavinia.

sorowe that was made wythin the cyte, by a knyghte  
 of his that was smyten wyth a glayue thorughe the  
 thyhe, and came ayenste hym as faste as he myghte  
 4 spore and waloppe his horse / And sayd / "Turnus!  
 haue mercy on thy men / For in the is oure laste  
 hope / Eneas fyghteth harde ayenste the cyte, And  
 threteneth aH the towres to be broughte down / And  
 8 wytte, that he dooth fyre to be caste in-to the towne /  
 And the kynge Latyne blameth hym selfe moche, and  
 knoweth not what he shaH do / But to tourne hym  
 selfe ayenste the wyth Eneas, and gyue hym bothe his  
 12 doughter and his royame. And that more is, Amatha  
 the queene, that loued the so moche, and that was to  
 the so good a frende, hathe kyHed her self, her owne  
 hande, wherof the towne is sore moeued / And afore  
 16 the gates is noon of thin that defendeth ayenst the  
 troyens, Sauff Mesapus and AeyHas; they withstande  
 and kepe thentre ayenst the batayHes of the troyens /  
 And thou art here, gawrynge about nought." Whan  
 20 Turnus herde the same, he was ashamed, and ryght sore  
 wrothe, and on-angerd / And loked toward the cytee,  
 and sawe the flame of the fyre within the towne. whan  
 he saw that, he lyghted doune from his charyot, and  
 24 went toward the gate where were the grete batayHes.  
 Thenne beganne he to make a signe to hys men that  
 they sholde drawe backe, For he wolde fight for theym  
 with Eneas, liande to hande In a felde, as it was  
 28 deuysed afore /

CAP. LXII.

A Knight tells  
 Turnus, who  
 returns to  
 Laurentum.

Latinus re-  
 proaches Turnus

who goes to the  
 city gate to fight  
 Aeneas singly.

¶ \*How Eneas & Turnus faught, body to  
 body, In a felde, one geynst the other.

[\* leaf L 5]

## ¶ Capitulum Lxij :

32 **A**Noone as Eneas herde turnus speke / he made  
 noo taryinge atte aHe, but went assoone  
 as he myght toward the felde / and lefte the  
 sawtyng of the wafes and of the toures that they

Aeneas and  
 Turnus fight.

## CAP. LXIII.

All go to see the  
fight between  
Aeneas and  
Turnus.

Turnus is over-  
come and cries  
for mercy.

Aeneas sees the  
ring and girdle  
of Pallas on  
Turnus, and  
slays him,

and conquers  
Lombardy and  
the damsel  
Lavinia.

Supplement by  
the writer.

hadde enuayshed. Thenne departed from the assawte  
the one partye & the other, for to see the batayHe  
of the two barons. Eneas and Turnus were bothe  
In the felde aH alone, weH appareylled, and ap- 4  
roched eche other ryght harde, lyke two buHes / and  
drew out theyre sharpe swerdes / Thenne was there  
noo sparynge. But that euerych of them smote his  
enmye, so that y<sup>e</sup> sheldes wherwith-aH they couered 8  
theymselfe, were aHe to-hewen and broken alle to peces /  
the batayHe was fyerse and cruelle, for they hated eche  
other ryght sore / But atte the laste, turnus was ouer-  
comme / and he cryed mercy to eneas, that he sholde 12  
not slee hym. And wytte, that Encas sholde haue  
pardoned hym that *that* he hadde mysdoon ayenst hym,  
if it had not be the ryng & the gyrdeH of palas, that  
turnus dyde were vpon hym ; for whan eneas dyd see 16  
theym / the sorowe that he made for y<sup>e</sup> dethe of Palas,  
that turnus had slayne, was renewed in his herte /  
whiche redoubled thenne hys grete wrathe / and sayde  
to turnus, “ thou shalt abyenowe the gladnes that thou 20  
had of the dethe of Palas / For thou shalt here deye  
for his sake ” / And anoone he shoud his swerde  
thrughe the body of hym, wherout hys sowle departed /  
AH thus was conquered aHe Lombardy, and the puceHe 24  
Lauyne, by the hande of eneas /

¶ How eneas wedded Lauyne, and hadde  
the Royalme of Ytalye.

¶ Capitulum / Lxiiij 28

[\* leaf L 5, back]

Turnus's frendes  
depart in sorrow.

\* **A** Noone as Turnus was slayne / his frendes de-  
parted ryght sory and wrothe / And many other  
wyth theym / that loued hym for his processe.

¶ The kyng Latyne, that was ryght sore of his grete 32  
myschaunce, Came to Eneas / his noble men wyth  
hym, and gaff hym his doughter / and aH his royaume /  
And receyued hym wyth grete Ioye / and thenne was

Latinus gives  
his daughter to  
Aeneas.



the peas made towarde theym that hadde be agaynste hym / Anone the troians and the latynes togyder wente for to brenne and reduce to ashes, bodyes ded

CAP. LXIV.

The bodies are buried, and Aeneas,

4 that were yet in the feeldes / And whan that was doon / the quene Camula was sente in-to her londe, and the quene Amatha was rychely broughte to her sepulture. Thenne was ceased aH the sorowe thoroughe  
8 aH the royaume of ytalie. Eneas, that had hadde many a sore payne by the space of seuen yeres syth that he came from Troye, toke to his wyf Laune, the doughter of kynge Latyne, that heelde laurence, the  
12 maystresse cyte of lombardye atte that tyme / And moche Ioye was there made atte theyr weddyng /

after seven years of trouble, marries Lavinia.

¶ How kyng Latyne deceassed / And Eneas soone after hym / And how Ascanyus was  
16 called Iulyus. Capitulum lxiiiij

**A**fter this, abode not longe<sup>1</sup> but that the kynge Latynus deyed / and deceassed oute of this mortalle worlde / Thenne heelde Eneas aH the royaume;  
20 But werres ynoughe he hadde there. For Merencyus, that heelde Cecylle, werred ayenste hym / But Eneas vaynquysshed hym not / By cause that dethe toke hym sooner than he wende. But after the deth of Eneas,  
24 his sone Ascanyus faughte wyth Merencyus, body \*to body, & slewe hym / and thenne he was called ascanyus iulyus, by cause hys fyrste berde was but yonge whan he slewe Mezenyum / whan eneas had brought y<sup>e</sup>  
28 londe in peas, & had delyuered it from grete myserye / the dethe *that* noo body spareth, ranne hym vpon In suche a manere / that noo body conde neuere knowe how he loste his lyffe / Some sayen that he was slayne  
32 wyth the thonder bolte; the other sayen that the goddes hadde rauyshed hym / the other sayen hys body was founde wythin a ponde or a water that is nyghe the

Latinus dies, Aeneas succeeds and wars with Mezentius of Sicily.

Aeneas's death.

[\* leaf L 6]

His son Ascanius slays Mezentius.

Mode of Aeneas's death uncertain.

<sup>1</sup> orig. louge



CAP. LXV.  
*Supplement.*

tonyre, whiche is called Munyecom of theym of the countreie / Eneas lyned but thre yere after that he hadde wedded Laayne, the doughter of kynge Latyne, thus as we haue saide.

4

¶ How Ascanyus helde the royalme of Ytalye after the dethe of Eneas hys fader.

¶ Capitulum. Lxv

Ascanius  
succeeds his  
father.

**A**fter the dethe of Eneas, helde the royalme Ascanyus hys sone, that he hadde of the doughter of the kynge Pryamus of Troye / And Laayne abode grete wyth chylde of a sonne; Wherefore she doubted sore lest that Ascanyus sholde make hym deye, In treyson, for to holde aHe the Royalme / Therefore was she ryght sory / And for feere that she hadde of it / She fledde away In-to the forest, wythyn the lodges of Errorus, that was a pastour; And there she was, tyHe that she was delynered of her sone, that hadde to name Syluyus postumus / Whan Ascanyus wiste where hys stepmoder was goon, and that she hadde a sone whiche was hys brother / he sent her worde that she sholde comme to hym wythout eny feere / She retourned, & came ayen to her stepsone ascanius, berynge her son siluyus betwene her armes: ascanyus gaffe, by ye counseill of hys \*barons of his londe, to his brother Syluyum, the cyte of Lawrence wyth the appartenaunces. Ascanyus buylded firste the towne or cyte of Albe in lombardye. And there was his resortynge / by the space of xxxviij. yeres that he heelde hys reygne, after the dethe of hys fader Eneas. And of thys cyte ben many in doubte who buykle it vppe, Ascanyus, or elles Syluyus postunus his brother / By cause that aH the kynges of Lombardye that were syth Ascanyus, vnto Romulus that founded Rome, hadde to name Syluyus, for the hyghnesse of hym that fyrste heelde and buylded Albe. This Syluyus was ryght valyaunte /

His brother, by  
Lavinia, Sylvius  
Postunus.

[\* leaf L 6, back]

Doubtful  
whether  
Ascanius or  
Sylvius founded  
Alba.

From Ascanius  
to Romulus all  
the kings are  
surnamed  
Sylvius,

- and mayntened weH the royame / And therefore aH  
 they that came after hym were called Syluyus / lyke  
 as after Cesar Augustus / for his worthynesse, aH the  
 4 emperours of rome that were after hym are named  
 Augustus. Ascanyus hadde a sone that called was  
 Iulyus / but whan Ascanyus deyed, Iulyus was to yong  
 for to rewle the royame / And therefore he gaaff hit to  
 8 Syluyus postunus, his brother, by Eneas his fader,  
 whiche he loued moche, and taughte hym weH and chas-  
 tysed hym weH as longe as he was a lyue / ¶ And  
 wytte, that after that he was ded / the quene Lauyne  
 12 hadde a sone by Melompodes, that hadde to name  
 Latynus siluyus. After Ascanyus, regned Syluyus  
 postunus his brother ¶ Of Iulyus, the sone of Ascanyus,  
 yssued Iulyen / of whom descended Iulyus Cesar /  
 16 And knowe, that from the tyme that the children of  
 ysrahel came oute of thraldome fro the kynge of  
 Egypte, Pharaon, whan they passed the red see / vnto  
 Ascanyus tyme, that was<sup>1</sup> kyng of Lombarde, was  
 20 CCCC.lxvij. yeres / After Syluyus postunus that was  
 kyng xxix. yeres / helde the royame, latynus syluyus  
 .l yeres. in the tyme that eneas & his sone \*Ascanyus  
 came in lombardye, regned in Iherusalem kynge Dauid,  
 24 the fader of Salamon, that the serypture prayseth soo  
 moche. After Latynus Syluynus, regned in lombardye  
 Arbasylyus xxix. yeres / After hym, regned Egystus  
 siluyus xxvij. yeres. After, regned Capys siluyus xxij.  
 28 yere / After, regned Ehiberynus syluynus viij yeres.  
 After, regned Capestus xij yere / After, regned Syluynus  
 agryppa lx. yeres ¶ In this tyme was Omerus moche  
 made of / and renommed of seyence in Greke / After  
 32 Agryppa, regned Armelyus syluynus xix. yeres / This  
 kynge was vnhappy, and was slayne wyth the thonder /  
 After hym, dyde reyne Postyus siluynus / In this  
 kynges dayes, byganne the historyes of the romayns,

CAP. LXV.

as all the emperors after Augustus were called Augustus.

Ascanius leaves a son Julius, but Sylvius succeeds him on account of Julius's extreme youth.

From Julius is descended Julius Caesar. From Pharaoh's time, and the deliverance of the Israelites, to Ascanius, there were Kings of Lombardy for 467 years.

[\* leaf L 7]

David reigned in Jerusalem when Aeneas and Ascanius came to Italy.

Homer.

List of Alban Kings.

Foundation of Rome.

<sup>1</sup> orig. was was

CAP. LXV. and of theym that founded roome. But therof I shaH  
 telle now nomore / but shiaH here make an ende of  
 this lytyH boke / named Eneydos :

End.

This *Eneydos*  
 was englisht  
 from French by  
 Wm. Caxton, on  
 22 June, 1490.

HERE fynyssheth the boke yf Eneydos / compyled 4  
 by Vyrgyle / whiche hathe be translated oute of latyne  
 in to frenshe / And oute of frenshe reduced in to Eng-  
 lysshe, by me wyHiam Caxton / the xxij. daye of Iuyn,  
 the yere of our lorde .M. iiij C ixxxx. The fythe yere 8  
 of the Regne of kynge Henry the seuenth.

[For the convenience of readers, modern stops have been put  
 in this reprint, as well as Caxton's bars. His full stops for  
 commas and semicolons have seldom been left. The article *a*  
 has been separated from the substantives it was printed as part  
 of. Separate portions of one word have been joined by hyphens.  
 All contractions but *ye* have been expanded in italics.—F.J.F.]

## INDEX.

BY THOMAS AUSTIN.

[The following Dictionaries are referred to:—COTGRAVE, *French Dict.* (1611), C.; GODEFROY, *Dict. de l'Anc. Langue Franc.*, G.; *New Eng. Dict.* (1885, etc.), D.]

- ABACKE, abak, *adv.* putte abacke or abak, repulsed, 152/5, 9.  
 Abandonne, *vb. t.* forego (devoting her life to her men), 28/28.  
 Abide, *vb. int.* remain fast, 20/31.  
 Above; tyl he be come to his aboue of hys entrepryse, *i. e.* succeed in it, 119/3.  
 Abstractyue, *adj.* abstract, mental, 46/20; ideal, 104/6.  
 Abysme, *sb.* abysm, abyss, 42/21. O. Fr. *Abysme*.  
 Accensed, *pp.* inflamed, 87/12.  
 Accorde, *vb. t.* arrange, bring to conclusion, 51/8.  
 Accumyle, *vb. t.* accumulate, 17/9.  
 Acerbas, or Acerbe, otherwise named Sychæus, a Tyrian of rank, husband to Dido, 25/6, is slain by order of Pygmalion, 25/32.  
 Aecsta, or New Troy, otherwise Segesta, is founded by Aeneas in Sicily, 115.  
 Acestes, King of Sicily, 96, receives Aeneas gladly, 114; is bidden farewell, 116.  
 Achieued, *pp.* completed, 1/2. Fr. *Achever*.  
 Achievement, *sb.* completion, full ending, 1/15. Fr. *Achèvement*.  
 Acren, a Trojan, slain by Mezentius, 142/29.  
 Adcerteyned, *pp.* assured, 59/30. O. Fr. *Acertener*. Certifie, assure.—C.  
 Adioust, *vb. t.* give, put, 24/5. O. Fr. *Adjouster*. To adde, adioyne, set, or put vnto.—C.  
 Adlegacyon, *sb.* allegation, 112/1.  
 Admonest, *vb. t.* admonish, warn, 41/8, 44/19, 67/17. O. Fr. *Admonester*.  
 Admonestement, *sb.* admonishment, warning, 22/14, 26/13, 41/14. O. Fr. *Admonestement*.  
 Adresse, *vb.* addressed hym, turned himself, 137/18.  
 Adriane, or Ariadne, 118. See *Ariadne*.  
 Aduenement, *sb.* O. Fr. *Advenement*. A chance, or hap.—C. 11/23.  
 Aduysion, *sb.* vision, 82/10. O. Fr. *Advision*, *avision*. Vision, dream.  
 Aegeus, King of Athens, his tribute to Minos, 117; drowns himself, 119.  
 Aeneas escapes from Troy, carrying his father, Anchises, 14; sails for Thrace, 15; begins to build Aeneia, 16; sacrifices on Polydore's grave, 17; sails from Thrace, 22; his fleet is overtaken by a tempest, 39; wrecked on the coast of Lybia, 40; Dido falls in love with him, 47; meets Dido in a cave, 56; reports spread abroad of them, 58; Mercury delivers him a message from Jupiter, commanding him to sail for Italy, 64; he orders his men to depart secretly, 65; Dido tries to persuade him to stay, 67; is bidden by her to go, with curses, 73; he will not delay his departure, 78; has a vision to hasten it, 93; sails from Carthage, 95; is driven to Sicily, 96; his arrival there, 114; celebrates games at his father's tomb, 115; founds New Troy, or Aecsta, 115; sails for Italy, 116; lands at Cumæ, 116; goes down to Avernus, 120; arrives at the land of King Latinus, 120; begins to build a

- fortress on the Tonyre, or Tiber, 122; sends an embassy to King Latinus, 123; has presents sent back to him, 126; fray between his men and those of Turnus, 129; he goes to seek succour from Evander, 130; Turnus lays siege to his camp, burns his ships, 132; Aeneas arrives with a large force in aid, 139; a battle takes place, 140; wounds Mezentius, and slays Lausus, 143; kills Mezentius, 144; proposes single combat with Turnus, 146; comes before the city of Laurentum, 151; repulses the Latins, 151; agrees to fight a single combat with Turnus, 156; the battle is renewed, 157; Aeneas's prowess therein, 158; fights in single combat with Turnus, and slays him, winning Lavinia, 161, 162; marries Lavinia, 162; succeeds King Latinus, 163; dies, 163.
- Aencia, a town in Chalcidice, in Macedonia, founded by Aeneas, 16/10.
- Aeolus, God of the winds, with Neptune, raises a storm to hinder Aeneas, 39.
- Affectuously, *adv.* heartily, 36/13. O. Fr. *Affectueux*.
- Afflige, *vb. t.* afflict, 78/29. Fr. *Affliger*.
- Affryque, Africa, 30/12. Fr. *Afrique*.
- Agamemnon besieges Troy, 11.
- Agathysrus, a town in Crete, 54/20.
- Aget, *vb. t.* get hold of, 55/36.
- Agrippa, or Argyrippa, a city in Apulia, 146/35.
- Agrounde, on the ground, 144/26.
- Alighe, *adv.* on high, to the upper regions, 62/28; ahyghe, with a loud voice, 147/7.
- Aienst, *prep.* against, 145/33.
- Alba, a city in Latium, founded, 164.
- Algement, *sb.* O. Fr. *Allegement*. A lightning, disburdening, easing. —C. 14/30.
- Alle a longe, fully, at full length, 23/33.
- Alle to-broken, 40/6; alle to-cratched (or scratched), 107/13; alle to-cutte, 49/28; al to-renteth, 90/19; all to-shaketh, 86/3; alle to-tourne, 49/31; *i.e.* quite broken, quite scratched, bescratched, etc. Amartude, *sb.* bitterness, sorrow, 77/23, 92/28. O. Fr. *Amaritude*.
- Amata, wife of Latinus, tries to dissuade Turnus from fighting Aeneas, 155; hangs herself, 160. She was related to Turnus.
- Aminicules, as *adj.* O. Fr. *Ad-minicule*. An aid, helpe, support, prop.—C. 47/1. See D., Adminicle.
- Amyte, *sb.* amity, friendship, 12/16, 19/17, 30/34. O. Fr. *Amitee*.
- An-angred, *pp.* enraged, 127/16, 140/21; an-angryd, 128/19.
- Anchandron, an island (Antander), 15/32; on the coast of Troas.
- Anchises, father of Aeneas, is carried from Troy by his son, 1, 14; dies on the passage from Troy to Libya, 40; is buried in Sicily, 96, 114.
- Aeneas Martius, 121.
- Anemste, *prep.* anent, concerning, towards, 67/30.
- Anguysshou, *adj.* piercingly sorrowful. O. Fr. *Angoisseux*. Full of anguish.—C. 25/15.
- Anna, or Anne, sister of Dido, is her confidant, 41; replies to Dido, 43; sent to induce Aeneas to stay, 77; is sent for by Dido, in her grief, 84; is desired to prepare a pyre, 86; laments her sister's death, 107. See *Dido*.
- Antheledo, a monster, the brother of Fame, 57/24.
- Anychil, *vb. t.* annihilate, 82/33. O. Fr. *Adnichiler*.
- Anyus, or Aruns, a Trojan, 152/32, slays Camilla.
- Aourned, *pp.* adorned, decked, 15/5. O. Fr. *Aörner*, *aourner*.
- Aperceyue, *vb. t.* perceive, 79/12; apperceyue, 79/16.
- Apollo is sacrificed to by Aeneas, 46/32; account of him, 54.
- Apparaylle, *vb. t.* prepare, 17/20; appareyille, 102/6. Fr. *Appa-*

- reiller*. To prepare; to make ready.—C.
- Appareyl, appareylle, *sb.* preparation, 48/8, 53/9, 98/9; apparatus, requisites, 95/17. *Appareil*. Preparation, provision, ready-making; a decking, dressing.—C.
- Appayre, *vb.* *t.* impair, 110/3.
- Apposite, *adj.* opposite, opposed, 46/7. O. Fr. *Apposite*.
- Approped, *pp.* assigned, appropriated, 4/13.
- Approued, *pp.* proved, 86/32.
- Apropre, *vb.* *t.* appropriate, accommodate, 74/25.
- Aquysycion, *sb.* acquisition, 112/9.
- Arache, *vb.* *t.* pluck up by the roots, 18/25, 18/34. Fr. *Arracher*. See D., Arace, Arache.
- Arbytre, *sb.* free arbytre. *Arbitre*, libertie of iudgement, freedom of thought.—C. 43/27, 44/21.
- Arcadia, 130/19.
- Ardea, 142/23.
- Arenouse, *adj.* Inpyter arenouse (or of the desert sands), 59/15.
- Argyrippa, or Arpi, an ancient city in Apulia, said to have been founded by Diomedes, 146/35.
- Ariadne, daughter of Minos, consults Dædalus about saving Theseus from the Minotaur, 118; flees with Theseus, 119.
- Armure, *sb.* armour, 86/21. Fr. *Armure*.
- Arnus, a Trojan, 152/32.
- Arouse, *vb.* *t.* bedew, besprinkle, wet, 19/34. O. Fr. *Arouser*. M. F. *Arroser*. See D., Arrouse.
- Arrest, *vb.* *t.* Fr. *Arrester*. To determine, decree, resolve of.—C. 84/6.
- Arrettyd, *pp.* cruelte arrettyd, determined cruelty, 19/22; comp. preceding word, and M. Fr. *Arrêter*.
- Arteres, *sb.* windpipe, &c., 64/31.
- Aruspycious, *adj.* haruspicious, prognosticative, 80/30.
- Ascanius, son of Aeneas, called also Iulus, 14, 48/32; rescues the ships, 115; laughs at their trenchers being eaten, 122; has an unlucky hunt, 127; declines fighting, 132; slays Tolumnius, 159; succeeds his father, 163; his reign, 164.
- Ascrye, *vb.* *t.* call upon, 129/17; call forth, challenge, 132/21; *vb.* *int.* cry out, 105/15.
- Asperly, *adv.* roughly, 55/34.
- Asperse, *vb.* *t.* sprinkle, 88/24.
- Assemble, *sb.* conjunction, union, 40/24; joining of battle, 150/21.
- Assoylled, *pp.* absolved, 113/25.
- Assyduatly, *adv.* assiduously, assiduously, 26/1.
- Astate, *sb.* state, 49/12; position, rank, 124/5. O. Fr. *Estat*.
- Atheleto, or Alecto, one of the Furies, 81/31.
- Atlas bears up the heavens, 62/36, 84/31.
- Attyre, *vb.* *t.* attract, draw on, 28/35. Fr. *Attirer*.
- Atyse, *vb.* *t.* move, stir, 45/29; of a woman stirred with love, 47/16. Fr. *Attiser*. To kindle (a fire); to stirre the fire. *Attiser le feu avec l'espée*. To provoke an angry person.—C. O. Fr. *Atiser*.
- Augurement, *sb.* augury, 72/29. O. Fr. *Augurement*.
- Aulite, or Aulis, 76/24. The Greeks assembled their forces for the Trojan expedition here.
- Auncyen, *adj.* ancient, 29/29. Fr. *Ancien*.
- Aurora, goddess of the Dawn, 96/29.
- Autentyke, *adj.* self-made; of the walls of Troy, which rose to the sound of Apollo's lyre, 31/21. Fr. *Authentique*.
- Awayt, *vb.* expect, 45/9.
- Awrye, *adv.* behold awry, *i. e.* with ill will, 109/24.
- Awter, *sb.* altar, 47/9; awtier, 88/3. O. Fr. *Auter*, *Autier*.
- Axtre, *sb.* axletree, axis, 84/31.
- Ayen, *adv.* again, 35/4, 42/33.
- Ayenst, *prep.* against (to the winds), 75/34; ayenste, 18/30.
- Bacchus, 46/32.
- Barate, *sb.* O. Fr. *Barat*. Cheating, deceit, guile, in bargaining.—C. 27/10, 65/34. See D., Barrat.



- Barbaire, *adj.* barbarous, 33/23.  
Fr. *Barbare*.
- Barbaryn, *adj.* barbarian, 36/33.
- Barce, Dido's old nurse, 102, 103.
- Barches, Barca, in Africa, 45/2.
- Barreys, *sb.* barrace, barriers, 123/10.
- Basse, *adj.* base, low, 41/26. Fr. *Bas*.
- Bastelle, *sb.* *Bastille*. A fortresse, or castle, furnished with towers. —C. 20/9. Apparently here used for any mansion. See D., Bastide.
- Bataylle, *sb.* battalion, division of an army, 153/18, 159/32.
- Beaulte, *sb.* beauty, 34/25, 37/1. O. Fr. *Bealte*. Mod. Fr. *Beauté*.
- Befalle, *sb.* accident, 108/13.
- Begraue, *vb. t.* bury, 96/23.
- Belus, father of Dido, 25/1.
- Bely, *sb.* belly, depths of the sea, 28/4.
- Bend, *sb.* band, fillet, 21/18.
- Better, *adv.* more, rather, 12/28, 21/34.
- Bienewrous, *adj.* happy, 25/17. O. Fr. *Beneureux*. Mod. Fr. *Bienheureux*.
- Boccaccio's *Fall of Nobles*, 22.
- Bolcus, slays Euryalus, and is slain by Nisus, 137.
- Botom, *sb.* bottom, ball of thread, 118/36.
- Brack, *sb.* brach, a hound that hunts by scent, 53/16.
- Brackener, *sb.* a servant that leads a brach, 53/6.
- Brawdrye, *sb.* embroidery, 53/32. Fr. *Broderie*.
- Braye, *vb. int.* creak, groan, 78/10; roar (of waves), 96/2.
- Brokelynges, *sb.* brokelings, fragments, 122/6.
- Brule, *vb. t.* burn, 94/21. Fr. *Bruler*. See D., Broil.
- Brutus, the Consul, 121.
- Bruyt, *sb.* bruit, disturbance, 41/32.
- Bryef, *adj.* in bryef, in epitome, briefly, 22/20.
- Bussyne, *sb.* trumpet, 150/16. Lat. *Buccina*.
- Byfalle, *sb.* befall, case, 65/7.
- Byshop, *sb.* priest, 152/24.
- Byspoken, *ppl. adj.* well byspoken, of good speech, 40/17.
- Bysprange, *vb. t.* besprinkled, 16/31, 35/25. See D., Bespreng.
- Bystorye, *sb.* bistoury, dagger, 63/28. O. Fr. *Bistorie*.
- Bywayllenges, *sb.* bewailings, lamentations, 35/36.
- Bywepte, *adj.* blubbered, disfigured with weeping, 15/17, 19/1.
- Cadinus, or Cadynus, *i. e.* Cadmus of Thebes, inventor of letters, 82/13.
- Calomynouse, *adj.* calumnious, 97/1.
- Camilla, daughter of King Metabus, seeks a combat with Aeneas, 150, 151; is slain by Aruns, 153.
- Canulla. See *Camilla*.
- Capitalle, *adj.* capital, deadly, 106/31.
- Carfe, *vb. t.* carfe waie (of ships), carve their way, 96/5.
- Caroyne, *sb.* carrion, putrid flesh, 21/27.
- Cartagyens, Carthaginians, 32/12.
- Carthage, founded by Dido, 23/12, 31; Aeneas arrives there, 40.
- Carton, or Tarchon, 139/25.
- Castymonye, *sb.* chastity, 36/28. Lat. *Castimonia*, or *Castimonium*.
- Caucasus, mount, 71/10.
- Cause, *sb.* corse, 21/3.
- Caytyue, *adj.* caitiff, wretched, 91/5. O. Fr. *Caitif*.
- Ceasse, *sb.* cease, ceasing, 58/6; quiet, rest, 90/4.
- Celebreed, *pp.* celebrated, 36/22. Fr. *Celebrer*.
- Certayne, *sb.* in certayne, in certainty, 45/13. *Certain*. A certaintie, certaine truth, surenesse, assurednesse.—C.
- Cesseth, ceaseth, 58/7. Fr. *Cesser*.
- Chaffed, *pp.* heated, fired with love, 52/4. Fr. *Chauffer*.
- Chare, *sb.* car, 126/31. Fr. *Chaire*. Lat. *Carrum*.
- Charmouse, *adj.* enchanting, 88/6. O. Fr. *Charmoux*: comp. *Charmeusement*. Charmingly, inchauntingly.—C.
- Chasse, *vb. t.* chace, hunt, 51/36; drive, 96/36. Fr. *Chasser*.
- Chasshe, *sb.* chace, hunting, 52/14.



- Chicke, *sb.* cheek, 112/30; chykes, 104/9.
- Chircherde, *sb.* churchyard, 80/20.
- Chlorens, or Cleonis, a priest (bishop) at Troy, 152.
- Choruscaeyon, *sb.* coruscation, flashing, 52/9.
- Chynaunche, *sb.* O. Fr. *Cherance*.  
Cheuisance, wealth, substance, riches, goods.—C. 22/28.
- Cicyle, Sicily, 96/21. Fr. *Sicile*.
- Cirte regyon, the Syrtes; gulfs on north coast of Africa, 44/34.
- Clemence, *sb.* Fr. *Clemence*. Clemencie, benignitie, pitie.—C. 22/10, 97/33.
- Cleonis, 152.
- Cloanthus, is bidden by Aeneas to help in preparing the fleet for leaving Carthage, 65/13.
- Clotho, one of the Fates, 81/35.
- Clymate, *sb.* climate, 24/34. Fr. *Climat*. A clyme, or Clymate; a Portion of the world.—C.
- Clytemnestra, wife of Agamemnon, 83/11. With the aid of Aegisthus she murdered him.
- Coagulate, *pp.* compounded, 103/32.
- Coagule, *vb.* *t.* bring together, 82/2. Compare post-classic *Coagulum*, bond, or tie.
- Cogytyne, *adj.* thinking, reasoning, 104/3.
- Coll, *vb.* *t.* embrace, 48/35. O. Fr. *Coler*. Comp. *Collée*, a neck-embrace, an embracing.—C. See also D., Accoll.
- Coloque, *vb.* *t.* speak with, address, 72/19. Lat. *Colloquor*.
- Communynque, *vb.* *int.* communicate, have communications. Fr. *Communiquer*. To talke, or commune with.—C. 61/26.
- Commynycayon, *sb.* communication, 3/6.
- Commyse, *vb.* *t.* commit, 19/20, 26/7, 42/15.
- Compatyble, *adj.* congenial, sympathetic, 78/23.
- Complexion, *sb.* moral nature, 23/28; habit of body, 85/14; complexeyon, 109/17.
- Conclude, *vb.* *t.* bring to a state of, 36/2; determine, settle, 131/10.
- Concupyssible, *adj.* desirable, to be coveted, 15/23. Fr. *Concupiscible*.
- Concussyon, *sb.* shaking, buffeting, 39/4. Fr. *Concussion*.
- Condicylle, *sb.* codicil, 100/37.
- 'Ondolaunt, *adj.* condoling, 78/28.
- Conduytte, *sb.* conduct, management, 51/31. O. Fr. *Conduicte*. A managing, or handling.—C.
- Conduytte, *vb.* *t.* conduct, 54/8.
- Conduyttor, *sb.* conductor, 95/24.
- Confyte in teeres, foul with weeping, 78/18. *Confit*, souillé.—G.
- Connestable, *sb.* commander-in-chief, 160/1.
- Connexe, *sb.* tie, bond, 47/1. O. Fr. *Comexe*: comp. *Connexer*, attacher, lier ensemble.—G.
- Consecracyon, *sb.* burial, apotheosis, 98/5.
- Conseille, *vb.* *t.* advise, 83/21.
- Consummacion, *sb.* consummation, completion, 22/1.
- Conspyracion, *sb.* conspiracy, 76/26.
- Contrare, *adj.* contrary, 102/21. Fr. *Contraire*.
- Contrarye, *vb.* *t.* thwart, oppose, 42/26. Fr. *Contrarier*.
- Contreste, *vb.* *t.* withstand, struggle against, 96/17; contryste, 50/2. O. Fr. *Contrester*.
- Contryste, *pp.* sad, 105/24.
- Contryste, *vb.* *t.* make sad, 80/17, 34. Fr. *Contrister*. To grieve, sadden, afflict, make sorrowfull.—C.
- Conturbed, *pp.* perturbed, agitated, upset, 70/16. Fr. *Conturber*.
- Conuenable, *adj.* suitable, 56/30. Fr. *Convenable*.
- Conuencyon, *sb.* meeting, 50/7. O. Fr. *Convention*, action de venir.—G.
- Cordage, *sb.* of wrinkles, &c., shewing as cords, 110/31.
- Corpus, *sb.* corpse, 143/31, 145/8.
- Corrige, *vb.* *t.* correct, 89/23. Fr. *Corriger*.
- Corroye, *vb.* *t.* O. Fr. *Conroyer*, *Corroyer*, *Couroyer*. To currie, tawe, or dresse, as leather.—C. 30/16.
- Costume, *sb.* custom, 86/17. O. Fr. *Costume*.

- Conenable, *adj.* suitable, 84/3. Fr. *Convenable*. O. Fr. *Covenable*.  
 Couenaunce, *sb.* covenant, 156/24.  
 Couenaunce, *vb. t.* give by agreement, affiance, 126/7.  
 Couer, *vb. t.* couereth . . of = covereth . . with, 70/11.  
 Couetyse, *sb.* covetousness, 25/29.  
 Coulpable, *adj.* culpable, guilty, 89/16. O. Fr. *Coulpable*.  
 Counterfette, *adj.* counterfeit, ill-made, 49/24.  
 Couuerte, *adj.* covert, secret, sly, 41/27.  
 Coward, *adj.* cowardly, 132/23. Fr. *Coward*.  
 Cramoysin, *sb.* O. Fr. *Cramoisi*. Crimson colour.—C. 53/31.  
 Cremoysein, 63/32.  
 Crampon, *sb.* cramp. Fr. *Crampon*. A Cramp-yrón.—C. 39/14.  
 Crayntyne, *adj.* Fr. *Craintif*. Timorous, bashfull.—C. 37/10.  
 Cressettes, *sb.* cressets. O. Fr. *Craisset*. Torches covered with pitch, that the watch carried at night.—G. 94/21.  
 Creusa, wife of Aeneas, escapes from Troy with him, 14, 15; is sister to Polydore, 20/3.  
 Cronykes, *sb.* O. Fr. *Croniques*, *Chroniques*. Chronicles, Annales.—C. 24/8.  
 Crosseles, *adj.* crossless, with straight handle, 63/29.  
 Crusa, daughter of Priam. See *Creusa*.  
 Cryspyue, a goddess, 120/15.  
 Crystall, *sb.* crystal, 16/29.  
 Cullynge, *sb.* colling, embracing, 67/25.  
 Culpe, *sb.* fault. O. Fr. *Coulpe*. A fault, offence.—C. 28/23.  
 Cumæ, 116, 120. See *Enlyola*.  
 Cupid, 50/10.  
 Curtoys, *adj.* Fr. *Courtois*; *ise*. Courteous, gentle, debonaire.—C. 40/16.  
 Cynphe, *sb.* sacrificial cup, 22/2.  
 Cyprus is reached by Dido in her flight, 29.  
 Cyreuyte, *sb.* Fr. *circuit*. A circuit, compasse, going about.—C. 31/23.  
 Cyuyle, *adj.* civil, public, belonging to the state, 14/14.  
 Daedalus flees to Italy, from Crete, 116/33; constructs the labyrinth for Minos, 117; gives advice how to kill the Minotaur, 118; is imprisoned by Minos, 119; makes wings for himself and his son, and thus e escapes, 119.  
 Damoiselle, *sb.* damsel, 128/4; damoyzell, 127/17: the word also was applied to the daughter of a king.  
 Dampnable, *adj.* damnable, condemnable, blameworthy, 44/4. O. Fr. *dampnable*.  
 Darda, or Ardea, 142/23.  
 Dardanus, first king of Troy, 56/15, 124.  
 Debonayr, *adj.* courteous, affable, gentle, 21/8; debonnayr, 22/10.  
 Decesse, *vb. int.* decease, die, 131/28.  
 Deceyuable, *adj.* O. Fr. *Decevable*. Deceivable, deceitfull.—C. 19/22, 73/2.  
 Decore, *vb. t.* decorate, adorn, 24/31. Fr. *Décorer*.  
 Dedied, *pp.* celebrated, 47/6; dedyed, dedicated, 36/16. Fr. *Dédié*.  
 Dedyete, *sb.* ? meaning, 24/13.  
 Deed, *adj.* dead, 19/2.  
 Defendyng: In my body defendyng, Fr. *A mon corps défendant*, against my will, 86/13.  
 Deffaylle, *vb.* Fr. *Defaillir*. Wax feeble, faile.—C. 48/4.  
 Deffyaunce, *sb.* defiance, mistrust, 101/9. Fr. *Défiance*.  
 Defoyle, defoyle, *vb. t.* defile, 20/1, 102/2.  
 Degre, degree, *sb.* step, of ancestry, 11/3; stairs, 104/14. Fr. *Degré*.  
 Delibere, *vb. t.* deliver, 99/9. Comp. O. Fr. *Deliberation*, deliverance.  
 Delices, *sb.* Fr. *Delices*. Delights, pleasures, pastimes.—C. 59/2.  
 Delon, or Delos, 54/18.  
 Delybere, *vb.* Fr. *Deliberer*. To deliberate, advise, consult.—C. 1/27.  
 Delybere, *vb. t.* deliver, 75/27; Comp. O. Fr. *Deliberation*, délivrance.—G.

- Demeane, *vb. t.* bring, 18/28; give forth, utter, 26/9. O. Fr. *Demener*.
- Depart, *vb. t.* distribute, 101/34; separate, 129/26, 144/31.
- Deploracyon, *sb.* bewailing, distress, 15/12.
- Deprecatyn, *adj.* prayerful, 37/10. *Deprecatif*, *adj.* qui a l'habitude de prier.—G.
- Desered, *pp.* desired, 32/2.
- Desiderable, *adj.* desirable, 64/15. Fr. *Desiderable*.
- Despyte, *sb.* debasement, 23/35. O. Fr. *Despit*. Mépris, honte, humiliation.—G.
- Destourne, *vb. t.* unharbour game for hunting, turn aside, 55/4. O. Fr. *Destourner*. Turne, divert, distract, withdraw, remove.—C.
- Destournynge, *sb.* unharbouring, 55/28. See preceding.
- Destylled, distilled, let drop, 37/3.
- Destynacye, *sb.* destiny, fate, 45/14, 52/18, 70/20.
- Destynate, *pp.* destined, ordained, 20/35.
- Destyne, *sb.* strong purpose, or will, as of fate, 31/19. O. Fr. *Destine*.
- Destyne, *vb. t.* To destyne his berthe, make decrees about his birth, predestinate, 41/19.
- Detractive, *adj.* slanderous, disparaging, 23/5. *Detractif*, *adj.* médisant.—G.
- Deturpacyon, *sb.* disfigurement, 109/33. O. Fr. *Deturpacion*, enlaidissement.—G.
- Denote, *adj.* devout, 59/18. Fr. *Dénot*.
- Deuoyr, *sb.* duty, 15/1; endeavour, 38/17. Fr. *Devoir*.
- Denyson, *sb.* division, ? quarreling, 51/24. O. Fr. *Devision*.
- Deye, *vb.* die, 28/11.
- Deyfyque, *adj.* deific, sent by the gods, 64/28. Fr. *Déifique*.
- Dido, daughter of Belus, is married to Sychæus, 25; her sorrow at his murder, 26; leaves Tyre on account of it, 27; sails to Cyprus, 29; settles in Africa, 30; builds Carthage, 31; is demanded in marriage, 34; consults her sister Anna on her love for Aeneas, 41; is encouraged by her, 43; falls madly in love, 47; neglects Carthage through her passion, 49; goes hunting, 53; seeks refuge from the storm in the same cave as Aeneas, 56; is desperate at his projected departure, 65; endeavours to persuade him to stay, 67; reproaches him, 71; bids him depart with curses, 73; in distress sends for her sister, 75; her sufferings compared to those of Orestes, 83; sends again for her sister, 84; desires her to make a fire to burn Aeneas's armour, 86; goes thither with garlands, 87; invokes a witch, 88; her grief and rage at Aeneas's departure, 97; prays for evil to him, 100; prepares for death, 102; slays herself, 35, 106; her death struggles, 109; her beauty, 111; dies, 114; eulogium on her, 36.
- Diffamy, *sb.* defame, infamy, 108/16. O. Fr. *Diffamie*, chose infame.—G.
- Dilectacion, *sb.* dilectation, delight, pleasures of love, 64/1.
- Diodorus Siculus, 4/6.
- Diomedes, 61/29; on his departure from Troy settles at Agrippa, or Argyrippa, 146.
- Dioneus, or Ilioneus, a Trojan, is sent on an embassy by Aeneas, 124; addresses King Latinus, 125.
- Disaraye, *sb.* disorder, 107/4. Fr. *Désarroi*.
- Displaisir, *sb.* displeasure, 94/16. O. Fr. *Displeasure*.
- Dissonant, *adj.* dissonant, at discord, or enmity, 32/10.
- Do, *vb.* make, cause; do shewe, cause to shew, 2/13; do departe, make depart. 12/2; do slee, cause to slay, or be slain, 25/32; dyd it to be taken, made it to be taken, 27/19; doo alyauunce, make alliance, 50/20.
- Dolant, *adj.* O. Fr. *Dolent*. Sorrowfull, heauy, greewing; wretched, miserable.—C. 78/24, 93/29. Dolaunte, 66/22.

- Doled, *adj.* ? infatuated, 67/4, 93/15, 23. This word seems connected with O. Fr. *Doler*, souffrir, which is in G. Comp. *Endulled*.
- Domageous, *adj.* damaging, destructive, 13/23. O. Fr. *Damajos*, *Domageus*.
- Domnage, *sb.* damage, 148/18. Fr. *Dommage*.
- Doubt, *vb. t.* fear, 133/24, 143/2, 153/10.
- Doubtous, *adj.* doubtful, uncertain, 11/24; doubtouse, 65/8, 98/22. O. Fr. *Doubteux*.
- Dounbe, *adj.* dumb, 100/15.
- Dowayr, *sb.* dowry, 51/1; dowayres, dowers, endowments, 11/21. O. Fr. *Doûaire*.
- Drances, or Drastes, 149.
- Draughte, *sb.* spell, stretch, in singing, 80/25.
- Dreddefull, *adj.* full of fear, 18/12; dredfull, causing fear, 103/29.
- Dresse, *vb. int.* stand up, 64/30; dresse vp, set up, 138/18. Fr. *Dresser*.
- Dryopes, an aboriginal Greek tribe, 54/20.
- Durynge, during, 98/25.
- Dyane, or Diana, Fr. *Diane*, 88/22.
- Dycte, *sb.* saying, 24/6. O. Fr. *Diet*.
- Dyde were, did wear, 162/16.
- Dyffame, *sb.* defame, infamy, 110/18.
- Dyfferencyng, differing, 24/14.
- Dyfferre, *vb. t.* defer, 77/11. Fr. *Différer*.
- Dyffycle, *adj.* difficult, 16/14. Fr. *Difficile*.
- Dygne, *adj.* worthy, 24/9, 44/27. Fr. *Digne*.
- Dylection, *sb.* dilection, love, 16/32, 44/22.
- Dyscomfyte, *pp.* discomfited, defeated, 154/9.
- Dyseoure, *vb. t.* discover, reveal. O. Fr. *Descouvrir*. To discover, disclose.—C. 41/3.
- Dyscreasc, *vb. int.* decrease, 2/23. O. Fr. *Descroistre*.
- Dyscute, *vb. t.* discuss, 110/36.
- Dysmoeyed, *pp.* dismoved, dissuaded, turned, 57/4.
- Dyspense, *sb.* dispensation, 46/20.
- Dysperacyon, *sb.* desperation, despair, 108/19, 111/16.
- Dysplaysaunte, *adj.* unhappy, or ? displeasing, 73/24.
- Dyspoye, *vb. t.* unfold, loose, 95/15.
- Dyssolueyon, *sb.* dissoluteness. O. Fr. *Dissolution*. Disorder, excess, looseness of conversation.—C. 23/29.
- Dysymule, *vb. t.* dissemble, hide, 65/18, 71/35. Fr. *Dissimuler*.
- Dystempred, *adj.* stormy, 46/1.
- Dystourne, *vb. t.* turn away, turn aside, 53/6, 74/7. See *Destourne*.
- Edefye, *vb. t.* edify, build, 31/13. Fr. *Edifier*.
- Egal, *adj.* equal, 4/30; Egall, 112/19. Fr. *Egal*.
- Eggs: anecdote about Eggs and Eyren, 2.
- Elysse, or Dido, 23/36. See *Dido*.
- Embrace, *vb. t.* set on fire, 107/2; embrasid, *pp.* fired, 50/3. Fr. *Embraser*. To kindle, inflame.—C.
- Emendes, 83/15; Emmendes, 81/30. The Eumenides, or Furies: Alecto, Megæra, Tisiphone.
- Empesched, *pp.* hindered, 104/7.
- Empesshe, *vb. t.* O. Fr. *Empescher*. To hinder, let, barre, stop.—C. 18/26, 38/13, 17.
- Enbrace, *vb. t.* welcome, receive, 36/17, 40/24. Fr. *Embrasser*. Intreat kindly.—C.
- Enchaunte, *vb. t.* 141/13, apparently means "dare him to come on." Comp. "*Incantare*. Injungere; vehementer rogare," in DUCANGE.
- Enchauntemente, *sb.* from above verb, 141/14.
- Endementes, *sb.* ? ends, contrivances, 16/23.
- Endulled, *pp.* stupid, ? infatuated, 41/15, 94/28: this seems to be the O. Fr. *Endolé*, affligé, in G. Comp. *Doled*.
- Eneade, 16/10. See *Aeneia*.
- Enflammed, *pp.* inflamed, 54/25, 56/6. O. Fr. *Enflamber*, *enflammer*. To inflame, fire.—C.
- Enharnyshed, *pp.* harnessed, 126/

29. Comp. O. Fr. *Enharnacheus*.—G.
- Enhaunsynge, *sb.* enhancing, magnification, fame, 108/10. O. Fr. *Enhauncer*, *enhaunsier*.
- Enlumyne, *vb. t.* O. Fr. *Enluminer*, to illuminate, inlighten.—C. 13/21.
- Enlyola, or Tulyola, 120/11.
- Ennuyouse, *adj.* tiresome, wearisome, 103/19. Fr. *Ennuyeux*.
- Enoynt, *vb. t.* anoint, 60/33. O. Fr. *Enointer*.
- Enpryse, *vb. t.* undertake, 3/33. Comp. O. Fr. *Emprise* = enterprise.
- Ensiewe, *vb. t.* ensue, follow, 15/4; ensiwe, 15/18. O. Fr. *Ensievir*.
- Entame, *vb. t.* Fr. *Entamer*. To cut open, or breake up.—C. 18/8.
- Entende, *vb. int.* attend, 37/14, 99/10. Fr. *Entendre à*. To studie, mind, heed, care for, looke to.—C.
- Entendement, *sb.* wythoute entendement, deprived of sense, 20/28; debylyte of entendement, weakness of understanding, 24/22; fantasme of her entendement, 82/7. Fr. *Entendement*. Understanding, apprehension, iudgement.—C.
- Entermete, *vb. int.* meddle oneself, busy oneself, 3/23; entermytted hymselfe, occupied himself, 135/1. O. Fr. *Entremetre*. *S'entremettre de*. To meddle, or deale with.—C.
- Entermyse, *sb.* undertaking, 55/26. Fr. *Entremise*. An intermedling.—C.
- Enterpryser, *sb.* undertaker, enterprising man, 40/18.
- Entromytret, *vb.* entromytreteth herself, busieth herself, 86/10. See *Entermete*.
- Enuahyshe, enuaysshe, *vb. t.* invade, 55/33, 104/13. Comp. Fr. *Envahir*, *Envahissant*.
- Enwed, *vb. t.* marry, take as wife, 60/31.
- Equypared, *pp.* compared; equal, or like, 82/35, 83/7. O. Fr. *Equiparer*.
- Eschape, *vb. int.* escape, 120/4. O. Fr. *Eschaper*.
- Eschewe, *vb. t.* eschew, avoid, 28/28, 29/21.
- Espace, *sb.* space of time, 31/28, 159/14. Fr. *Espace*.
- Espouse, *sb.* spouse, 68/19. O. Fr. *Espoux*.
- Espryse, *vb. t.* fire, 59/10; esprysed, *pp.* fired, smitten, 25/25, 32/27, 46/18, 65/3, 84/19; set on fire, 94/21. Comp. O. Fr. *Espris*. *S'esprendre*. To fire, to kindle.—C.
- Espyotte, *sb.* *Espieu*. A Partisan, or Captaines leading-staffe.—C. 143/4. Mod. Fr. *Epieu*, boarspear. It seems to mean some kind of spear or javelin here.
- Estoure, *sb.* battle, *mêlée*, stir, tumult, 129/6. O. Fr. *Estor*, *Estour*.
- Ethyopes, or Ethiopians, 84/29.
- Evander, son of Hermes (according to some), is said to have led a colony from Pallantium, in Arcadia, to Italy, where he built the town of Pallantium, which afterwards formed part of Rome. Aeneas seeks aid of him, 130; he sends his son Pallas with Aeneas, 131.
- Exanco, a river, 54/13.
- Exceerable, *adj.* Fr. *Exceerable*. Exceerable, detestable.—C. 22/27.
- Excereyte, *sb.* host, 81/30; excersite, 11/13. O. Fr. *Exercite*. An hoast, or armie of men.—C.
- Exeidyon, *sb.* destruction, 11/7.
- Excysion, *sb.* destruction. O. Fr. *Excision*. A wasting, destroying, razing.—C. 76/27.
- Excytatieue, *adj.* incitatory, exhortative, 78/27.
- Exemplayre, *sb.* example. Fr. *Exemplaire*. A patterne, sample, or sampler; an example.—C. 41/25.
- Exequyes, *sb.* obsequies. O. Fr. *Exequies*.—G. *Exeques*, Funeralls, or funerall solemnities.—C. 36/4.
- Exploit, *vb. t.* hasten, 94/9. See G., *Exploitier*.
- Expowne, *vb. t.* expound, explain, 4/2. Comp. O. Fr. *Esponner*.



- Exstirpe, *vb. t.* extirpate, destroy, 71/15. O. Fr. *Estreper*. Fr. *Exstirper*. To extirpate; root out, or plucke vp by the root.—C.
- Extermynacion, *sb.* close, ending, 80/16.
- Extymacion, *sb.* wythout extymacion, or estimation; ? to an ineffable degree, 95/23.
- Extynct, *vb. t.* extinguish, 43/26, 68/12.
- Extyrp, *vb. t.* See *Exstirpe*, 35/26.
- Exyll, *sb.* emptiness, loneliness, 81/13. Fr. *Exil*. Comp. Latin *Exilis*.
- Eyren, eggs, 2/36: anecdote about usage of the words.
- Facely, *adv.* facilely, with facility, 77/15.
- Facile, *adj.* easy, 75/19; facylle, 49/3. Fr. *Facile*.
- Faicte, *sb.* deed, 107/36. O. Fr. *Faict*.
- Famylar, *adj.* familiar, 111/22. O. Fr. *Famelier*.
- Fanourisshe, *vb. t.* fauourisshe, favour, 45/14. O. Fr. *Favorir*.—G. *Favoriser*, To fauour, grace, countenance.—C.
- Fantasme, *sb.* the fantasme of her entendement, vision of her mind, 82/6; fautasme, 48/26. O. Fr. *Fantasme*, *Fantosme*. Vision, apparition.—C. *Rêverie*.—G.
- Faylled, *pp.* failed, in a fainting state, gone, 19/2.
- Fayntasie, *sb.* fantasy, fancy, 25/14. O. Fr. *Fantasie*.
- Faytte, *sb.* fact, truth, 18/14; deed, act, 20/19, 24/19, 40/17, 41/11. O. Fr. *Faict*. A fact, act, action; a feat, atchieuement.—C.
- Fedder, *sb.* feather, 58/1. Germ. *Feder*.
- Felaship, *sb.* fellowship, company, 55/2; felanshypp, companions, 21/16; felawshyppe, 30/21.
- Fenyce, or Dido, 23/36. See *Dido*.
- Fenyce, or Phœnicia, 24.
- Fenyces, or Phœnicians, invent letters, 24.
- Ferdeful, *adj.* fearful, timid, 41/26.
- Fere, *vb. t.* fear, frighten, 80/16, 138/11.
- Festye, *vb. t.* greet, 63/15. Compare O. Fr. *Festier*: Faire bonne chère à quelqu'un.—G.
- Flagellacyon, *sb.* flagellation, scourging, 73/28.
- Flagitacyon, *sb.* ? flagellation, 96/2.
- Flain, *pp.* flayed, 101/22.
- Flamm, *sb.* on a flamm, in flames, 14/2. Fr. *Flamme*.
- Flote, *sb.* fleet, 27/6, 39/25. Fr. *Flotte*.
- Foison, *sb.* abundance, 87/24. Fr. *Foison*.
- Fonde, *vb. t.* found, invented, 24/25.
- Foole, *sb.* foal, 88/32.
- Force, *sb.* The hunters made no force for it. Comp.—“Ie ne fais point force de cela—I care not for, I force not of, I am not mooned by, that thing.”—C. 55/25.
- Forcened, *adj.* mad, 67/3, 81/5; forsened, 93/15, 106/29. Fr. *Forcene*. Mad, wood, frantick.—C. *Forsené*.—G.
- Forfayte, *sb.* crime, 93/8. Fr. *Forfait*.
- Forfayte, *pp.* He hath forfayte nothyng, done no crime, 137/13.
- Forgetyng, *sb.* forgetting, forgetfulness, oblivion, 15/11.
- Forsenerie, *sb.* madness, 93/4; comp. *Forcened*, above. O. Fr. *Forsenerie*.
- Forthon, from thenne forthon, from thenceforth, 30/1.
- Fortuned, *pp.* welle fortunated, fortunate, 36/10.
- Foundement, *sb.* foundation, 14/9, 19/31, 20/8; foundment, foundation, ground, 33/4. Fr. *Fondement*.
- Foundre, *vb. int.* melt, 75/22, 78/34; fowndre, 93/29; foundre (in the sea), *vb. t.* 97/24. Fr. *Fondre*. Comp. O. Fr. *Fondrer*, mettre au fond: s'effondrer.—G.
- Fowunded, *pp.* founded, 44/28.
- Francesye, *sb.* frensy, 81/26; fransie, 103/28. Fr. *Frénésie*.
- Franchise, *sb.* franchise, freedom, 92/33. Fr. *Franchise*.
- Frawdulouse, *adj.* fraudulent, Fr. *Frauduleux*, 105/13.

- From herselfe, out of her mind, 65/23.  
 Front, *sb.* Fr. *Front*, forehead, 21/20.  
 Frustratoire, *adj.* frustratory, vain, 78/2. Fr. *Frustratoire*.  
 Frustre, *vb. t.* Fr. *Frustrer*. To disappoint, frustrate, defraud.—C. 45/8. Frustred, ? frustrate, disappointing, hostile, 80/33.  
 Fuldo, *vb. t.* complete, perform, 47/12; fuldoo, 88/8.  
 Furiosite, *sb.* fury, rage, 83/12. O. Fr. *Furiosité*.  
 Furour, *sb.* furor, fury, 28/28. Fr. *Fureur*.  
 Furybounde, *adj.* furibond, furious, 71/1. Fr. *Furibond*.  
 Furyosite, 81/27. See *Furiosite*.  
 Fuste, *sb.* fist, 107/13.  
 Fuyte, *sb.* Fr. *Fuite*, flight, 31/6.  
 Fyers, *adj.* fierce, 54/31. Fr. *Fier*.  
 Fynably, *adv.* in the end, at last, 78/2. Comp. Fr. *Finablement*.  
 Fyne, *adj.* fine, perfect, pure, 25/14. Comp. *Fine gold*.  
 Fyole, *sb.* Fr. *Fiole*, phial, 47/4.  
 Gawr, *vb.* stare about, 161/19.  
 Gaynstonde, *vb. t.* gainstand, withstand, 27/11.  
 Gectuses, or Gætulians, 68/26. A people in Northern Africa.  
 Germain, *adj.* Fr. *Germain*; *ive*. Germaine, come of the same stock.—C. 45/8, 75/28.  
 Getules, or Getulæ, in Northern Africa, 44/31. Iarbas, or Yarbas, was their king.  
 Glayue, *sb.* Fr. *Glaive*. A gleave, or sword; also, a lance.—C. 18/5, 159/25. ? Axe, in both quotations, and much like *Guisarme*.  
 Gouverneresse, *sb.* she-ruler, 96/19. O. Fr. *Gouverneresse*.  
 Graffed, *pp.* ? stuck down. O. Fr. *Grafer*, clouer, attacher avec un crampon.—G. 47/24.  
 Granmodre, *sb.* grandmother, 57/21.  
 Graunte, *adj.* grand, great, 10/12. Fr. *Grand*.  
 Gre, *sb.* Fr. *Gre*. Will, willingness; allowance, liking, accord, consent; affection; wish; thanks.—C. 30/31. Gree, 28/22.  
 Greable, *adj.* agreeable, 34/18. O. Fr. *Greable*.  
 Gree, *vb.* agree, 29/6. Fr. *Gréer*.  
 Gresell, *vb. int.* Compare O. Fr. *Greziller*. To wriggle, or stirre as a line fish on a hot gridiron; also, to curl, twirle, frizle haire, etc.—C. 64/30.  
 Grenoble, *adj.* grievable, disagreeable, difficult. Compare O. Fr. *Grevable*, grievous, painefull.—C. 49/2.  
 Gulle, *sb.* O. Fr. *Gule*. Fr. *Gueule*. The throat, gullet, 39/20.  
 Guysarme, *sb.* bill, battle-axe. *Guisarme*. A kind of (offensive) long-handled and long-headed weapon.—C. 18/5.  
 Guyse, *sb.* guise, manner, fashion, 32/11.  
 Habandoned fro all comfort, abandoned, devoid of all comfort, 93/27.  
 Habondaunte, *adj.* abundant, 18/9.  
 Haboundaunce, *sb.* abundance, 19/28.  
 Halowyng, *sb.* hallooing (from grief), 36/3.  
 Hardynes, *sb.* boldness, 31/18, 134/31; hardynesse, boldness, in bad sense, 19/20. Comp. Fr. *Hardi*, *Hardiesse*.  
 Harne, *sb.* arm, 63/31.  
 Haultayn, *adj.* high-minded, 18/24. O. Fr. *Haultain*.  
 Hauoyr, *sb.* O. Fr. *Havoir*, wealth, substance.—C. 14/13, 26/34, 27/13.  
 Herberowe, *vb. t.* harbour, shelter, 130/22, 131/34; herberrowe, 126/18.  
 Heredytall, *adj.* hereditall, 64/21; heredytalle, 70/20. O. Fr. *Hereditat*. Hereditarie—C.  
 Hesperides, 85/3.  
 Hlistoryer, *sb.* historian, 24/7. O. Fr. *Historieur*.  
 Homyside, *sb.* homicide. Fr. *Homicide*. Manslaughter, or murder.—C. 19/26.  
 Honestte, *sb.* O. Fr. *Honesté*, honesty, 37/21.



- Hosse, *sb.* hose, stocking, 89/12.
- Hostel, *sb.* ? temple. O. Fr. *Hostel*.  
An hostell, house, lodging (this word is commonly a marke of greatnesse).—C. 16/33.
- Hydonse, *adj.* hideous, 104/11, 113/31. Fr. *Hideux*: from O. Fr. *Hide*, horreur, frayeur, effroi.—G.
- Hye see, high sea, open sea, 27/25.
- Hyrcania, 71/31. Hyrcania bordered on the Caspian.
- Hysse, *vb. t.* hoist, 116/19. Fr. *Hisser*.
- Iarbas. See *Yarbas*.
- Icarus, escapes by means of wings from prison, with his father, 119; falls into sea and is drowned, 120.
- Leopard, *vb. t.* risk, venture, 33/28.
- Ilumyne, *vb. t.* Fr. *Illuminer*. To illuminate, give light unto.—C. 96/33.
- Illustracyon, *sb.* illustration, lustre, light, 13/20. Fr. *Illustration*.
- Illustre, *vb. t.* illustrate, brighten, give light to, 52/3, 96/33. Fr. *Illustrer*.
- Immole, *vb. t.* immolate. Fr. *Immoler*. To offer, to sacrifice, to offer sacrifice.—C. 79/11, 89/15.
- Imprynted, *pp.* engraved, 48/26. O. Fr. *Empreinter*, graver.—G.
- Inceitatyf, *adj.* incitative, incitatory, hortative, 27/29. Incitatif, *adj.* qui excite.—G.
- Incontynent, *adv.* Fr. *Incontinent*. At once. She dyde it incontynente to be sette in poynt—she at once caused it to be set in order, 34/24, 146/17.
- Inconuenient, *sb.* inconvenient, inconvenience, 76/5. *Inconvenient*, s.m. situation facheuse, malheur.—G.
- Indicatyf, *adj.* indicative, demonstrative, 33/4, 104/5.
- Induces, *sb.* truce, 34/18. Fr. *Induce*. Lat. *Induciae*.
- Induction, *sb.* inference, 44/23; inducing, allurement, 113/22. Fr. *Induction*.
- Indygne, *vb. t.* Fr. *Indigner*. To anger, chafe, driue into wrath.—C. 68/27. Indygned, *pp.* angered, 70/14, 96/11 (indigned).
- Inexplicable, *adv.* inexplicably, inextricably, 49/9. Comp. Fr. *Inexplicablement*.
- Inexpugnable, *adj.* not to be captured, impregnable, 10/12. F. *Inexpugnable*.
- Infecte, *adj.* F. *Infect*; cte. Infect, infected, infectious.—C. 21/26.
- Infestaunce, *sb.* hostility, enmity, 76/36. Comp. *Infestant*.—G.
- Inhibytore, *adj.* inhibitory, prohibitive, 77/35. Fr. *Inhibitoire*.
- Inhomynouse, *adj.* ignominious, disgraceful, shameful, 96/9. Fr. *Ignominieux*.
- Inhoryble, *adj.* horrible, 113/31.
- Iniure, *sb.* injury, wrong, outrage, 108/8. Fr. *Injure*.
- Iniuried, *pp.* insulted, outraged, 102/2. Fr. *Injurier*.
- Inpaciente, *adj.* impatient, 32/15.
- Impudike, *adj.* Fr. *Impudique*. Lasciuious, wanton, vnchast.—C. 37/16.
- Inrenocable, *adj.* irrevocable, 42/29.
- Insolute, *adj.* unusual, 20/30. Fr. *Insolite*.
- Inspecyon, *sb.* ? inspection, 105/27.
- Interrupte, *pp.* interrupted, 49/22.
- Intrinsique, *adj.* intrinsic; within the walls, 91/17; in the land, 105/10; inner, 71/5, 78/30. Comp. *Intrinsequement*. On the inside.—C.
- In-tyl, *prep.* into, 136/2.
- Inuectyue, *adj.* invective, 65/1.
- Inueterate, *adj.* inueterate of euyl dayes, rooted in, accustomed to, 109/31.
- Inuetered *adj.* I. of many yeres, 78/4. Comp. *Inueterate*.
- Inutyle, *adj.* useless. Fr. *Inutile*. Vnprofitable, vngainfull, vnseruiceable.—C. 19/6.
- Iouencellys, *sb.* young men, 124/2. O. Fr. *Jouuencel*.
- Iris, messenger of the gods, is sent by Juno to free Dido's spirit, 109; disputes with Proserpine for Dido's soul, 112; frees Dido, 114.

- Irryte, *vb. t.* irritate, 95/27. Fr. *Irriter*.
- Iulus. See *Ascanius*.
- Iuno raises a storm against Aeneas's fleet, 39; sends a tempest to disperse hunters, 52, 55; sends Iris to dying Dido, 109.
- Iupiter, Arenouse, 59/15; Iupiter sends Mercury to Aeneas, 61.
- Iuste, *vb. int.* ioust, 132/23.
- Iusticer, *sb.* judge, 99/8. Fr. *Iusticier*. A Justice, or Justicer.—C. O. F. *Justiceor*.
- Keme, *vb. t.* comb, 60/33.
- Kynde, *sb.* kind, nature, 103/31.
- Kysshynges, kissings, 43/12.
- Lacrymable, *adj.* lacrimable, lamentable, 32/20. O. Fr. *Lacrimable*.
- Lacryme, *vb. int.* lacrimé, weep, 104/25. O. Fr. *Lagrimer*, *Lacrimier*.
- Lacrymous, *adj.* tearful, 35/4, 36. O. Fr. *Lacriméus*.
- Lacyuyte, *sb.* lasciviousness, 37/17. O. Fr. *Lacivité*.
- Langorous, *adj.* languishing, 20/33. O. Fr. *Langoros*; Fr. *Langoureux*.
- Laomedon cheats the gods who helped to build Troy, 91.
- Late, *vb.* let, 24/17.
- Latheser, Lachesis, one of the Fates, 81/35.
- Latinus, King of Latium, 120; Aeneas sends an embassy to him, 123; he welcomes the Trojans, 126; tries to quiet Turnus, 129; Diomedé sends him a message, 147; wishes for peace with Aeneas, 148; tries to persuade Turnus not to fight Aeneas, 155; gives his daughter Lavinia to Aeneas, 162; his death, 163.
- Lauatorye, *sb.* lavatory, lavingment, 110/7. Fr. *Luvatoire*.—G.
- Laurens, or Laurentum, a city in Latium, the capital of King Latinus, 122, 135, 145, 160.
- Lausus, son of Mezentius, is slain by Aeneas, 143.
- Lavinia, or Lanyne, daughter of Latinus, 120; sought in marriage by Turnus, 145; her grief at Queen Amatha's death, 160; Aeneas wins her by combat with Turnus, 162; marries Aeneas, 163; marries again after the death of Aeneas, 165.
- Lavinium, or Lanyne, a town in Latium, said to have been founded by Aeneas, 62/16.
- Lawrence. See *Laurens*.
- Lecture, *sb.* Fr. *Lecture*. A reading, 24/21.
- Leefully, *adv.* lawfully, 14/35.
- Legacion, *sb.* message sent by an ambassador. F. *Legation*. An embassy.—C. 77/33.
- Lette, *vb. t.* let, hinder, 18/26, 38/13, 123/22.
- Libya reached by Dido, 30; Aeneas's fleet wrecked on the coast, 40.
- Licyte, *adj.* licit. Fr. *Licite*. Lawful, allowable.—C. 70/5, 97/15.
- Lieuer, *adv.* rather, 28/1, 36/23.
- Loange, *sb.* O. Fr. *Loage*; *Loüange*. Laud, praise, commendation; glorie, fame.—C. 36/22, 37/5; loenge, 82/32; loenyngé, 64/22.
- Lombardy, 162, 165.
- Loos, *sb.* honour, 36/20. *Los*, s. m. louange, honneur, reputation.—G.
- Lothlynes, *sb.* loathliness, ill will, estrangement, 30/32; lothliness, loathsomeness, 49/31.
- Lubrik, *adj.* Fr. *Lubrique*. Lubricke, slipperie; deceitfull, uncertaine; lecherous, lascivious.—C. 32/19. Lubryke, 36/29, 37/15.
- Lyberal, *adj.* L arbytre, free will, 44/20.
- Lybidynous, *adj.* lustful, 36/33.
- Lycia, 69/27.
- Lyght, of lyght, ? lightly, easily, 45/6.
- Lygnage, *sb.* lineage. O. Fr. *Lignage*. A linage, progenie, stock.—C. 24/35.
- Lygnée, *sb.* lineage, 29/18; lynce, 58/33, 68/29, 127/11. Fr. *Lignée*.
- Lynered, *pp.* delivered, 72/22. Fr. *Lirer*.
- Maculate, *sb.* spot, stain, 102/9.
- Maculate, *vb. t.* stain, 35/25; *pp.* 20/

18. Lat. *Maculare*. Fr. *Maculer*. To spot, blot; blemish, beray.—C.
- Macule, *sb.* spot, mark, blot (physically), 113/1. Fr. *Macule*.
- Magicienne, *sb.* she-magician. Fr. 88/23.
- Magnifycatly, *adv.* magnificently, 12/19.
- Magnyfyque, *adj.* magnific. Fr. *Magnifique*. Magnificent, haughty, loftie.—C. 25/12, 60/4.
- Magre, mangre, in spite of, against will of, 108/7. O. Fr. *Maugré*.
- Magystracyon, *sb.* mastership, rule, command, 11/12.
- Malencolyouse, *adj.* melancholy, 80/27. O. Fr. *Melancolieus*.
- Maleurouse, *adj.* unhappy, unfortunate, 15/26. Fr. *Malheureux*. O. Fr. *Maleuros*, *Maleureus*.
- Marbryne, *adj.* marble, of marble, 74/10. O. Fr. *Marbrin*.
- March, *sb.* border, 84/26. Fr. *Marche*. A region, coast, or quarter; also, a march, frontire, or border of a countrey.—C.
- Maronner, *sb.* mariner, 29/2. O. Fr. *Maronier*,—*oumier*.
- Mary, *sb.* marrow, 47/17.
- Mason, *vb.* t. lay masonry, build, 49/27. Fr. *Maçonner*.
- Mastresse, *sb.* mistress, 46/33, 99/3. O. Fr. *Maistresse*.
- Mate, *adj.* sad. Fr. *Mat*. Deaded, mated, amated, overcome.—C. 15/6.
- Maundemente, *sb.* charge, order, 70/28. Fr. *Mandement*.
- Maynage, *sb.* household, 29/22. O. Fr. *Mainage*.
- Mayntene, *sb.* carriage, deportment, demeanour, 26/30. Fr. *Maintien*.
- Medle, *vb.* t. meddle, mix, 55/24, 118/27. O. Fr. *Medler*.
- Medlee, *sb.* medly, mêlée, fight, 41/34, 128/29. O. Fr. *Medlee*.
- Medlynge, *sb.* meddling, interference, 41/32.
- Megere, or Megera, one of the Furies, 81/31. Fr. *Mégère*.
- Memore, *sb.* memory, 102/12. O. Fr. *Memore*. Mod. Fr. *Mémoire*.
- Menaige, *sb.* household, vassals, 31/34; meynage, 29/14. O. Fr. *Menaige*.
- Menestus and Segestus, or Mnestheus and Sergestus, 133. They are called Nestor and Sergeste on page 65.
- Mercury sent by Jupiter to Aeneas, 61; is described, 62; is nephew to Atlas, 63; appears in a dream to Aeneas, 93.
- Meruelogus, *adj.* marvellous, 21/32.
- Mesapus, King of Etruria, 133, 138, 151.
- Meschaunte, *adj.* wretched, miserable, 15/35. O. Fr. *Meschant*.
- Meschyne, *sb.* f. wretch, caitiff, 58/29. O. F. *Meschin*. Mod. Fr. *Mesquin*,—*ne*.
- Messenger, *sb.* Fr. *Messenger*. A messenger, 27/22, 71/19.
- Mesure, *sb.* measure, control, 44/34. Fr. *Mesure*.
- Meyne, *sb.* attendants, 29/11. O. Fr. *Mesniée*, *Meyné*.
- Mezentius, King of the Tyrrhenians, slays many Trojans, 142; is killed by Aeneas, 144.
- Mezentius of Sicily, 163.
- Minerva, 118.
- Minos, King of Crete, 116; has tribute of youths and maidens from Aegeus, 117; imprisons Daedalus, 119.
- Minotaur, story of Theseus and, 117.
- Mobyte, *adj.* mobile, movable, unfixed, 71/3, 103/35. Fr. *Mobile*.
- Mobylite, *sb.* mobility, power to stir, 57/12. Fr. *Mobilité*.
- Moche, *adv.* much, very, 38/15, 40/19, 21.
- Mocke, *sb.* mock, mockery, 57/29. O. Fr. *Moque*, *mocque*.
- Moenable, *adj.* movable, 46/6. O. Fr. *Moenable*.
- Moeue, *vb.* t. move, 33/5, 44/15. O. Fr. *Moerve*.
- Moenynge, moving, motion, 20/29.
- Moleste, *sb.* molest, molestation, 50/24. O. Fr. *Molest*.
- Molyfye *vb.* t. Fr. *Mollifier*. To mollifie, soften, supple; make gentle.—C. 42/17; make soft, or muddy, 59/24.
- Mondayn, *adj.* mundane, worldly,

- 79/2 ; mondayne, 10/4. Fr. *Mondayne*.
- Montycle, *sb.* *Monticule*. A hillocke, a small hill.—C. 13/4, 21/23 ; mountycle, 17/10.
- Mortified, *pp.* made dead or senseless, 106/18. O. F. *Mortefier*, *mortifier*.
- Mow, *vb. int.* be able, 98/2 ; mowe, 35/27, 45/6, 11.
- Moyen, *sb.* Fr. *Moyen*. A meane ; course, way ; a meanes.—C. 19/33, 25/28 ; moyens, 40/9.
- Murtyllers cornyllers, 17/15. *Cornillier*. The long cherrie, wild cherrie, or Cornill tree.—C.
- Musitaynes, or Momydes (Nomades, Numidians), 32/25.
- Myrifyke, *adj.* mirific, wonderful, 37/7 ; myryfyke, 24/32. Fr. *Mirifique*. Strangely wrought.—C.
- Myrondes, 44/33, 68/6.
- Myscheffe, *sb.* mischief, mishap, 99/32. O. Fr. *Meschief*.
- Myscheue, *vb. t.* mischief, injure, 94/31.
- Mysell, rayne mysell, mizzling rain, 55/34.
- Myserycorde, *sb.* mercy, 97/32. Fr. *Miséricorde*.
- Myssaye, *vb. t.* missay, slander, 23/2.
- Mystike, *adj.* mystic, holy, 37/17.
- Mystre, *vb. ?* matter, concern, 62/13.
- Naufraged, *pp.* shipwrecked, 66/34, 72/17. Fr. *Naufragé*.
- Nauye, *sb.* navy, fleet, 27/31, 39/12. O. Fr. *Navie*.
- Nauyre, *sb.* navire, fleet, 30/25. O. Fr. *Navire*.
- Nayssaunce, *sb.* Fr. *Naissance*. Birth, 27/1.
- Nedefull, *adj.* needful, necessitous, 100/11.
- Nephande, *adj.* infamous, accursed, 26/6, 32/4. O. Fr. *Nephande*.
- Neptune, 38 ; raises a storm against Aeneas's fleet, 39 ; helps to build Troy, 91.
- Nestor, or Mnestheus, 65/12. See Menestus.
- Neweli, *adv.* newly, lately, 41/13.
- Nisus and Euryalus, account of them, 133—138.
- Nocible, *adj.* hurtful, 49/7.
- Norryture, *sb.* Nurture, nourishment, 85/11. O. Fr. *Norriture*. Mod. Fr. *Nourriture*.
- Noryce, *sb.* O. Fr. *Norrice*, mod. Fr. *Nourrice*, nurse, 78/27.
- Nuysaunce, *sb.* Fr. *Nuisance*. Nuisance, hurt, offence, annoyance, harme, damage.—C. 23/1.
- Nuysible, *adj.* Fr. *Nuisible*, Hurtful, 76/33, 89/34.
- Nyuysse, goddess of fountains, 59/16.
- Obeysaunt, *adj.* obedient, 34/34. Fr. *Obeissant*.
- Obfusked, *pp.* offuscated, obscured, 41/15. O. Fr. *Obfusqué*. Mod. Fr. *Offusqué*.
- Obgectyf, *adj.* objective, 104/2. Fr. *Objectif*.
- Oblish, *vb. ?* abolish, 86/30.
- Obmyssse, *vb.* omit, 110/36.
- Obprobre, *sb.* *Opprobre*, a reproach.—C. 76/36. O. Fr. *Obprobre*.
- Obsiquyes, *sb.* obsequies, funeral rites, 21/12. O. Fr. *Obsequie*.
- Occision, *sb.* Fr. *Occision*. An occision, killing, slaying ; also a murder, or slaughter.—C. 141/4.
- Occysion, 13/12, 83/11 ; ocsicion, 105/32.
- Oore, *sb.* oar, 16/1 ; orys, oars, 95/34.
- Oost, *sb.* host, 91/3, 133/30 ; ooste, 132/28.
- Operrydes, or Hesperides, 85.
- Opprobre, *sb.* Fr. *Opprobre*. A reproach ; a defamatorie taunt ; vpbraiding.—C. 96/9.
- Orage, *sb.* Fr. *Orage*. A storme, tempest, orage.—C. 46/1, 52/8.
- Orestes, tortured by Proserpine for slaying his mother, 83.
- Orion, the constellation, 46/2.
- Ornate, *vb. t.* adorn, 79/33. Lat. *Ornare*, *ornatus*.
- Oroysen, *sb.* orison, prayer, 153/3. O. Fr. *Oroison*.
- Oublyaunce, *sb.* O. Fr. *Oubliance*. Obluion, forgetfulness.—C. 24/24.
- Ouer-run, *vb. t.* outrun, 55/10.
- Ouersee, *vb. t.* look over 2/2.

- Ouertake, *pp.* overtaken, overcome, 48/6.  
 Outrage, *sb.* outrage, 98/32. O. Fr. *Oultrage*.  
 Ounurage, *sb.* work, 20/9; Ourage, 13/33, 24/33. Fr. *Ouvrage*.  
 Ovid, 3/25.  
 Ozon, a Trojan, 158/25.  
  
 Palantyne, King of Arcadia, 130/26.  
 Palatine, Mount, 130/23.  
 Palence, or Pallantium, a city founded by Evander on the site of Rome, 130/25, 131/1.  
 Palencya, daughter of Evander, 130/28.  
 Palinurus, master of Aeneas's ship, 96/15; falls into sea and is drowned, 116.  
 Pallas, son of Evander, 130/29; accompanies Aeneas, 131; slain by Turnus, 140; his body is sent home, 145.  
 Palusshe, *sb.* marsh, 42/23.  
 Paralesye, *sb.* paralysis, 110/2. Fr. *Paralytie*.  
 Pardurable, *adj.* perdurable, continual, perpetual, 59/22, 100/29. Fr. *Perdurable*.  
 Parellys, *sb.* perils, 38/20.  
 Parent, *sb.* relation, 98/27, 100/23. Fr. *Parent*.  
 Parent, *adj.* related by birth, 112/3.  
 Pareyll, *sb.* peril, 148/24.  
 Parforce, *vb. t.* perforce, compel, 75/26; parforce, 71/25. O. Fr. *Parforceier—cer*.  
 Parfournyshe, *vb. t.* complete. Fr. *Parfournir*. To performe, consummate.—C. 62/17.  
 Paris, son of Priam, 38/4.  
 Parlyamente, *sb.* parley, conference, 30/33. O. Fr. *Parlement*.  
 Pasiphæe, wife of Minos, 117.  
 Passe, *vb. int.* pass, die, 108/25.  
 Passynge, *sb.* a passynge, a dying, 159/3. Comp. *Passing bell*.  
 Pastoure, *sb.* pastor, shepherd, 108/23. O. Fr. *Pastore—toure*.  
 Pathere, a city in Lycia, 54/14.  
 Patron, *sb.* Fr. *Patron*. The master of a ship, 95/6.  
 Patrone, *sb.* Fr. *Patron*. Pattern, example, 15/2.  
  
 Pausesse, *sb.* pavisse, or large shield covering the body, 138/20. O. Fr. *Pavois*.  
 Peas, *sb.* peace, 50/27; pease, 50/20. O. Fr. *Pais*. Mod. Fr. *Paix*.  
 Pencyf, *adj.* pensive, thoughtful, Fr. *Pensif*, 15/30.  
 Percyfulle, *adj.* pensiful, pensive, 48/22.  
 Pentheus, 81.  
 Perdurable, *adj.* perpetual, 93/2. Fr. *Perdurable*.  
 Perisshe, *vb. t.* perish, destroy, ruin, 86/26.  
 Periuremente, *sb.* perjury, 90/17. O. Fr. *Perjurement*.  
 Permanable, *adj.* Fr. *Permanable*. Permanent, constant, durable, 32/34.  
 Permute, *vb. t.* change, 72/13. Fr. *Permuter*.  
 Perpetred, *pp.* perpetrated, committed, 26/7, 37/26. Fr. *Perpétrer*.  
 Perturbatyfic, *adj.* perturbative, disorderly, 46/7.  
 Pestyferre, *adj.* Fr. *Pestifere*. Pestiferous, pestilent, deadlie.—C. 95/27.  
 Phœbus helps to build the walls of Troy, 91/20.  
 Piece, *sb.* armed at all pieces, fully armed, 14/15.  
 Pietous, *adj.* sorrowful, 26/30. O. Fr. *Pitos*, compatissant.—G. See *Pyetous*.  
 Pietously, *adv.* sorrowfully, 76/23. See *Pietous*.  
 Pistelles, *sb.* epistles, 120/21.  
 Placable, *adj.* ? appeasing, appeasable, 37/2.  
 Plasmator, or Polymestor, King of Thrace, receives Polydorus, and afterwards murders him for his money, 12, 16, 17, 18.  
 Playsaunce, *sb.* pleasure, enjoyment. Fr. *Plaisance*. Mirth, sport, pleasure, festiuitie.—C. 34/29.  
 Playsaunte, *adj.* pleasant, pleasing, 48/11. Fr. *Plaisant*.  
 Playse, *vb. t.* please, 38/16.  
 Plentyuous, *adj.* ? fertile, 31/29. O. Fr. *Plentuos*, *Plentuus*.—G.  
 Polydorus, son of Priam, sent away during the siege of Troy, 12; is



- murdered by Plasmator, or Polymestor, 12; Aeneas sacrifices on his grave, 17; Polydorus addresses Aeneas from his grave, 19; his obsequies, 21.
- Pompouse, *adj.* pompous. Fr. *Pompeux—euse*. Pompous, magnificent, stately, sumptuous.—C. 14/12.
- Poorte, *sb.* gate, 49/18. Fr. *Porte*.
- Poplesie, *sb.* apoplexy, 110/1.
- Porte, *sb.* port, 102/20. Fr. *Port*.
- Porneyd, *pp.* provided (of = with), 21/35; pourueyed, 22/31. O. Fr. *Pourveoir*.
- Possede, *vb.* t. possess, 26/35. Fr. *Posséder*.
- Poulder, *sb.* powder, dust, 44/11. O. Fr. *Pouldre*.
- Pounde, *sb.* pond, lake, 90/1, 103/15.
- Pourfyllid, *pp.* purfled. O. Fr. *Pourfiler d'or*. To purfle, tinsel, or cuereast with gold thread, &c.—C. 53/31.
- Pourpre, *adj.* purple, 83/1; purple, 82/36. Fr. *Pourpre*.
- Poynt, Poynte, *sb.* in poynte, in order, 30/26, 34/24, 54/7; *En point*.—C. Poynte mortalle, point of death, 67/36.
- Prenostycature, *sb.* prognostic, 80/31.
- Presagious, *adj.* presaging, foretelling, 80/30. Fr. *Presagieux*.
- Preste, *adj.* ready, 53/27. O. Fr. *Prest*.
- Prestresse, *sb.* priestess, 66/9, 85/2, 88/1. O. Fr. *Prestresse*.
- Preterit, *adj.* preterite, deceased, 34/14; preteryte, 26/31. O. Fr. *Preterit—ite*. Past, gone, departed.—C.
- Pren, *adj.* O. Fr. *Preux*. Hardie, doughtie, valiant, full of prowess.—C. 44/17, 118/6.
- Priam, 11.
- Proesse, *sb.* prowess, 143/30, 145/14.
- Profferre, *vb.* t. prefer, 134/19.
- Promytte, *vb.* promise, 61/25, 85/21.
- Propice, Propyce, *adj.* propitious, 21/8, 31/19, 33/12, 76/19, 94/8. Fr. *Propice*.
- Prore, *sb.* prow, 29/7.
- Prosapye, *sb.* stock, race, 24/36. Lat. *Prosapia*.
- Proserpine tortures Orestes, 83; her power over mortals, 109, 110; claims Dido's soul, 111.
- Proverne, or Privernum, a Volscian town, and capital of King Metapus, 129/34.
- Proye, *sb.* prey, booty, 145/12. Fr. *Proie*.
- Prune *vb.* t. pick feathers (of a bird), 63/22.
- Prymeface, of p. = Fr. *De primeface*. At the first, at first sight.—C. 56/7.
- Pryuated, *pp.* deprieved, 85/35, 99/28.
- Pryue, *adj.* privy, private, belonging to the family, 35/11, 73/31.
- Pryue, *vb.* t. prive, deprive, Fr. *Priver*, 70/18; *pp.* 19/5.
- Pucelle, *sb.* maiden, Fr., 121/5, 146/5.
- Pudeyque, *adj.* Fr. *Pudique*. Chast, pure, modest.—C. 32/35; pudike, 37/17; pudyke, 36/25.
- Puyllie, Apulia, 147/1.
- Puyssant, *adj.* puissant, powerful, 10/19.
- Puyssaunce, *sb.* power, might, 19/4.
- Pyetous, *adj.* wretched, piteous, sorrowful, 13/25, 15/20, 29/1, 35/10, 36/11, 80/16; pyetouse, pitiful, merciful, 73/19. See *Pietous*.
- Pyetously, *adv.* lamentably, sorrowfully, 107/14.
- Pygmalion, King of Phœnicia, and Dido's brother, succeeds Belus, 25; murders Acerbas, or Sychæus, his brother-in-law, 25; 45/8, 81/20.
- Pylades, 83/22.
- Pynacle, *sb.* Fr. *Piacle*. Lat. *Piaculum*. Propitiatory sacrifice, 103/9: ?confusion with *pæna*.
- Pysmer, *sb.* pismire, ant, 74/29.
- Quake, *vb.* t. shake, make fearful, 80/16.
- Quarellouse, *adj.* querulous, 80/9. Fr. *Querelleux*.
- Quareyll, *sb.* quarrel, bolt for crossbow, 158/10.
- Quarfour, *sb.* public place, 88/14.

- O. Fr. *Quarrefour*. The place in a towne whereat four streets meet ahead. *Par tous les quarrefours de*. Throughout all the four Quarters, corners, or streets of.—C.
- Queyntli, *adv.* quaintly, elegantly, politely, 40/15.
- Rageouse, *adj.* raging, 81/26. Fr. *Rageux*.
- Rayson, *sb.* reason, cause, 33/4, 46/11. Fr. *Raison*.
- Reboute, *vb. t.* rebut. Fr. *Rebouter*. To repulse, driue backe, repell.—C. 40/32.
- Reclose, *vb. t.* shut up, confine, 92/27.
- Recomfort, *sb.* refreshment, cheer, 68/21, 84/16; recomforte, 79/3. Fr. *Reconfort*.
- Recordaunce, *sb.* care, heed, 61/22; mindfulness, 90/31.
- Recountre, *vb. t.* encounter, meet as an enemy, 39/7, 55/13, 99/21. Fr. *Rencontrer*.
- Recuel, *sb.* Fr. *Recueil*. A welcome, or intertainment.—C. 66/30.
- Recuyelle, *vb. t.* receive, 39/30; recule, entertain, 40/11. O. Fr. *Recueillir*.
- Reed, *adj.* red, 21/16.
- Reffuse, *sb.* refusal, 35/28. Fr. *Refus*.
- Reforced, *pp.* made stronger, 66/19.
- Refute, *sb.* respite, 81/24. Comp. *Refutare*. Rem dimittere.—DUCANGE.
- Related, *pp.* carried down, 78/14.
- Releuement, *sb.* relief. O. Fr. *Relevement*. A raising, lifting vp; releening, reuiuing, restoring.—C. 113/26.
- Remyse, *vb. t.* set again, replace, 39/30, 92/30, 94/33.
- Rendre, *vb. t.* render, deliver, set free, 37/16. Fr. *Rendre*.
- Renomed, *adj.* renowned, 11/1; renommied, 4/31, 44/17. Fr. *Renommé*.
- Renomme, *sb.* renown, 50/1; renommee, 24/10, 37/6, 57/11. Fr. *Renommée*.
- Rent, *vb. t.* tear asunder, 76/33.
- Renues, *sb.* revenues, 77/28.
- Replenysshed, *adj.* full, 42/36, 81/5.
- Repreue, *vb. t.* reprove, 33/19.
- Repulse, *vb. t.* repulse ayenst, rebuff, repel, 44/21.
- Resolysitude, *sb.* fresh anxiety, 92/31.
- Resplendysshannt, *adj.* O. Fr. *Resplendissant*. Resplendent, shining, glistering, radiant.—C. 37/3.
- Resplendysse, *vb. int.* O. Fr. *Resplendir*. To shine, glitter, streame, blaze.—C. 32/7.
- Retch, *sb.* ratch, or running hound, 53/16.
- Retourne, *vb. t.* turn, change, 97/32. Fr. *Retourner*.
- Retrybue, *vb. t.* Fr. *Retribuer*. Requite, recompence, reward.—C. 89/25.
- Reuerte, *vb. t.* turn back, restore, 43/5.
- Reuthe, *sb.* sorrow, 44/4; rewthles, 66/23.
- Reygne, *sb.* reign, kingdom. O. Fr. *Regne*. A realme.—C. 125/20.
- Reyny, *adj.* rainy, 56/30.
- Reyse, *vb. int.* raise, be enhanced, 32/25.
- Reysynge, *sb.* raising, starting from lair, 53/14.
- Rightwisnes, *sb.* righteousness, justice, 60/13.
- Roche, *sb.* rock, 63/20, 73/21. Fr. *Roche*.
- Roddy, *adj.* ruddy, 112/29.
- Romulus and his successors, 121.
- Roome, Rome, 82/27.
- Royalme, *sb.* realm, 16/2, 20/6; royame, 25/7. O. Fr. *Royaulme*.
- Rudesse, *sb.* roughness, force, 139/1. Fr. *Rudesse*.
- Rychesses, *sb.* riches, 25/20. Fr. *Richesse*.
- Rynage, *sb.* shore, strand, 12/33, 29/26, 102/20. Fr. *Rivage*.
- Ryuele, *sb.* wrinkle, 110/29.
- Sacraire, *sb.* O. Fr. *Sacraire*. A priuate chappell, or oratorie.—C. 79/29. Sacrayre, 80/2; sacraryes, 59/20.
- Sacryfye, *vb. t.* sacrifice, sacrifice, 87/11. Fr. *Sacrificer*.



- Sacyate, *pp.* satiate, satiated, 65/34.  
 Sadde, *adj.* settled, sober, 113/13.  
 Salute, *vb. t.* salute, 124/12. Fr. *Saluer*.  
 Sangwynouse, *adj.* bloody, 103/36.  
 Sapyntree, fir-tree, 63/7. Fr. *Sapin*.  
 Sarestum. See *Sergestus*.  
 Sawte, *sb.* assault, 138/17.  
 Sawtyng, *sb.* assaulting, 161/35.  
 Scume, *sb.* scum, foam, 53/29.  
 Seassyng, *sb.* ceasing, cessation, 124/33.  
 Seceo, 57/24.  
 Seche, *vb. t.* seek, 23/4.  
 Secondyng, *sb.* secondine, or after-birth; the skin that envelops the foetus before birth, 89/5.  
 Seduct, *vb. t.* seduce, 97/14.  
 Seductor, *sb.* seducer, 60/30.  
 Semblable, *adj.* semblably, in like manner, 54/18, 78/16. Fr. *Semblable*.  
 Separe, *vb. t.* separate, 42/32, 44/9. Fr. *Séparer*.  
 Sepulture, *sb.* burial-place, 114/29.  
 Sequele, *sb.* O. Fr. *Sequle*. A great man's train or followers, 22/12, 39/11.  
 Sergestus, a Trojan, 65/12, 160.  
 Seruage, *sb.* Fr. *Serrage*. Seruitude, slauerie, bondage, thrall-dome.—C. 102/1, 117/33.  
 Seygnorie, *sb.* Fr. *Seigneurie*.  
 Seignorie, lordship; Lordship, or Mannor.—C. 35/1.  
 Shwed, sewed, 143/25.  
 Siege, *sb.* seat, abode, 37/8. Fr. *Siège*.  
 Simois, a port at the mouth of the Simois, near Troy, 15/30.  
 Simulatyue, *adj.* simulative, simulated, feigned, 77/16.  
 Skelton, John, Poet Laureate, 3/34.  
 Slyped, *pp.* ? sharpened, 107/23.  
 Slypper, *adj.* slipper, slippery, inconstant, 32/18, 36/29.  
 Socourable, *adj.* Fr. *Secourable*.  
 Succouring, helpful; ready or willing to releue.—C. 12/11, 116/11.  
 Solempnelle, *adj.* solemn, 60/5.  
 Solitare, *adj.* lonely, 80/21. Fr. *Solitaire*.  
 Somme, *sb.* in a somme, sum, or body, all at once, 97/25.  
 Somtyme, *adj.* once, former, 27/14.  
 Sonde, *sb.* sand, 18/29.  
 Sorte, *sb.* Fr. *Sort*. Destiny, 72/29.  
 Soubdaynely, *adv.* suddenly, 55/33. O. Fr. *Soubdain*.  
 Sourge, *sb.* surge, 18/9, 26/2.  
 Souuenaunce, *sb.* Fr. *Souvenance*.  
 Memorie, remembrance.—C. 24/20.  
 Spece, *sb.* Fr. *Espèce*, kind, 79/18.  
 Sperkell, *sb.* sparkle, spark, 43/20.  
 Stellyferaunt, *adj.* stelliferous, 95/26.  
 Styge, the Styx, river in hell, 103/14.  
 Stygian Gate of Troy alone left, 13.  
 Stypende, *vb. t.* pay, 38/26. Fr. *Stipendier*.  
 Styches, *sb.* stitches, running pains, 110/2.  
 Subcombe, *vb. int.* succumb, give way, yield, 81/7.  
 Subcombed, *pp.* in whom they were subcombed, ? among whom they were in servitude, 35/34.  
 Subgeit, *adj.* subject, 62/5; subget, *sb.* 4/28; subgette, *adj.* 11/27, 34/34. O. Fr. *Subjet*.  
 Submyse, *vb. int.* submit, 36/24. Comp. O. Fr. *Soubmis*.  
 Subsidiuous, *adj.* aiding, helping, 71/29.  
 Suffoke, *vb. t.* suffocate, drown, 77/23. Fr. *Suffoquer*.  
 Suffoung, *vb. t.* suffumigate, 87/26. Comp. *Suffumigation*. A suffumigation.—C.  
 Suffretous, *adj.* Fr. *Souffreteux*. Wretched, 13/27, 19/24.  
 Suppost, *sb.* suppost indicatyf, ? the demonstrative subsidiary organs, opposed to the cogitative or reasoning ones, giving action to the latter, 104/5. O. Fr. *Suppost*, *Suppôt*.  
 Suppryme, *vb. t.* suppress, 48/19. Fr. *Supprimer*.  
 Sycheus. See *Acerbas*.  
 Sylvius Postunus, half-brother to Ascanius, 164, 165.  
 Simulacre, *sb.* statue. O. Fr. *Simulachre*. Figure, semblance, resemblance.—C. 47/9.  
 Syn, *adv.* afterwards, 63/20, 144/18.

- Synacle, *sb.* ? for *Pinnacle* (see that word), 21/33.  
 Synagoge, *sb.* place of worship, 46/28.  
 Syncopise, *vb. int.* faint, 25/35.  
 Synystre, *adj.* sinister, unlucky, 33/22, 35/26. Fr. *Sinistre*.  
 Sythera slain by Aeneas, 140/8.  
 Takled, *pp.* rigged, 93/31.  
 Talowed, *pp.* tallowed, 74/21; to make the ships tight.  
 Tamyse, river Thames, 2/27. Fr. *Tamise*.  
 Tapysserye, *sb.* tapestry, 48/23, 60/3. Fr. *Tapiserie*.  
 Tapyte, *sb.* carpet, 41/30.  
 Tarcays, *sb.* Turquoise, 54/1.  
 Tarquinius Priscus, 121.  
 Tarye, *vb. t.* cause to tarry, stop, 49/11, 85/30.  
 Taynture, *sb.* O. Fr. *Teinture*. A tincture, dying, staining, colouring.—C. 24/29.  
 Teeth, *sb.* jags, or irregularities in stones for building, 49/26.  
 Tenebres, *sb.* O. Fr. *Tenebres*. Darkness, obscurity.—C. 14/14, 97/1.  
 Tenebrose, *adj.* dark, 53/6. Fr. *Ténébreux*.  
 Tenebrosite, *sb.* darkness, 13/17.  
 Termyne, *vb. t.* finish, 36/30. Fr. *Terminer*.  
 Terys, *sb.* tears, 75/13.  
 Testymonage, *sb.* testimony, evidence, witness, 53/2, 73/9.  
 Thalamus, King of Arcadia, 130/18.  
 Thebes, 82/9; meaning Thebes in Egypt, and the Greek Thebes.  
 Theseus kills the Minotaur, 119.  
 Thesypho, or Tisipho, one of the Furies, 81/31.  
 Thetys, nephew of Aeneas, 116/30.  
 Tholomeus, or Tolumnius, 157.  
 Thrace, 16, 22.  
 Thyas, 66/9. Gr. *Thuias*, inspired or mad priestess.  
 Thyrayn, *adj.* Tyrian, of Tyre, 33/7.  
 Titan, the sun, 96/31.  
 Tocomynge, *adj.* future, 4/21.  
 Tofore, *prep.* before, 16/19; to fore, *adv.* before, 24/1.  
 To-gyder, together, 35/7.  
 Tonyre, or Tiber, 120/26, 130/24.  
 Torne, *vb. int.* turn, 35/27.  
 Tourment, *sb.* torment, agitation, 96/2.  
 Tourment, *vb. t.* torment, agitate, 75/17.  
 Tourne, *sb.* tourney, 132/19. O. Fr. *Tournei*.  
 Transmyse, *vb. t.* transmit, 52/2.  
 Traueylled, *pp.* travelled, tired, 85/19.  
 Traytice, *adj.* narrow, like a line, pencilled, 112/24; Traytysse, 112/36. O. Fr. *Traictis*. 'Her nose tretys.' CHAUCER, *Prolog. Cant. Tales*, 152.  
 Tremoure, *sb.* tremor, quaking, 60/9.  
 Triews, *sb.* truce, 100/2; tryewes, 145/20; tryews, truce, respite, 90/5. O. Fr. *Trues*.  
 Trist, *adj.* sad, 103/24; tryst, 84/5, 92/6; tryste, 59/33. Fr. *Triste*.  
 Troy, said to have been built by Priam, 11; destroyed by the Greeks, 13; New Troy, or Acesta, 115.  
 Trystesse, *sb.* sadness, 80/28, 90/13. Fr. *Tristesse*.  
 Tully, or Cicero: his Epistles translated by John Skelton, 4/6.  
 Tulyola, an island (called also Enlyola), 116/29.  
 Turbacion, *sb.* Fr. *Turbation*. A trouble, or troubling; a disturbance, molestation, disquieting.—C. 92/32.  
 Turnus, King of the Rutulians, courts Lavinia, 121; son of King Darynus, or Daunus, 126; wrath at Aeneas, 127; attacks Ascanius, and loses his son, 128; begins war against Aeneas, 129; lays siege to Aeneas's camp, 132; slays Pallas, 140; is deceived by an apparition, 141; has altercation with Drances, 149; aids in defence of Laurentum, 150; proposes single combat with Aeneas, 154; makes covenant about the duel, 156; makes havoc among the Trojans, 158; fights Aeneas, and is slain, 162.  
 Tuscany, 129/33.  
 Tutryce, *sb.* guardian. Fr. *Tutrice*.

- A tutrix, or tuteresse; a gardian-  
esse.—C. 85/5.  
Tymorysite, *sb.* timorosity, fear,  
20/29.  
Tyre, 25/8, 92/15.  
Tyrians, 33/7, 56/13, 81/18.  
Tytan, the sun, 96/31.  
  
Ualle, *sb.* valley, 129/33.  
Uery, *adj.* very, true, 37/18. Fr.  
*Vrai*.  
  
Vacabonde, *adj.* vagabond, wander-  
ing, 15/28. O. Fr. *Vacabon*.  
Vagaunt, *adj.* vagrant, wandering,  
with no settled habitation, 45/2,  
81/10.  
Vaillyantyse, *sb.* valiance, bravery.  
O. Fr. *Vaillantise*. Valiantnesse.  
—C. 22/32.  
Valyde, *vb. t.* vouch for, corroborate,  
65/6.  
Vassaylle, *sb.* vessel, 39/15.  
Vaticynaunte, *adj.* vaticinant, 29/11.  
Vegyalle, *adj.* vegetal. Fr. *Vege-  
tal*. Vegetal, hauing or giuing a  
(plant-like) life.—C. 19/10.  
Vengable, *adj.* vengeful, 153/6.  
Vengeresse, *sb. f.* Fr. *Vengeresse*.  
Female avenger, 99/7.  
Venus and Juno debate about the  
marriage of Aeneas and Dido, 50.  
Vernylus, or Venulus, returns to  
King Latinus from an embassy,  
146.  
Verytable, *adv.* veritably, 41/18.  
Vierge, *sb.* virgini, 88/22. Fr. *Vierge*.  
Vilete, *sb.* vility, abasement, dis-  
grace, 108/11. Fr. *Vileté*.  
Virgil, 23/16.  
Viryle, *adj.* virile, manly, 36/20.  
Fr. *Viril*.  
Vitupere, *sb.* *Vitupere*. Dispraise,  
disparagement, reprehension,  
blame.—C. 100/5; vitupere, 77/1.  
Vitupere, *vb. t.* disparage, revile,  
105/18. Fr. *Vitupérer*.  
Vltryce, *sb. f.* female avenger, 99/7.  
Vlutaine, *adj.* howling, yelling,  
99/4.  
Vncuryously, *adv.* carelessly, 15/4.  
Vndresette, *vb. t.* set under, put as  
prop, give as voucher, 44/20.  
Vunde, *sb.* wave, 15/31. Fr. *Onde*.  
Vnneth, *adv.* scarcely, 24/8.  
Voluntee, *sb.* will, 19/23. Fr.  
*Volonté*.  
Voluptee, *sb.* pleasure, 43/26. Fr.  
*Volupté*.  
Vorage, *sb.* *Vorage*. A gulfe, whirl-  
poole.—C. 39/18.  
Voraygeouse, *adj.* whirling, 67/6.  
Fr. *Vorageux*.  
Voyde, *vb. t.* voyde oute, send out,  
102/27.  
Vplondyssli, *adj.* uplandish, out-  
landish, 3/15.  
Vyceta, mother of Evander, 130/20.  
  
Waraunt, *sb.* safety, 139/14.  
Wawe, *sb.* wave, 15/31, 16/1, 39/19.  
Weddre, *sb.* weather, strong weddre,  
stormy weather, 114/18; wedre,  
56/30.  
Weddrynge, *sb.* storm, 60/9; wed-  
rynge, 52/17, 55/32.  
Weder, *sb.* wether sheep, 46/30.  
Wele, *sb.* weal, welfare, 28/21;  
comyn wele, common weal, 33/27.  
What = why, 155/2.  
Wodnesse, *sb.* woodness, madness,  
111/18; woodnes, 28/17.  
Woode, *adj.* mad, angry, 39/23.  
Wyage, *sb.* voyage, 70/8.  
Wydowhed, *sb.* widowhood, 32/36.  
Wyke, *sb.* week, 26/26.  
Wyllynge accomplysshe, determin-  
ing to bring about, 55/18.  
Wythout to, 70/32, 36.  
  
Yarbas, or Iarbas, King of the  
Gætulæ, is angry at the reports  
about Dido and Aeneas, 59; com-  
plains to Jupiter that Dido has  
rejected his love, 60.  
Yate, *sb.* gate, 13/28, 41/31.  
Yde, Ide, or Ida, a mountain and  
forest near Troy, 15/33.  
Yefte, *sb.* gift, 41/21, 112/17.  
Yeue, *vb. t.* give, 41/22.  
Yocked, *pp.* yoked, 89/36.  
Yolus, or Iulus, 1/11, 14/33. See  
*Iulus*.  
Yolus, or Aeolus, 38/14, 39/8. See  
*Acolus*.  
Yongthe, *sb.* youth, 29/16, 43/9.  
Yteratyne, *adj.* iterative, repeated,  
35/13.

COLLATION WITH MR. ALFRED H. HUTH'S  
COPY OF THE FRENCH ORIGINAL, 1483,

By F. J. FURNIVALL.

Page & line

- 10/6 Eneydos] *esneydes*  
10/8 many] *moult de*  
10/22 opene] *et ouvrir*  
10/23-4 It behoueth] *Fault*  
10/25 the excellentest] *l'excellence*  
11/3 stocke of Dardanns] *souche de Dardanus*  
11/4 Electra] *Clectra*  
11/6-8 of kynges, And the sayd Troye, was enuyronned in fourme of siege / and of excidyon, by Agamenon, kyng in grece] *des roys fut enuironnee en forme de siege et de occidion par Agamenon grecois*  
11/11 princes & grekes] *princes grecois*  
11/13 the excersite and hoost] *l'excersite et ost*  
11/16 renommed] *rommee*  
11/20 god] *les dieux.* emprysed] *entreprins*  
11/25-6 To that one enereacyng] *aux vngz en leur accroissant*  
11/27 to that other] *aux autres*  
11/32 Pryame thenne wyll teshewe & helpe for thynges] *Priame doncques voulant subuenir aux choses*  
12/1 were ouerthrowen fro his name] *precepitassent de son nom premier.* (In 12/2 Caxton makes *premier* an adverb to *separa*, he dyd do departe.)  
12/4 In hopyng] *Esperant*  
12/6 wyth a grete] *en grant*  
12/7-8 stronge corage, wyth rychesse ynough] *force courageuse. en richesse copieuse*  
12/9 tresour and Iewellis] *et mise en ioyaulx*  
12/10 enduryng] *pendant*

Page & line

- 12/11 right socourable] *ami tressecourable*  
12/16 chaungyng] *mua*  
12/17 endured] *somme*  
12/27-8 and the sayd troians myserable semed better to lose] *Et sembloient mieulx lesdictz troians miserables*  
12/31 mynde] *pensee*  
12/35 in whiche] *auquel*  
12/36 whiche he bare] *quil auoit porte*  
13/1 so traytoursly] *traicieusement*  
13/4 a lityl hille or montycle] *vng petit mont.*  
13/9-10 the force and strengthe of the troyians] *la force troyanne*  
13/12 lityl damage and hurte] *peu de dommaige*  
13/15 broyled and brente] *arse et brulee*  
13/18 the place hadde embraced and yssued oute] *du lieu embrase yssoit*  
13/19 wythholden] *reselle*  
13/21 to enlumyne] *enluminerent*  
13/24 deuourynge the pompe] *deuoratif de la pompe*  
13/25 pyetous] *pitoyable*  
13/27 brent] *arse*  
13/28 of the yates] *des parties*  
13/29 the yate stex] *la porte stee (& in p. 14, l. 5)*  
13/29 was made soe maysterly] *de edifice si magistralement*  
13/31-3 carpentrye / that of all ye countreye of Asie it passed alle other in efforte and strengthe ¶ It was made of soo] *et charpenterie de tout le pais dasie sestoit enuertuee et mise en effort de bastir ouraige de si*

- 14/5-6 sette in fyre and flamme] *mise en flamme*  
 14/7 lyke as] *Comme se*  
 14/8 destroye] *guerpier*  
 14/11 throwe down] *demolir*  
 14/14-15 and other / And vnder the tenebres and derkenes] *et clandestinement. Et soubz vmbre des tenebres*  
 14/15 clerly at] *au cler de*  
 14/16 vpon his harnoys] *auoit sur son harnois*  
 14/20-3 by olde age and lyuynge many yeres, his bloode was wexen colde soo moche, that he myghte not walke ne helpe him selfe by moeuynge] *par riellese et coagulation de plusieurs ans auoyt enfroidy le sang tant que plus ne pouuoit cheminer ne soy aider de motif et local sensement*  
 14/24 helde] *Lequelle Anchises tenoyt*  
 14/25 precyous stones] *prosperites*  
 14/27 Troye, and grete and diuerce relykes] *[t]roye la grant, diuers & estranges reliquieres*  
 15/35 that it maye leefully be sayd] *que chose loysible scauroit dire*  
 15/1 hadde doon her deuoyr, and holpen to the procreacyon] *se fust essoignee a la procreation*  
 15/2 of mankynde] *des humains effaietz*  
 15/3-4 of Anchises and yolus, lyke as sayd is / ensiewed] *pour destremper ceste matiere en pitie. Ence acompaigne Danchises et Yulus, ainsi que dit est, suyuoit*  
 15/5 Nothyng appertenauit to] *et plus que naffiert*  
 15/8 dyligently] *diligamment et soigneusement*  
 15/9-10 and alle rufflyd on alle partyes, wythout ony hope of amedement] *de toutes pars sans aucun amedement extrinseque*  
 15/11 to many one] *a maint couraige*  
 15/11-12 her swete firste lyf, and now her deploracyon] *sa douleur & deploration enrouceez*  
 15/18 soo berynge his fader] *ainsi attourne*  
 15/19-20 to beholde theym wythoute pyte / but yet more pyetous to telle it] *de le veoir Mais qui plus est de louyr scullement le faict enarrer*  
 15/26 maleurouse and vnhappy] *malheureuses*  
 15/28 vacabonde] *rague*  
 15/31 vnndes or wawes] *vndes*  
 16/1-2 of the wawes of the see] *de vagues sur la mer*  
 16/2 in the Royalme] *es parties septentrionnelles au royaume*  
 16/10 to edyfye] *a faire edifier*  
 16/10 takynge it] *prenant naissance*  
 16/12 come not] *tendre*  
 16/19-20 to-fore the confusion and vter dystrectyon] *durant la confusion et exterminie*  
 16/23 engynes] *engiens*  
 16/29 a white bulle as crystall] *vng grant torreau blanc comme cristal*  
 16/33 sette] *situez et assis*  
 17/7-8 By the inhumanyte and wyckednesse] *pour lumanite et mauuaistic*  
 17/10 lytyl hylle or mountycle] *petit mont*  
 17/12 smalle busshes] *ruisseaulx*  
 17/12-13 by humydyte and hete] *ia pour la chaleur humide*  
 17/15 named in frenshe murtyllers cornyllers] *nommes murtilliers cornilliers*  
 17/16 the hille . . . an hye] *lediet montignon . . . espatie*  
 17/17 shadowed by grete space the] *donnoit vmbre spacieuse au*  
 17/19 enteneyon] *intention dicelluy*  
 17/20 of the bowes and braunches] *frondages dicellz*  
 17/21-2 we englysshe men . . . halowe] *du pays francois . . . celebres*  
 17/23-5 somer / In strowynge wyth herbes, and settinge vp of grene trees and bowes, in the chirches and chappellis for to refresshe] *ceste enfroulissent les eglises les carefours et lieux publics pour excourir & afrechir*  
 18/3-4 on bothe sides] *The French woodcut shewes a double-bladed axe, one head or blade on each side of the helve*



- 18/5 glayue or guysarme] *besagne*  
 18/5-6 hewe and smote doun] *frappa*  
 18/7-8 soo cutte and entamed] *entames*  
 18/9 a source of blacke bloode drop-  
 pyng] *une sourgon de gro sang noir*  
*distillant*  
 18/11 dropes of bloode . . . shewyng] *goutes . . . monstre*  
 18/12 abashed and dredefull] *espouu-*  
*ante*  
 18/15-16 bi grete humylyacyon of herte  
 and deuoute affectyon] *no French*  
*for this*  
 18/18-19 goddys of the forestes] *deesses*  
*des forestz*  
 18/20 gyne] *donner et bailler*  
 18/23 adoured] *inuoques*  
 18/25 to arache or plucke vp] *darachier*  
 18/26 empossed and letted] *empescheoit*  
 18/27 myghte] *sens*  
 18/28 to demeane this to] *ce demener en*  
 18/30 that other ayenste the branche] *l'autre pie myst contre la terre noyel-*  
*cuse dudict arbre*  
 18/31 oute of the lytyll hylle] *sur ledict*  
*monticule*  
 18/33 myghte] *vertu*  
 19/1-2 sorowfulle and bywep] *esplorece*  
 19/3-4 to the . . . thy] *de soy mesme*  
*. . . sa*  
 19/5 pryed frome his lyf / or] *priue de*  
*vie : sur vng corps mort, vengeance*  
*si est inutile*  
 19/7-8 goode frende, I, very sorowfull  
 whiche so moche haue loued the] *bon*  
*amy lasse dolant que iay tant aime*  
 19/10-11 made theym veytalle wyth  
 sencyble mocuynges] *les vegeoit de*  
*motifz sensemens*  
 19/13-14 requyred . . . poursiwe] *re-*  
*clames . . . persecuter*  
 19/17 hidde & couerde vnder] *fardee de*  
*couuerte de*  
 19/18 worlde] *siecle*  
 19/22 arrettyd] *luy a instigue*  
 19/24 the ryche men suffretous and  
 poure] *les plus riches souffreteux*  
 19/26 by] *de*  
 19/27 shewe manyfeste] *magnifeste*  
 19/28 bloode] *sang gros et noir*  
 19/29 woldeste haue cutte] *tu tes voulu*  
*efforcer de coupper*  
 19/30 of thyse] *venu dicculx*  
 19/33-4 hath aroused the erthe] *&*  
*espandu sur la terre*  
 20/1 defoylle] *soilles*  
 20/6 bylde] *extraire*  
 20/7 of Trace] *tracois*  
 20/8-9 made bastelles of werke &  
 ouerage] *bastimens douuraige*  
 20/14-16 is destenyed to the . . .  
 fryntes / for there to be releued, And  
 to comforte] *test . . . frugalite destine*  
*pour illec releuer et consoler*  
 20/18-19 full of fylthe and ordure, by  
 the bloody faytte] *enordie pur la san-*  
*guinolance*  
 20/29-30 tymorysite . . . Insolute] *tre-*  
*meur . . . insolite*  
 20/31-2 to the palate of his mouth] *a*  
*lencontre de son palais*  
 21/3 cause] *cause*  
 21/10 Thobseques of Polidorus] *Com-*  
*ment en faisant ledict sacrifice les*  
*dieux & ydoles furent ornes sus laurel.*  
*et comment les dames descheuelees*  
*plaignoyent la mort des nobles*  
 21/13-14 so was the autler . . . And  
 therupon putte & sette] *si furent sur*  
*l'autel . . . poses et mises*  
 21/16 reed] *coele rouge*  
 21/18-19 wyth bendes of his whiche  
 enuyronned] *de bandeaulx de lin qui*  
*les enuironnoit*  
 21/22 chapelettis] *chapeaulx*  
 21/23-4 montyele or lityl hylle where  
 as Polydorus was buried] *monticule*  
*de Polidorus*  
 21/26-7 maye surmounte the infecte  
 odour] *la fade infecte odeur . . . puisse*  
*estre surmonte*  
 21/30-31 retchyng ought by theym  
 selfe] *tenir compte delles*  
 21/32 dysshenuelled, or bare the heed]  
*descheuelles*  
 21/34-5 oute of theyr wyttes] *ebtees de*  
*leur sens*  
 22/4 bokettis] *coquets*  
 22/9 montyele or lityl hill] *monticule*  
 22/16 long and many] *per plusieurs*

- 22/19 Iohn bochace] *ichan bocacee*  
(*ichan bocasse* below)
- 22/22-3 Here bigynneth . . . ca . . . vj<sup>o</sup>] *no French for this*
- 22/24 That other daye . . . I redde]  
*l Antier . . . lisoie*
- 22/25-6 hath spoken, & in brief] *a bien parle & mis en brief*
- 22/28 chynaunches] *cheuances*
- 22/31 moche more] *grandement trop muiculs*
- 23/5 wordes] *plusieurs parolles*
- 23/7 medeled] Caxton has not englisht the following: *Mais linfortune destruction de plusieurs aultres aduient souuent par aulun cas inopine. Dont la cause est la tente et auons incogneue tellement que le premier effect se demonstre par experiance sans scauoir dont ce procede Qui souuent donne aux ignorans les causes de tresgrant admirations. et soupceionnent la chose estre aduenue comme par destinee disant ces choses Et cas accident a eulx estre ennezex a leur suppost par naturelle adhesion et ne sen pourroit separer sans corruption de luy qui nest pas chose veritable selon lopinion des maistres.*
- 23/15-16 the falle and caas otherwyse than vyrgyle hath] *le cas ainsi que met Virgille*
- 23/19 the his] *le sien*
- 23/24-5 other grete falles] *et par aultres grans cas*
- 23/33 to shewe alle a longe] *de mectre au long selon*
- 23/35-6 the reeomme of dydo, otherwyse callyd or named Elysse] *la renomnee dydo aultrement clisse*
- 24/4 as here after shall ensiewe and folowe] *ainsi*
- 24/10-11 deuyne renomnee / as to the hye name] *diuineuse renomnee comme est le hault nom*
- 24/12 thauetor] *lacteur*
- 24/16 & redyng] *et rediger*
- 24/19 dedes / fayttes] *fais*
- 24/20 souuenaunce or remembraunce] *souuenance*
- 24/23-4 sholde be wythdrawen / Or otherwyse sholde haue be forgotten it, and put in oublyau[n]ce] *On aultrement il auroyent mys en oubliance et a ceste cause en memoire*
- 24/25 fonde to note wyth rede colour or ynke] *qui deuote rouge couleur trouuerent*
- 24/27-8 firste capytall lettres] *premieres lettres*
- 24/34 dyuulged & shewed] *diuulgee*
- 25/8 thyre] *chir* (so throughout)
- 25/16-20 the Ingemente that to hym was fortunat / that he was so bienewrous that he was emonge all other estemed to be most in Ioye & gladnes, consideryng the beaute and bounte of dydo his wyf, And also of grete rychesses] *son iugement que luy estoit fortune qui suruint a sa femme Lors bieneurle yssit du lieu ou tous les mortelz hommes ont estime naistre toute liesse cest aseauoir des richesses*
- 25/23 of whiche goodes & rychesses] *desquelles*
- 25/32 and dyd do slee Acerbe or Sychee] *No French for this*
- 25/33 wyf] *amy*
- 25/35-6 syncopysed, & syghed] *sinco-pisot*
- 26/2 sources wellynge vp] *sourions a quatiqueulx de la*
- 26/3 doun by] *contre val*
- 26/4-6 And thus the sayd dydo suffred grete payne for the grete and harde syghynges & heuynesses] *que caues dieulx pour les grans et durs souppirs tristesses amertume que ladiete dydo souffroit*
- 26/15 theunne] *lors*
- 26/17 she comened wyth the] *si quelle communica aux*
- 26/24 wythstande] *obuier a*
- 26/26 Elysse] *astuce*
- 26/28-9 moleste and greued] *molestee*
- 26/30 mayntene] *maintiens*
- 26/32 places] *lieux et places*
- 26/33 true frende and lone] *loyal amy*
- 27/1 nayssaunce and byrthe] *naissance*
- 27/9 Thir] *chir* (so always)



- 27/11 to eschewe and gaynstonde] *obuier a*  
 27/15-16 of brasse & coper . . . many-  
 festely or openly] *daraine . . . mag-  
 nifestement*  
 27/26 sackes of brasse and coper] *saches  
 plains daraine*  
 27/31-2 nauye / I doubte nothyngel  
*nauigaige ie ne reuocque point en  
 doubte*  
 28/17 furyouse woodnes] *reuerie*  
 28/18-19 that he shall moche sore  
 tormente vs] *et croies quil nous fera  
 meetre en grans tourmens*  
 28/20-1 wythdrawen & taken awayel  
*soustrait*  
 28/22 in gree & gladly] *voulentiers en  
 gre*  
 28/23 no culpe ne blame] *nulle coulpe*  
 28/24 grieuous paynes & myserable  
 tormentes] *griefues paines miserables*  
 28/28-9 I shall abandoune my lyf wyth  
 you] *ie pardonneray a ma vie et tous  
 temps feray compaignie a vous*  
 28/33 dwellyngel] *mention*  
 29/1-2 pyetous prayers] *prieres pitieuses*  
 29/4-5 to habandoune & leue the swete  
 countrey] *dabandonner la douce terre  
 mere (Yet Caxton left out the Mother  
 country!)*  
 29/7-8 prores or forship whiche lay to-  
 ward the countre of thir] *prores de  
 leurs nauires qui estoyent toutes contre  
 chir*  
 29/11 vaticynaunte or propneeyeng]  
*vaticinant*  
 29/16-17 of surete for to abide] *seure  
 demouree*  
 29/19-20 were well pleased wyth] *rauis-  
 sassent*  
 29/25-8 And in conclusion, they de-  
 cended from their shippes to the  
 lande, and at the ryuage of the same  
 they toke indede lxx maydens, and  
 anone putte theym in-to their shippes]  
*tant que a la fin du monde, consen-  
 dirent sur le bort du riuage dicelle  
 terre, & la ravirent, Et defaict tantost  
 mirent eule ou nauire soixante et dix  
 pucelles ou ieunes filles*  
 29/30 wyne ye duete of] *gaignier le  
 deu de leur*  
 30/3 arryued in] *en*  
 30/4-6 and boughte as moche londe or  
 grounde / as she myghte conteyne  
 wythin the space of the hide of an  
 oxe. in whiche] *achata terre du large  
 drung cuyr de beuf ont*  
 30/15 whiche] *quelle*  
 30/16-17 after dyd doo cutte hit soo in  
 a thonge so smalle and longe] *tost  
 reduira en vne quarte quelle coppa si  
 tresmenement*  
 30/18 quantyce] *quantite*  
 30/19 Inhabytantes sellars] *vendeurs  
 habitans*  
 30/22-3 greued theym, and throwen  
 theym] *agites*  
 30/33 holde parlyamente] *parlementer*  
 31/5-7 oughte to make an ende of their  
 fuyte or fleeynge / and anone elysse  
 or dydo] *debuoyent imposer fin a leur  
 fuite Et tantost elysse*  
 31/9 of brasse & coper] *darine*  
 31/12 gretly encouraged] *animes*  
 31/13-14 concluded anone to buylde &  
 edefye a newe cyte there / And caste  
 & toke] *commencerent pour gecter & a  
 prender*  
 31/21 wyth wallis autentyke] *dauten-  
 tieque muraille*  
 31/23-5 cyreuyte of the place was  
 enuyronned wyth the thonge of a  
 skynne or hyde, as to-fore is sayd.  
 And the castell of the toun was  
 named biose] *la place ou circuit du  
 lieu fut tout enuironnee dune quarte  
 comme vne peau de parchemin, ainsi  
 comme dessus est dicte et nommee larer  
 ou chasteil de la ville biose*  
 31/26 they hof Tir] *les tirans*  
 32/2-3 vnmesurable] *immense*  
 32/4 Thir] *chir (but tirans above)*  
 32/8 circumiacent & neyghbours] *cir-  
 cunuoisines*  
 32/11-12 the guyse / the facons . . . of  
 the cartagyns] *les gestes et aussi les  
 facons des cartaignois*  
 32/18-19 thyng slypper & lubrik]  
*chouse lubrique*

- 32/19-20 to brynge hir in-to exyle] *lui est sours tout exil*  
 32/23 prudence] *prudence de dydo son royaulme*  
 33/5 dydo] *elisse*  
 33/7 of thyre or thyrayn] *tirain*  
 33/9 to lyue after the manere] *et maniere de viure*  
 33/11-12 whiche for to doo they knew no man conuenient] *qui pour y enuoier y fust assez idoine*  
 33/13-14 his owne londe] *son pays ou terre*  
 33/15 so vyle / terryble & strawnge lyf] *vie si terrible et estrange*  
 33/16-17 he menaced and thretenyd to make warre & fyght wyth theym] *il les menacoit de bataylles*  
 33/19 prynces] *princes dessusdit nommes*  
 33/19 shewyng] *remoustrant*  
 33/22 to vse suche as] *prendre celle des*  
 33/24-5 that one muste deye for the salute & wele of your countrey] *mourir pour le salut du pais*  
 33/25 concluded so to doo] *deliberes a ce faire*  
 33/27, 29 y<sup>e</sup> publike . countrey] *le bien publique. (The 'contrary' &c. is Caxton's.)*  
 33/30-1 dyde demaunde] *fit demander*  
 34/1 had lieuer] *ayma mieulx*  
 34/4 seeyng] *voyant lesditz princes que*  
 34/5 & to hir] *prenant en son*  
 34/8 that they] *quelle*  
 34/12 in flegyble] *en flebile*  
 34/14 preterit] *preterit*  
 34/16-17 but she muste promyse to make this maryage / the whiche she accorded to theym, and helde] *promis a leur faire ce mariage leur accordant lanoir*  
 34/18 Induces and space] *induces*  
 34/20-1 In this tyme duryng] *Et ce pendant*  
 34/22-3 sette and ordeyned] *emparee*  
 34/24-5 And after this, she blamed longe] *puis longuement detestoit*  
 34/28 in late tyme] *en peu de temps*  
 34/29 with the] *au*  
 34/31-2 well happy fleeyng] *fuite bienheuree*  
 35/1 conuerted and chaunged] *conuertie et muee . . . fust*  
 35/7 bussches and woode] *bon boys*  
 35/9 place] *place ou lieu*  
 35/10-11 pyetous . . . playsaunte to the] *pitouse . . . p'acatiue des*  
 35/13 payenge the extreme tribute of remembraunce] *priant le tribu de extreme souuenance que i'amaïs puis apres ne ne deuoit estre ramembree par racordance*  
 35/15 clouen and broken] *briscz*  
 35/16 woode] *buchier*  
 35/19 citezeyns] *citadins*  
 35/25-6 innocent blood whiche maculate & bysprange all theym that stode by] *sang innocueux qui macula toutes les arconstances*  
 35/31-2 for to kepe hir cyte & the cytezeyns vnhurt] *pour les garder immunes*  
 35/34 ony] *aucunement*  
 36/1 sorowfull] *plaintureuses*  
 36/2 were concluded & brought to] *a cell amene*  
 36/6 callyd] *appellerent et nommerent*  
 36/12 And after] *Et firent apres*  
 36/16 dedyed & halowed] *dediez*  
 36/17 embraced] *collee*  
 36/19 A comendacyon to dydo] *No French for this*  
 36/21 digne & worthi] *digne*  
 36/24 cruel] *cruelle ce petit nombre dans qui pouvoit remendre a la vie future*  
 36/25-6 thy pudyke chastyte vnhurte, wythoute ony spotte / than to rendre or yelde thy selfe] *ta pudite illese sous aucunement maculer que toy rendre*  
 36/28-9 by thuatrue note of lubryke & slypper luxurye] *de laute indeleale de lubrique luxure*  
 36/31 thy] *toutes*  
 36/32 gotten fame & renommee] *occupe renommee*  
 36/33-4 by whom he is repressed fro his lybidynous desire] *de libidineux desir parquoy est reprime*

- 37/4 breste] *noble poitrine*  
 37/5 tittle] *tître*  
 37/5 loange / preysynge] *louange*  
 37/10 crayntyue, I addresse] *ineraintiue sadrece*  
 37/11 that haste strengthe] *as seur a ces force*  
 37/17 lacyuete] *laciuite*  
 37/18 and in-to benygne] *et benigne en*  
 37/19-20 name and fame] *nom*  
 37/21 merytes] *douces merites*  
 37/22 chaste clenness] *lonnestete de pudeur*  
 37/27-8 Thir . . . Elysse or dydo] *chir . . . elice*  
 37/34-5 that byfelle to her] *Et iusques a lors a elisse*  
 37/36, 38/1-2 of the deth of the sayd dydo / I shall reherce here after now in a nother maner, whiche is to be presupposed was moened of] *ca enuuant est bien cy a presupposer*  
 38/4-5 by cause of] *puis pour le*  
 38/6-7 the moste fayrest of theym all] *la plus belle*  
 38/9 troye / after the siege] *la grant troye apres lexition*  
 38/14 Neptunus] *neptunus*  
 38/17-18 empeshe the goynge] *des-tourber ou empeschier lalce*  
 38/20 parellys] *perilz*  
 38/23 desire] *duction*  
 38/26-8 goddys to be stypended / and shall doo honoure to theyr frendes / and treatre theyr lyguage and] *decses stipendier ses amys, honneur feroit a toute leur lignee, les*  
 38/29 the goddys] *les dieux dessus nommes*  
 39/13-15 Cordes and ropes broken, And crampons of yron wrythen a sondre and plucked oute. the shyppes & vassaylles] *rompre cordes et arachier crampons de fer et leur ataches vais-seaux*  
 39/18-19 vorages, & wawes] *vorages rndes*  
 39/20-1 gulle or throte wyde opene] *gouille baice*  
 39/31 separed] *lung de lautre separe*  
 40/5 fortunes] *diuerses fortunes*  
 40/10-11 And in descendynge and comynge a lande in to that . . . dydo] *descendant en icelle terre et en la . . . fenice*  
 40/16-17 fayr and well byspoken] *bien devisant & beau parleur*  
 40/18 loued of alle men, & preysed] *loue de tous et prise*  
 40/28 enprynted] *imprima tellement*  
 40/32 rebouted & putte a backe] *re-boutant*  
 40/33 the lampe / and the] *la lampe du*  
 41/1-2 How dydo counseyllid wyth hir suster anne] *No French for this*  
 41/3 bythought herselfe, and purposed] *se pourpensa*  
 41/15 obfusked / endullyd] *obfusque*  
 41/17 nyghe kynne and parent] *prou-chain parent*  
 41/18 verytable] *veritablement*  
 41/20 delyuerynge and gynyng] *baillant*  
 41/22-3 to yene to dynerse creatures / and maye be supposed] *faire aux suppos*  
 41/24 chief werke] *chief docuure*  
 41/27-8 and drede theym fleyng, and kepe theym] *crainte les fruit et tient entre ses bras*  
 41/29 And yf it happen theym to entre] *quant ilz entrent qui en en [sic] aduient bien a fait*  
 41/30 in corners] *es cantons*  
 41/31 the grete fote] *les grans picz*  
 41/36 god forbede] *ia nauicynne*  
 42/2 comynge to the chief of] *venant a chief de (accomplishing)*  
 42/3-4 yf it that ne were] *se ne fust*  
 42/5 to abyde and be] *destre*  
 42/17 molyfyed] *flechi*  
 42/20 not for that] *non pourtant*  
 42/22-4 to plonge and submerge me vnder the botomes of the depe palusshe infernalle] *sauoyeux aux ombres palantes ombre denfer et parfonde*  
 42/31 grane vnder the colde marbyl stone] *serqueuz deessous la lame*  
 43/1 Thansuer of Anne to hir suster dydo] *No French for this*

- 43/5 reuerte] *conuertir*  
 43/23 fyre, lyghte, nor flamme] *feve flamboyant ne lumiere parcellément*  
 43/28 solyeytude of thy] *solitude de ses*  
 43/31-2 maryage, alle is to hym as ryght noughte] *mesnaige . . . Tout est nant*  
 43/33 lette] *nuyre*  
 44/4-5 reuthes noyous, vpon a dampnable mynde and folysshe remembraunce] *regrez enuieux en souuenance demneuse*  
 44/6-7 of the infernalle mansions] *denfer*  
 44/9 renyue] *remuer*  
 44/13 thyre] *chir*  
 44/16 bylound of the] *amez*  
 44/20 vndresette] *submeetre*  
 44/33-4 myrondes, that are folke without Rule] *myrondes gens sans frain*  
 44/36 folkes filodes or ryuers that shulde tempre] *fleues ou riuieres de lueur de*  
 45/4 thire] *chir* (and so all through)  
 45/6 of lyght] *de legier*  
 45/10 somtyme] *fen*  
 45/14-15 destynaeyes haue fauourished the well] *destinees ont fauorise les biens*  
 45/16 ryche nauye] *nauire*  
 45/29 atyse & drawe] *atire*  
 46/4 crased of the grete torneementes] *froissees des grans tourmens*  
 46/6 contradycction] *en contradiction*  
 46/7 apposite] *oposite*  
 46/12-13 aduysed and shewed] *aduises*  
 46/18 esprysed] *embussee*  
 46/28-9 where bifore the auters] *par les autels*  
 46/30-1 sheep weders for to doo sacrefyces destynated] *brebis et moulons pour sacrifices destinees*  
 47/6 there dedied and doon] *dedice faiet illec*  
 47/7-8 custome that was vsed at that tyme] *coutume*  
 47/8-9 In to the temples and symulacres, knelynge before the awters] *par les autels par les temples et simulacres*  
 47/11 entraylles] *entrailles & es membranes*  
 47/14 onerserche] *recherche*  
 47/24-6 graffe'd and myserably sette wauynge and tournynge here and there wythin] *arec & acyse miserablement en tant quelle vague tournoyant par*  
 47/28-9 an hynde that is rough to the herte wyth an arowe] *la biche nauire dung dart par sang iusques au cuer*  
 47/36 Thyre] *chir de sydon*  
 48/6 oure] *trop*  
 48/7 Of it that other parte] *duultre part*  
 48/8 appareylles] *comus*  
 48/20-1 launchyuge theyr bryghte sparkeles] *estineclant*  
 48/23 her bedde reste] *les requis de son lit*  
 48/32 emonge] *alcuncsfois*  
 49/9-10 Inexplicable occupied, as transported and rauysshed] *raue et transportee inexplicablement*  
 49/11 the] *les autres*  
 49/12 of Inperfection] *dimperfection sans plus greuer ny auant y besongnier*  
 49/16 were robuste and rude] *se arduissent*  
 49/22 The stones] *la pctite*  
 49/30-1 spredde wyth mosse all to tourne / rusty] *moissues & brises toutes raoullies*  
 50/2 contryste] *contester*  
 50/4 goodely and grete chere] *grant recueil*  
 50/21-3 enecas, whiche thyng myght be broughte to effecte / so that y wyll be] *enece atirer & ioindre auons a ce que soyés*  
 50/26 noyes] *noise*  
 50/27-8 for the constructyon and makinge of] *en faisant*  
 51/27 felawe] *compaignie*  
 51/31 this werke] *la besoigne*  
 51/34-5 shalle mowe be broughte aboute] *poira de legier parfaire*  
 51/36 chasse and hunte the wilde bestes] *chacer*

- 52/4-5 to the vttr-moost of the game,  
welle chaffed aftre the bestes] *aux*  
*effors bien eschauffes apres la beste*  
*sur la point des grans dilligences que*  
*lon fait en tel cas*
- 52/9 lyghtnynges choruscacyous] *es-*  
*clistres corruscations*
- 52/12 fulle blak and obscure] *obscure*
- 52/17 the wedrynge] *lorage du temps*
- 52/20 forest] *forest susdies*
- 52/24 were not of accorde fo[r] the]  
*fusses daccord du*
- 52/27-8 Of the grete tempest and  
storme atte maryage of theym] *No*  
*French for this*
- 53/2 to couertely and close] *trop clan-*  
*destinement et a macetes*
- 53/7 his trayne] *ses brisees*
- 53/12 one from the other] *lung lantre*
- 53/14 for to renne after] & lesser courre  
*a la leuce*
- 53/16-17 theyr brackes, retches, and  
bloode houndes] *des aultres marches*  
*leurs redes aussi & leuriers*
- 53/25 her fayr palfrey] *la hacquence*
- 53/27 appareyll and couered] *couuerte*
- 53/31-2 pourfyllled] *borde*
- 53/35 ryche gyrdell] *surcainete surauree*
- 54/1 wyth fyne cloth of damaske] *dune*  
*figure de satin*
- 54/4 Thus appoynted] *en ce point*
- 54/13 vpon the fode] *le fleuve sur le*  
*fleuve*
- 54/18 semblable] *semblablement*
- 54/20 doo ryse] *se teussent*
- 54/26-7 garlandes of leues grene] *chap-*  
*peaux de verdure*
- 54/28 fyn gras] *haulte liee*
- 54/31 becomen fyers, and] *senfierissent*
- 55/1 the yonge yolus] *ence [orig. en ce]*
- 55/1 y<sup>e</sup> ladies] *la dame*
- 55/3 dales and narowe wayes] *landes et*  
*destroiez*
- 55/8 Ascanius or Yolus] *ascanius*
- 55/9 corrageous] *ardant*
- 55/21 the blewe cote] *la coete perse*
- 55/23 of thondre] *de gresle tonnoire*
- 55/25-6 nor made no force for it, with-  
standynge] *ne tenoyent conte non*  
*obstant*
- 55/29 atte astryffe] *a lestrif*
- 55/30 acyured] *acquerir*
- 55/32 wedrynge] *temps*
- 55/34 mysell] *de bresil*
- 55/36 agetted] *agitoit*
- 56/2 backwarde / forewarde, and atte  
eyther side] *arriere ou a coste*
- 56/4 by] *daultre part*
- 56/6 enf[l]ammed] *aflambe*
- 56/12 nyghte] *nuyt toute noire*
- 56/20 the fallyng] *ses agoniz*
- 57/11-12 whiche is more lighte than  
ony other thyng] *qui est celle ainsi*  
*que lon dit fame est vne malle mes-*  
*chine dont il nest chose plus legiere*
- 57/29-30 facultee and power for to  
reherce and saye] *faculte de pouoir*  
*dire*
- 57/32-3 ladyes, gentyll wimen] *damois-*  
*selles]*
- 57/34-5 rewthe ne regarde to no manere  
of lesynge] *regret a mensonge*
- 57/36, 58/1 wynges alle of fedders]  
*routes de plumes empanees*
- 58/4 vpon her] *en son corps*
- 58/6 styлле without ceasse] *tousions et*  
*sans cesse*
- 58/15 what rewle is kept in] *du gou-*  
*uernement de*
- 58/20-1 pynacles and toures / and wyth  
theym that kepe the day watches]  
*pinacles et avec les eschanguetes*
- 59/3 lordshypes] *et seigneuries*
- 59/11 hadde espyred her owne herte  
wyth the loue] *sestoyt enamouree*
- 59/15 a-renouse] *areueux*
- 59/17 Gzamas] *Gazamas*
- 59/19 construed, edyfyed, and made]  
*construit et edifie*
- 59/20 othre sacraryes] *aultres*
- 59/22 the daye watche] *eschanguere*
- 59/27 good odours & swete smellynge]  
*bonnes odeurs*
- 59/28-9 garlandes made of floures that  
he gadred] *chapeaux et floretes quil*  
*amassoit*
- 59/32 wrathe he begate wythin the  
roote of] *coureux en*
- 59/33 besyde hynself] *hors du sens*
- 60/4 pecture] *painture*



- 60/5 wyne] *ros vins*  
 60/18 countrey of ytalie] *cite de troie*  
 60/20 ryghtwynesse] *iustice*  
 60/29 to receyue] *et a recepu*  
 60/34 yelow as golde] *iannes et dores*  
 61/18 wynges empared with fedders]  
*elles emplumees*  
 61/23 by-fore] *par faierie*  
 61/26 lyf determynd] *vie a*  
 61/27-8 kept and saued hym two  
 tymes] *regardannes deux fois en*  
*champ de bataille*  
 62/2-3 hys grete worthynesse] *ses grans*  
*vaillances*  
 62/13 What mystreth hym to edyfie]  
*quel besoing est il quil edifie*  
 62/21-2 for to fullefyile his wylle] *pour*  
*ce faire*  
 62/34 reconmtred] *encontroit*  
 63/2 other] *autres de son temps*  
 63/5 for to susteyne] *pour en apvier et*  
*soustenir*  
 63/7 of sapyn trees and of hooly trees]  
*de sepuis & de houlx*  
 63/8 beten & cast] *agitez de vens plains*  
*et nues obscures*  
 63/11-12 grete flodes, & fontaines rewing  
 doune without cesse alonge] *fleuves*  
*et fontaines decorans sans cesse descen-*  
*dans par*  
 63/13 borders and shores] *orees*  
 63/14 thyke yse] *grans glasons*  
 63/16-17 vnles brother, vnto his moder  
 named laye] *oncle frere de sa mere*  
*nommee laya*  
 63/19-20 lowe, & syn hie] *puis bas*  
 63/20-21 roches alonge the shores]  
*rochiers et riuage*  
 63/22 pruneth or pycketh her] *se sore*  
 63/26 & other grete edyfyces] *ediffices*  
*et arceaulx*  
 63/28 bystorye or wepen crysolite] *bis-*  
*torie cusolite*  
 63/32-3 cremoysin alle drawn ouer  
 wyth golde wyer, right wauntanly  
 wouen] *cramoisi de tire a bordeure*  
*dorec tresmignotement tissue et assise*  
*pardessus*  
 64/10 What cometh to the byfore] *quelle*  
*te vient*  
 64/11-12 abide ydle in this landes of  
 Lybye? wylt enhabyte thiselfe] *de-*  
*mourer oiseuses terres de libie? dont*  
*te vient celle grant laschete de couraige*  
*de vouloir habiter*  
 64/15, 16 of this thyng / whiche vnto  
 the oughite to be desirable] *desirant*  
*chose*  
 64/22 loeuyng] *louenge (praise)*  
 64/30 gresell] *hercier*  
 65/1 wythstandyng] *actendu*  
 65/7 byfalle] *eas*  
 65/14 doo make redy his shyppes] *ap-*  
*areiller et mettre en point le nauire*  
 65/17 couertly] *repostement*  
 65/20 of a feynynge] *de fainte ce quilz*  
*furent*  
 65/23 from herselfe] *hors du sens*  
 65/27 habandoune & leue . . . stroof]  
*habandonner . . . debatoit*  
 66/8 styre her selfe] *demener*  
 66/9 as a mad woman, as thyas . . .  
 passed] *comme au . . . temps passe*  
*faisoit thias*  
 66/13 feest] *festonnans*  
 66/18 thus rennyng aboute] *ce faisant*  
 66/19 reforeed] *renforce*  
 66/23 rewthes and complayntes] *&*  
*complaints regretz*  
 66/25 vntreue] *desloyal*  
 66/26-7 to make me a-knowen therof]  
*le me dire*  
 66/31 the worshyp] *lonneur*  
 67/4 doled out of ye sure waye] *foruoye*  
 67/11 tyme] *temps et facilement*  
 67/14 oughtest] *debuerois*  
 67/18 flusshyng down] *decourans*  
 67/26 louely countenaunces] *entrete-*  
*mens*  
 67/30 anemste] *enuers, (& for 'of,' l. 33)*  
 67/34 that by me cam] *par moi*  
 67/35-6 poure desolate frende] *pouure*  
*desolee*  
 67/36, 68/1 broughte to the poynte  
 mortalle] *assolee*  
 68/3 courage] *ouraige (heart, mind,*  
*purpose)*  
 68/4 ayenst] *enuers*  
 68/7 hate and haue ennye atte me]  
*moy prins en grant hayne*



- 68/8 hee praysynge] *los dicelle*  
 68/10 was electe & taken vp] *estoye sur toutes esleue*  
 68/11 is now, by thy departynge, so-daynly] *et en ce soudaine en est par toy*  
 68/13 kynde loue] *donnee*  
 68/15 that lightly forgeteth his lodgynge and the place] *dont nest record delostellee ne mais du lieu*  
 68/19 no thing abideth with me nowe] *ne me demeure de present*  
 68/22 hope] *esperer*  
 68/26 Yarbas] *carbas*  
 68/28 yf afore] *sauant*  
 68/30 in] *auant*  
 68/34 whyche shulde asswage the] *et laquelle*  
 68/36 I shulde thynke that I were not] *aduiz me fust nestre pas*  
 69/6-7 moenyng hym self in nowyse] *semeut auleunement*  
 69/8-9 sighynge sore] *souppirant*  
 69/10 sayd in this manere] *va dire en ce langage*  
 69/13-14 as longe as lyffe shall abyde wythin me] *tous les jours que ie viuray et tant que lesperit de vie se pourra soutenir sur moy*  
 69/16-17 vnknownen to the, but sholde haue sygnified it vnto the] *& sans le te signifier*  
 69/21-2 to be at] *faire du tout*  
 69/26-7 in short, preceptyne] *en sort preceptiue*  
 69/32 a stronge lande] *pays estrange*  
 69/33 meane] *moyennes*  
 70/5 places] *ramcaule*  
 71/1-2 furybounde & furyous] *furieuse*  
 71/4 one thyng of a long while] *auleun aguet*  
 71/5-6 intrysiuque wythin her hert] *intrinseque*  
 71/7-8 was neuer borne of no goddesse] *ne fut ne de deesse mere*  
 71/11-12 harde stones] *grosses pierres dures*  
 71/17 to deuoure] *demourer*  
 71/23 growyng oute of the grounde] *aschee*  
 71/29 subsiduous] *subside*  
 71/35 madnesse] *diuerie*  
 72/10 I wote not] *No French for this*  
 72/12 to me, thys vnhappy] *a ceste malheureuse*  
 72/13 wul permute rigoure to equyte, in this bihalue] *et rneilles en ceste partie parnestre equite a rigueur iamais ne fault auoir fiance en quelque foy que lon promet*  
 72/19 lyghtly & gretly] *haultement et magnifiquement*  
 72/20-1 do make ayen, that was reduced all in pees] *tout refaict qui estoit reduit en pieces et esclaz*  
 72/29-30 augurementes / the sortes preceptyne] *auguriemens le sors pourues du pais*  
 73/1 secret nor couertly kept] *reposte*  
 73/4 othes] *pariuremens*  
 73/5 about] *empesches*  
 73/8 ryght stedfast] *tresasscure*  
 73/9 for to conferme] *pour*  
 73/16 calle after] *sonne*  
 73/19 suche] *auleune*  
 73/26 and taken awaie] *ou ostee*  
 74/1-2 made redy] *apreste et orne*  
 74/8-9 in a swoone, as alle ded to the grounde] *toute pasmee et atachee comme toute morte sans remuer auleunement*  
 74/11 lityl bedde] *coucheete*  
 74/17-18 & went his wayes for to see his shippes] *faisant a la visiter son nauire*  
 74/22-3 hauen in-to the rode; made oores] *port dambas tout en la haulte mer faisoient rains et aultres auyrons*  
 74/23 comynge new] *yssant*  
 74/24-5 toke . . . and foyson of other tymbre, for to aprope to] *sans aultres chappusages prenoyent afforce et a foison pour*  
 74/28 of one wyll to haue furnysshed] *ententis de quipper*  
 74/29 euyn soo as] *tout ainsi et en la maniere comme*  
 74/30-1 a shokke of whete or] *ray gerbier faict de froment et*  
 75/1 to swepe] *nettoyer*

- 75/2 bystoweth it] *le met en sauf*  
 75/4 cometh agayn] *a tourner arriere*  
 75/13 terys] *pleurs*  
 75/14 complayntes, callynges and lamentacyons] *durs soupirs quelx clameurs plaintes et sanglours*  
 75/15-16 in the highe lofte of thy grete towres] *sur les haultes terraces en esparsus de plus grans debtes tours*  
 75/22 fonndreth] *font*  
 76/3-4 Ioye & gladnes, that maketh my sorowe and heuynes to be moche the greter] *liesse qui me rengrege de trop plus ma destresse*  
 76/11 socorus] *secours*  
 76/15 euy] *corag] mal afaire*  
 76/33 rented, vyolated ne broken] *rompu viole ne brise*  
 76/36 to leue me aside] *bouter arriere*  
 77/9 so daungerouse] *tout dangereux et foruoie*  
 77/11 loue] *amour de grant dueil adolce*  
 77/15 facely & lightly] *facilement faire*  
 77/23-4 suffoke . . . of amaritude . . . reysing] *suffoquer . . . damertume . . . resource*  
 77/27-8 I shalle make thee myn heyre, to enioye & receyue, after my deth, ye renues of all my londe] *apres ma mort ie te laisseray pour heritiere de quoy este toute ma succession*  
 77/33 feble] *sleble*  
 78/5 easte] *agiste*  
 78/9 shake & bowe] *demaine*  
 78/12 auncient . . . olde] *et lancienne souche . . . fort en vielly*  
 78/15-16 styl ferme, & moeueth by no wyse] *sans mouuoir nullement*  
 78/28-9 ouer them that ben affliged] *aux affliges*  
 78/34-5 foundrynge in teeres] *esplorce*  
 79/1 to wyshe deth] *a son haider la mort*  
 79/4 ye lyghte of] *la lumiere & la clarte*  
 79/7 sorowe] *pleur et grant tourment*  
 79/12 sawe & aperceyued] *apperceut*  
 79/26 suster anne] *seur*  
 79/35, 80/1 curiously & proprely kerued] *moult mignotement entaillees*  
 80/10-11 gooyng vnder of ye soone] *couchant*  
 80/14 the owle] *la voix de lu frezaye aultrement dit cheueche*  
 80/16 dooth quake & fereth] *faict fremir*  
 81/4 her hert semeth] *luy ressemble*  
 81/15 the marche of thyr] *lamenteche de chir*  
 81/26 a rageouse franesye] *frenesie*  
 81/34 breken and marren] *residuit et retailant*  
 82/2 natives] *natures*  
 82/8 dysplaysures] *plaisances*  
 82/13 cadinus] *cadmus*  
 82/15-16 & pryneipally in . . . wherre he made] *et empeupla . . . jist*  
 82/24 whiche haply] *Lequel espoir*  
 82/25-7 & alle be he dombe or specheles, yf he take the lettre vnto hym whome it is is dyrected vnto] *ou soit muet sans parler nullement tout aultretant mais quil baille la lectre on peut scauoir celuy a qui sadresse*  
 82/28-30 he shall therby vnderstande the desyre of hym that hath sente suche a messenger vnto him] *comme sil fust aupres descriuant*  
 82/36 to purple] & apourpree  
 83/1 the pourpre clothes] *les pourpres*  
 83/3-4 grete capitalle lettres] *grans lectres*  
 83/4 princypal] *principes*  
 83/6 mayde fayre] *parees*  
 83/9 senoysses] *senoises*  
 83/15 emendes] *enmendes*  
 83/20-1 distourne & haue himse] *[I]f soy cuyder destourner et mettre*  
 83/30-1 the hope of his entent] *lespoir ou leserance de son entente a cause deuelles dictes turbacions et mesmelement dicelle vision des troys deesses furies infernales*  
 83/32 anguysshes, sorowes & heuynesses] *angoisses douloureuses et tristes*  
 84/7 suster] *seur germaine*  
 84/13-14 Of the wordes of dydo to hir suster anne] *For this, the French has the heading, ¶ Comment et en quelle maniere le roy Cadmus trouua premier*

- lectres et art descripture et la istoire de horrestres filz agamenon. Et comment les troyz deesses infernales saparurent a l'entree du temple apolin.* (A ent follows, of a King on his throne giving or taking a crown with his right hand to or from a person on his right, while others kneel before him with offerings in their hands.)
- 84/26-7 or the soune goynge-vnder] *de soleil couchant*
- 84/31-2 thaxtre . . . of theuen] *le zil . . . du ciel*
- 85/3 Operides] *esperides*
- 85/5 and techer] *leur enseigneresse et doctrisse*
- 85/7 goddesse] *deesses*
- 85/10 of that tendynge] *du pensement*
- 85/12 of the holy braunches] *de sanis rameaulx*
- 85/13 of golde] *dor emereus au iour duy dicelluy esperides*
- 85/15 wete] *doules*
- 85/27-8 and to the contrarye, putteth lone sodaynly in-to theym that hapely thinketh not vpon] *emiers ceulx qui paraduventure en sont gueres entalentez*
- 85/30-1 werkes . . . to tarye & areste sodaynly the flodes & grete ryuers] *besongues . . . darestier tout a coup les fleuuez*
- 85/36 constrayneth theym often by nyghte tyme] *par nuyet souuientesfois iuno qui et les contrainet*
- 86/14 that I haue enterprised fermly my wyttes therunto] *que si auant i'ay entreprins de moy embatre*
- 86/20 secret] *secret que tu porras*
- 86/22-3 for whome I calle 'alas that ener he was borne' / whiche he] *que onques ne fust il ne quil*
- 86/25-6 in my priue closet . . . many a night, he & I togider] *en nostre seur . . . maintes nuytees*
- 87/6 body] *personne traussie*
- 87/22 with a grete] *dassez grant*
- 87/26 suffouunge] *suffonger*
- 87/28 costume] *constume*
- 87/29-32 ouer the ymage and fygure of
- eneas, that she had doo make after the semblaunce of hym, for to be brente ther with her] & aussi mis par sur leur sepulture qui estoit illee pour bruler limage & figure d'ence quelle auoit faict a sa semblance
- 88/6 charmouse] *chermeuse*
- 88/12 moder] *mere etachee*
- 88/20-1 So that men myght saye that it encloseth] *et pourroit enclore obscurete diuiser triplicite et dire*
- 88/23 this lady] *celle diane*
- 88/25 venemouse] *venimeuse*
- 88/27-8 freshe and newe mowen & taken] *nouuelles soyees*
- 88/29 sercles] *faucilles*
- 88/30 and of] *tendant a*
- 88/32 foole] *poulain*
- 88/36, 89/1, to gyne hym souke] *de le nourrir et alecter*
- 89/2 the skynne 'mortalle lone'] *la peau de lamour maternelle*
- 89/3 after the saide prestresse] *selon la pretresse inuiter*
- 89/4-6 luste to souke hys moder, but yf she liketh or eteth the secondying, or atte leste that same skinne that he hathe in his forhede] *sens a lecher ne a la mengie. la seconde ou autmoins leschie celle peau quil a au fronc sur son museau*
- 89/9 ageynst the same] *chosc contre elle*
- 89/11 that] *par son commandement*
- 89/11 rounde] *ronde aupres des autiers*
- 89/15 in syght of alle the] *Et est aux*
- 89/18 denounce] *denotent*
- 89/19-20 mercyfull god and pyteous . . . to receyue] *dieu piteux . . . de reueoir*
- 89/29 is paste and goon] *faillly*
- 89/34 nuyssyble] *inuisibles (for nuisibles)*
- 89/36 yocked] *atellees*
- 89/36 silence] *licencee*
- 90/1-2 poundes and ryuers] *las & limeres*
- 90/8 fenyce, elysshe, or dydo] *la fenice*
- 90/11 lityll] *pouure petit*
- 90/12 atte her herte] *sur le stomac par la merite de dormir*

- 90/16-17 reprenynge the perinremente  
of Laomedon] *a laomedes*. In the  
French cut, Dido is sitting on a broad  
canopied throne, with 5 listeners  
round her, 4 on stools.
- 90/22 shalt thou mowe become / must  
I] *pourras tu deuenir me fault il*
- 90/32 me] *moy qui sont encoires tous  
desrois*
- 91/22 conuenau[n]ted] *commenca*
- 91/23 a tonne] *eng muy ou cage*
- 91/24 the walles rounde aboute the  
cyte] *la clousture et muraille tout  
autour de ladite ville et cite*
- 91/29-30 doo ne paye ony thyng] *riens  
faire*
- 92/1-2 Of the v[is]ion that Eneas hadde  
for to departe towarde ytalie] *No  
French for this*
- 92/10 or] *Ou sil vault mieux*
- 92/18 namly] *mesmement*
- 92/30-1 solysitude . . . resolysitude]  
*solitude . . . resolutude*
- 93/4 madnesse & forsenerie] *forcenerie*
- 93/6 what eyleth me] *Helas et que me  
failloyt il*
- 93/7 why haste thou not] *que mas tu*
- 93/10 alone] *en vie solitaire toute seulet*
- 93/12 alone by theym selfe] *aparelle*
- 93/21-2 langour mortall] *mort esclan-  
gouree*
- 93/23 so ferre doled from my wytte]  
*tant foruoye tant hors du sens*
- 93/31 takled] *equipee*
- 94/11 thynkyng] *pensant ou cogitant*
- 94/13-14 doo ye to destruction] *te  
cravante*
- 94/20-1 commynge . . . with torches  
lyght, And cressettes esprysed of  
fyre brenny[n]g] *guerroier . . . faillos  
trorches et brandons emprins et alumes  
de feu ardent*
- 94/23-4 yf thou be founde whan the  
[s]pyrnyng of the day shalbe comen]  
*se au point du iour len te treuve a la  
riue*
- 94/28 endulled] *adolee*
- 94/34 a derke cloude, & varysshed  
awaye sodaynly] *la nuyet obscure  
hors les mtes de lumiere veue.*
- 95/1-2 How Eneas eneyted the patrons  
& maysters of his shippes for to  
depart] *¶ Comment et par quelle  
rayson fist trayns a Enee vng messai-  
gier semblable a mercur pour le faire  
legierement et hastiement nuyier en  
la mer pour fouir fortunes calamites  
perilz dangiers et amertumes de la  
belle dydo*
- 95/9-10 & made theym to take their  
oores in hande] *seoir les compaignons  
es bans prendre les rains et aduyrons*
- 95/13 ryght soone] *tantost et hastiue-  
ment*
- 95/15-16 sayles & cordes that were  
wythin the shyppes] *cordes qui esto-  
yent au nauire*
- 95/18-19 hymselfe & all his] *en soy . .  
se*
- 95/27-9 yf her moeuyng were irryted  
ayenste vs by pestyfyre influences, &  
bryng vs sauffe & peassyble to the  
portes of ytalie] *Si aulcunement  
estuyt yritee encontre nous la transu-  
mant de pestiferys influences et nuissi-  
bles en fortunes salutaires et paisibles*
- 96/5 thei carfe waie in the water]  
*deffendre la faisoyt*
- 96/7 wawes] *repostailles*
- 96/15-17 palmyerus . . . of eneas shippe,  
ben declared, whan he myght not  
withstande ne contreste] *palmurus  
. . . du nauire quent il ne pouuoit  
et ne scauoit contrester*
- 96/19 maister] *maistresse*
- 96/21 east hem in to the ysle] *les agita  
au royaume*
- 96/23 be-grauen] *sepulture*
- 96/33 illustre & illumyne] *illustrer*
- 97/1 calompniouse] *calmieuses*
- 97/3 smothe] *esgal*
- 97/5-6 sawe the saylles . . . made good  
waye] *vit et apperceut les voiles ten-  
dies . . . sen alloyent*
- 97/9-10 mad & beside herself] *forcenee*
- 97/12-13 saully the false & euyl man  
eneas] *faulcement ce mauuais homme  
ence et desloyal*
- 97/15 send after hym, & by] *lenuoyer a*
- 97/16 bryng alle to deth] *tout a mort*

- 97/20-1 kyll & slee, and brynge theym alle to] *a sang et a*  
 97/24-5 foundre & droune altogider in-to the botome of] *Effondres tout dedans*  
 97/29 doo . . . ferre out] *que veulx tu faire . . . foruoyee*  
 97/35 this thou sholdest haue doon that tyme] *alors*  
 98/1-2 by the, made wyth theym] *leurs eussent faictes ne promises*  
 98/5 the . . . &] *ses . . . et a la*  
 98/6-7 wyth thyne] *a tout*  
 98/8 gaynsayd his goyng openly] *mis contredict*  
 98/10-11 whiche thyng thou knew, and was doon in thy presence] *a ton seeu et a ta presence*  
 98/15 Ascanyus] *astameus*  
 98/18-19 to haue sette hym in stede of other seruyse atte] *len seruir dessus*  
 98/21-2 the fortune of ba[ta]ylle is doubthouse] *cest chose doubleuse des aduenens de bataille*  
 98/23 haue doo brenned] *faire bruler & ardoir*  
 98/25 purchase] *prouchasser ne aller querir*  
 98/28-9 and myghte haue slayne, brent hem . . . haue doon wyth theym after] *ou les faire bruler et ardoir en leur nefz . . . a*  
 98/32 O fayre sonne, that shyneste full bright] *soueil cler bel reluisant*  
 98/35 with] *ensemble*  
 99/2 highe] *de chate*  
 99/9-11 concluded & delibered . . . I goo delyuere me vnto . . . punyshe] *deliberee . . . ie me vois liurer . . . prouuer*  
 99/13 reeeyue] *ouir*  
 99/14 be so] *ainsi que aultrement ne peut estre*  
 99/15-16 ordeyned that . . . vntrewe man] *voulu et ordonne . . . des-loyal*  
 99/17 alonde hole & sounde] *en terre certaine*  
 99/21 cruell / strong] *et fort cruel*  
 99/24 putte ther-from] *dehors*  
 99/27-8 namely of Aseanyus his sone, and pryuated] *de son filz ascanius poust il estre tous temps priue*  
 99/29 to hym also be gyuen by] *luy soyt aussi*  
 99/33-4 be he] *soyent* (applying to 'his folke')  
 99/36, 100/1 present, be put to anguysshe . . . tormente] *luy present . . . tourment iusques a languisse de mourir*  
 100/1 shall] *rouldra*  
 100/4-5 folysse enterprise . . . hurt & charge] *folle . . . charge*  
 100/6 in a rage & grete sorowe] *la rage en douleur de ficure affunerec*  
 100/11-13 nedefull . . . goode] *souffreteuse . . . seure*  
 100/15-17 dounbe beste, be he caste in-to the depe shadowes of hel, ther to suffre tormentes right horrible & cruel] *beste nuec de mort tresorrible et cruelle*  
 100/23-4 & frendes alyed / & alle they of your affinyte] *aliez et affins*  
 100/32 enmyte & mortall hate] *hayne mortelle et innutic*  
 101/3 dethe] *vies*  
 101/7 visayge] *viare*  
 101/8-10 that god forbode it shulde so come to . . . without to haue peas] *ce que ia ne puisse aduenir . . . sans anoir sans paix*  
 101/17-18 shall slee & distroie] *occira*  
 101/19-21 he shall make to be byhedde, & theire membres to be broken & all to-hewen] *les testes et membres tran-chier*  
 101/22-5 within his prisons shalbe flain from hed to fote; ye other he shal doo cast out of ye windowes down to ye pauement; & to other he shal make theire eien to be pulled out] *escorchier en ses prisons aultres fera gercter mourir de fain et les yeux arachier*  
 101/29-31 shall tourne them in to grete mendycyte. Theyre wyues, that thenne shall be come to the astate of



- wydowhed] *pouurete mettre leurs femmes refues*  
 101/36 and putte oute of] *et de*  
 102/2 defoyled] *ledenges*  
 102/3 vyrgynes] *viergers pucelles*  
 102/9 Hanyball] *hambal*  
 102/19 traytours troians] *traitres*  
 102/21-2 to them . . . euer more] *aux ytalians, et a leur mer parfonde noyse contient debat et discordance soyent entre eulx tousiours sans deffuillance*  
 102/22 enraged] *foruoyee*  
 102/24-5 fro all partes . . . to thende] *& agietee de grant forcenerie . . . de parfiner*  
 102/25-6 whiche she can support no lenger, soo weri she was of it] *que tant luy nyust de plus la supporter*  
 103/4 for to be rydded of her] *pour soy delle micule despechier quelle allast hucher sa seur anne et la faire venir a elle disant*  
 103/9 pynacles] *pinacles*  
 103/14-16 of the styge . . . grete ponde . . . brymston] *ou fleuve du styge . . . lac . . . souffre*  
 103/21-2 that . . . flood] *ses choses qui . . . fleuve [Styx]*  
 103/24-6 after thise thynges." this said . . . suffre it] *Après ces choses dictees . . . supporter*  
 103/27-8 that quyuered & shoke of grete rage, & entred into a grete fransie] *qui se print a trembler de grant forcenerie entra en frenuise*  
 103/31 to torne in to a wyked kynde, and in a mynde] *muer paruerse nature*  
 103/34, 36 grene . . . balle] *vers . . . prunelle*  
 104/8 Iugyng] *indicative*  
 104/14 betaken & east, went & mounted] *agietee se print monter*  
 104/19-20 the whiche dydo, alle thus vexed & troubled in her wittes] *laquelle ainsi forcee*  
 104/23 remenaunt] *demourans*  
 104/29 wolde] *tout voulu et parmi*  
 105/8-9 wythin my stremes of the see] *en ma terre*  
 105/10 intrynseque] *tresinique*  
 105/18-19 vitupered so sore and defyled] *tant luidengee*  
 105/28 kendled in this place] *allume*  
 106/7-9 so that the swerde entred within her brest, vnto the bake of her] *tout au trauers persee*  
 106/12-13 atte the poynt of deth] *en l'article*  
 106/18 attones] *a coup sans interuale tout le suppost dicelle*  
 106/20-1 alle couered & defyled] *foulee*  
 107/2-3 wyth fire alle kyndled in a flamme] *en flambe de feu*  
 107/6-7 sorow and grete moone] *ducil*  
 107/10 madde & out of her mynde] *desuee & hors de son sens foruoyee*  
 107/13 and alle to-cratched] *deschirant*  
 107/23 slyped] *esmoulue*  
 107/24-5 to hane be departed one from the othere] *departir ne separer densemble*  
 107/32-3 thou wolde neuer hide from me] *mas voulu deceler sans riens muer ne plus que de roy mesmes*  
 107/35 caste me thus abacke from] *meslonger tout hors de*  
 108/11-13 vilete & shame . . . fowlle befall] *villete . . . lait cas*  
 108/21-2 hath extyneted oure goode renomnee, & brought vs in a grete blame] *nous a estaint et a coupee tout nostre atainte*  
 108/25 and] *& conynoyssons*  
 108/27-8 sorowe and heynesse . . . made it clene] *douleur . . . lessuya*  
 108/33 elbowe] *coude sans nullement y pouvoir parler*  
 108/33-4 sore faylled, of the dethe] *aprouchans de la mort*  
 109/1 wasted alle awaye] *deffailloyt*  
 109/9 Elysse or dydo] *elisse*  
 109/12 the rayen bowe] *lart du ciel*  
 109/18 coenelyued] *coadunes*  
 109/31 that be Inneterate] *inneteres*  
 109/35-6 she maketh scabbed and full of ytche] *la rouye et gratelle*  
 110/3 appayreth] *rabesee*  
 110/5 wyth fylthe] *dehassie*  
 110/10-11 hath awaye fro theym



- . . . all theyr strengthes] *leur emble*  
 110/13-14 And after, she maketh . . . boweth theyr bodyes] *puis . . . torfaitz*  
 110/15 hangynge theyr lides to the grounde-warde, alle full of care] *tous chagrineur*  
 110/18-20 taketh theyr fayr colour away, and maketh theym as pale as ashes . . . wyth a highe coloure ouer] *appullist toute leur couleur . . . & trop*  
 110/21-2 yelow . . . lyke rousset] *blans . . . gris*  
 110/22-3 of an olde bere / She after shorteth theyr retentyne brethe] *vraine puis leur alonge latentine*  
 110/24-6 And noon otherwyse it ys to be supposed, but that she doeth in lyke wyse of alle the remenaunte] & ne peut pas demorer sans panser trestout la rementer  
 110/29 ryueles and fromples] *ridures*  
 111/6 Of the beaulte of dydo] *No French for this*  
 111/8 proserpyne] *meschine*  
 111/18 wodnesses of helle] *dernieres infernales*  
 111/20 subdued and submytted herself] *voulu subiuguer a seruir et soubzmeetre*  
 111/29 she that had submytted her self] *submisce*  
 112/2-4 persone . . . parent heyre] *possession . . . prochain*  
 112/7 the fyrste yssue] *lamsuc*  
 112/9 and reparacyons] *reparacions et soutenemens*  
 112/12 in her, beynge in this possessionys / that is to wyte] *en estre Ceste possession cest*  
 112/15 and hath alymented and norysched her] *alimentee*  
 112/19-20 qualyte, and ryght egall in proporecyon] *equalite et droicte disposition*  
 112/21-3 fayre heerys and long yelow tresses, hangyng betwene two sholders to the heles of her] *Car deux espaulles longues traissiez iusques aux talons dores & blans contre vng bascin*  
 112/23 brod and highe ynunghe] *asses hault enleue*  
 112/24-5 traytice and browne . . . accordyng to the same] *votiz et traitiz . . . bises brunes*  
 112/26-7 a fayre & well compassed visage ouer] *beau tour de visage a merueilles sur*  
 112/28 A meane noose, not to grete nor to lytell] *le nes moyen*  
 112/33-4 with a bryght hew therewith-alle, some what tendynge to the rede] *bise suruermeillece*  
 112/36 traytise on the backe syde] *votis en arriere*  
 113/1 spotte or macule] *macule*  
 113/2 smalle, the sholders and the backe flat] *gresles les espaulles arriere le dos batz*  
 113/6 withoute eny blemyschyng] *auec lentredeux sus esleue sans aucune laidure*  
 113/8-9 and somewhat small on the neder parte / lytelle feet and smalle, with the toes well enyn sette togyder] *greslete par le bas. les pies petis. et les dois bien serres*  
 113/10-11 fulle swete and smothe of skynne] *souefue charneure*  
 113/12 eunyn] *vnis*  
 113/13-15 sadde of behanoure . . . contenance . . . replenyshed of all good condicyons] *maintien rasis . . . maniere . . . et de tous bien auceques*  
 113/24-6 the falle well vnderstande, well assoylled well & deffended, may welle haue releuement] *du cas bien entendu bien assailli bien dcffendu pour bien auoir releuement*  
 113/33 tygres] *aux tiges*  
 113/36 of dydo] *delisse*  
 114/2 from] *auceques*  
 114/4 a grete pas] *a grant erre*  
 114/6 folke is propyce] *gens*  
 114/9-10 how Eneas sailed, & how by tempest he arryued in cecylle] *No French for this, but (as in other cases) a woodcut*

- 114/12-13 of the grete moone that . . .  
after] *que . . . en sa contree*
- 114/18 stronge weddre arose, that  
brought to them] *fort temps les leua en*
- 114/20 habaundouned theyr . . . bere]  
*commanderent les . . . aller*
- 114/24 kyng] *roy et sire*
- 114/27 the goddesse wolde] *les dieux le vouloyent*
- 114/30 Soone after ceased the tem-  
peste] *Après les parolles cessa la tempeste et tourment*
- 115/3 he wolde make] *estoit*
- 115/8-10 Wherfore . . . shewed there  
theyr prowess, Tourned theyr horses,  
and ranne and lepte] *a ses ieux se pouruoient Adoncques . . . de leur prouesse faisoient tours des cheuaux et sailloyent*
- 115/14 in payne for to doo well] *en paine*
- 115/22-3 that were within the shippes  
. . . In a fyre] *des nefz . . . esprises*
- 115/26 broken of theyre longe vyage]  
*debrisee*
- 115/28-9 went with other in hys com-  
panye, and] & *vint premier a eucas apres les aultres que*
- 115/34, 116/1 were not able to bere  
arnes, nor for to goo to batayalle] *en bataille maistre nauoient*
- 116/3 newe] *retorre*
- 116/5 Accestre] *astroin*
- 116/6 gouerned] *fondee*
- 116/8-9 thoos that were stronge, and  
that myghte well endure the tra-  
ueylles of bataylle] *tous les aydables & les fors*
- 116/11 gode and socourable] *secourables*
- 116/14-15 he lefte behynde for to en-  
habyte] *estoit logez et laisses*
- 116/19 to be hyssed vppe, toke vp theyre  
aneres] *tendre*
- 116/20 rode] *riuage*
- 116/20-2 Thenne myghte ye haue seen  
the ladyes and other wepe full sore /  
makynge grete moone for] *et y eust grand doulour dauncunes gens que eucas laissoit, car les dames plouroient*
- 116/26 vpon the forestell] *vers le bout de la nef*
- 116/28 landed in] *prindrent port a*
- 116/29 Tulyola] *culiolia*
- 116/31 gatte hit] *la tit*
- 116/35 cause why] *cheoison*
- 116/36 shalle leue awhyle to speke]  
*vous deliray*
- 117/1 Pasyfa] *palifa*
- 117/5 wyth chyld] *ensainte*
- 117/6 her tyme was comen, she was  
delynered of] *elle fut deliuree de sa portecure si eust*
- 117/11-12 shyttte hym vp som where in  
a stronge holde] *lenfermer*
- 117/12-19 And for this cause, was  
dedalus sente for to the kyng Mynos /  
by whos requeste & commande-  
mente, this dedalus deuysed & made  
a house of merueyllouse composicyon,  
where were asmany walles as were  
there chambres, that were in grete  
nombre; and euery chambre was  
walled and closed rounde aboute, and  
yet myghte one goo from one to a  
nother. And yf some body] *fut mande dedalus & si luy fist faire vne maison merueilleuse autant daultre cloisure & at chambres que au monde nauoit creature si*
- 117/20-1 the firste entree therof, for to  
come oute ayen] *lentre*
- 117/21-2 and whosomeuer went in, after  
he was ones paste] *puis que vn passoit*
- 117/23-5 he myghte neuer come oute  
ayen / and wyst not where he was.  
Wythin this place was Mynotaurus  
broughte] *que deuenoient ceulx qui dedens estoient*
- 117/28 this foureten] *ceulx*
- 117/34 he wente and soughte after] *si quist*
- 118/4 Theseus] *thesenon*
- 118/6 valyaunt / and hardy] & *hardi*
- 118/8 made hym redy] *appareilla son erre*
- 118/14 wolde bryng hym ayenne alyue]  
*le vouloyent. Quant il fut venu entour*
- 118/16-20 amyable, and that was come  
for to be in thraldome vnder her

- fader / she hadde pyte of hym / and  
for hys homeste behauoure / Began  
to be taken with his loue / And vnto  
hym vpon a daye she sayde] *amenable*  
*ella layma moult & luy dist*
- 118/25-6 requyred and asked hym] *renquist*
- 118/27 pyche and towe bothe] *pois en poil*
- 118/31 conne chewe it so moche] *tant mascher*
- 118/32-3 sholde not swalowe hit, nor  
haue it out of hys mouth] *le peust aualler ne endurer*
- 118/33-4 thus besy and sore occupye] *a ce entendroit*
- 118/36 botom of threde] *lineul de fil*
- 119/2-3 goo forthe, wyndyng of this  
botom of threde tyl he be come to  
his aboue of hys entrepyse] *lyra desuelopent tant quil aura fait sa besoigne*
- 119/4 shalle wynde vp to-gyder] *suyura*
- 119/5-6 lyghtly to the fyrst dore where  
he went ynn] *arriere*
- 119/6 by the counseylle of] *pour*
- 119/7-10 and came ayen oute of the  
place full soone / And anone after, he  
toke Adryane wyth hym, and secretly  
entred in-to his shypp / and made  
as goode waye as the wyndes wolde]  
*si se mist puy en sa nef & se mist en sa voye*
- 119/11 Mynos] *mynos qui moult fut dolent quant il le sceust*
- 119/12 this goodle] *ceste*
- 119/13-14 commaunded hym atte his  
departyng from Athenes] *dit*
- 119/30-1 wynges, and fastened theym  
to his arnes] *alles en ses bratz*
- 119/32-3 connyngly made] *par grand maistrise*
- 119/32-3 and flonghe oute at the wyn-  
dowes fro the prison where they  
were. But] *si monterent sur les fenestres & vollarent tant que*
- 119/35 wax waxed hoote, & beganne to  
melte] *eschauffa la cire*
- 120/4 Thebes] *tunes*
- 120/10-11 arryued in the saide yle of  
Enlyola] *arriuez (Cax. Tulyola, 116/29, Fr. eulolia)*
- 120/14 went Eneas / and there he wolde  
reste hym self awhile] *print repos encas deuant quil allast en celle ville qui est en celle forest*
- 120/15 Cryspyne] *crespic*
- 120/18-19 this mater I leue, for it is  
fayned, and not to be byleuyd] *ce fut mensonge*
- 120/19-23 will knowe how enea wente  
to helle, late hym rede virgyle, clau-  
dyan, or the pistelles of Ouyde, &  
there he shall fynde more than  
trouthe. For whiche cause I leue it,  
and wryte not of it] *& qui la voudra trouuer si la quiere on [en] romant de enea ou en virgille*
- 120/23-4 had taken his reste there  
awhile / he and his folke departed  
from theus] *se partit de la*
- 120/25 ytalie, in a] *ytalicon rne*
- 120/26 tonyre] *toine*
- 120/28 maryners] *maistres mariniers*
- 120/30 entred within the hauene] *prinrent port (Cax. has 'wthn')*
- 120/34 lauyne] *laume (always)*
- 121/1 many one] *bien sachez que maintz*
- 121/1-2 to be theire spouse] *en mariage*
- 121/4 preu and hardy] *preux*
- 121/7-8 Here It is shewed how many  
kynges had ben In ytalie afore that]  
*quantz roys auoit en ytalie quant*
- 121/11 that successuely] *qui*
- 121/12-13 Lanus, whiche dyde enhabyte  
there firste, & peopled the contree]  
*lanus*
- 121/15 auctours] *acteurs*
- 121/17 was a lyue] *estoit*
- 121/24 Iulyus] *iulien*
- 121/25 Suluyus] *simius*
- 121/27-8 consulle of the londe] *consciller*
- 121/31 enea & of his folke] *encas*
- 121/33 trenchers] *tailleurs (50 years earlier in England the trenchers were always of bread: see my Babees Book)*
- 122/1 all that was lefte] *tous leurs aultres relies*

- 122/5 a vysion] *division*  
 122/6-7 releef or brokelynges of his  
 borde] *relief*  
 122/7 his] *leur*  
 122/13 fynsshed] *assigne*  
 122/20 tolde hym] *rendirent que*  
 122/25 Tonyre] *tonire*  
 122/28 Lauynus] *lamimus*  
 123/10 barreys] *liecz*  
 123/19-20 of peas & of alyauunce] *paix*  
 123/20-24 and that he was not arruyed  
 in his londe for to doo to hym, nor  
 to the contrey, ony dommage / but  
 besoughte hym that he wolde not  
 lette hym of that he had enterprysed  
 to make a castell vpon his grounde  
 that was begonne] & *que en sa terre*  
*auoient prins port & quil ne le greuast*  
*pas en son chastel fermer*  
 123/28 wente] *vindrent & errerent*  
 123/35 wyses] *facons & manieres*  
 124/3 wente a pase afore theym, and  
 cam & shewed] *sen alla en la cite*  
*parler*  
 124/7 riche & pesable] *riches*  
 124/30 and also ryght and rayson re-  
 quyreth that ye doo soo] & *si y aurez*  
*droicture*  
 124/33 dyoneus] *clioneus*  
 125/3 comme In-to thys londe] *prandre*  
*ceste part*  
 125/9 hadde] *heu*  
 125/10-11 hadde lefte and habandouned  
 our owne contree] *en partismes*  
 125/15-16 hurte, domage, ne greuance] *greuance*  
 125/21 our permanente residence] *ar-*  
*restance*  
 125/23 Dyoneus] *Ilioneus*  
 125/26-7 was . . . prince of grete lorde-  
 shyppes] *eut . . . grand seigneurie*  
 125/31-2 ioye & good chere to ye mes-  
 sagers of eneus] *ioye aux messa-*  
*giers*  
 125/35 dyoneus] *clioneus*  
 126/1 praysed moche the troians] *prisa*  
 126/6 Darynus] *Annus*  
 126/11-12 mused a lytyll in hym selfe]  
*pense*  
 126/31 chare] *char*  
 127/1-2 altogyder as it was sayde and  
 doon] *tout laffaire*  
 127/6 aryued in that londe] *armez*  
 127/12-13 buylde and sette] *fermer*  
 127/21 frendes and kynnesmen] *amys*  
 127/26-7 gyue theyr doughter to a no-  
 ther, contrary to their promyse that  
 they hadde made to hym] *ce faire*  
 127/29 to make vp theyr] *en sa*  
 127/31 Lawrence] *laurence ou les nour-*  
*retons du roy estoient*  
 127/32-3 to hunte the wylde bestes]  
*chasser*  
 127/34 Syluya] *salma*  
 128/4-5 layed her hande oner him, for  
 to make hym fayr and enyn] *le*  
*plumast*  
 128/6 fed] *affere*  
 128/11 espyed] *cheoisit*  
 128/12 rought] *persa*  
 128/15-16 cryed and made mone after  
 hys manere] *brayt*  
 128/16 Syluya] *salma*  
 128/19 an-angryd and wroth therfore]  
*courrouce*  
 128/27-8 the most strengthe was styll  
 with the men of the countree] *la*  
*force si en estoit aux paisans*  
 129/2 chasse & dryue] *chasser*  
 129/6 effort made, & bigge estoure]  
*estour*  
 129/28 lawrence . . . ascanys] *laure*  
 . . . *astamus*  
 129/30 made] *furent moult*  
 129/31 mescayus . . . causus] *mesancius*  
 . . . *lansus*  
 129/33 of ytalie] *dypolite*  
 129/34 canulla] *decanula*  
 130/2 of medens] *de chers & de pucelles*  
 130/23 palatyne] *palatin darcadu*  
 130/28 Paleicya] *pabancia*  
 131/3 and sayd to hym] *pour ce quil*  
*le chascioit de son royaume. moult*  
*sentrecommencerent bien en parlant*  
*euander dist*  
 131/12 that were strong] *plus fort*  
 131/15 palence] *plaisance*  
 131/32 euander, & walked] & *a la*  
*departie se pasma le roy. atant sen*  
*allerent palus & eneus & errerent*

- 132/9 and made hem redy vpon the] *et se appareillèrent & ordonnerent aux*  
 132/11 visus] *visus*  
 132/12-13 & eight felawes with him] *esperonnant luy huytiesme*  
 132/15 out] *hors seurement*  
 132/18 dart] *espiot*  
 132/19 tourne of] *tour par*  
 132/20 he, & the other eyght] *luy huytiesme*  
 132/25 wente] *commença a aller*  
 132/26 see and knowe] *scauoir*  
 132/27 sonest] *myeulx & plus legierement*  
 132/30-1 that were nyghe the shore, for the men to come a lande] *au riuage*  
 133/1-3 sholde not flee thyderwarde for to saue theym selfe. They dyde thenne as turnus hadde commaunded / and brenned alle the shyppes] *ne sen fouissent. lors mirent le feu es nefz*  
 133/12 made goode chere] *entendirent de faire feste*  
 133/17 fortresse] *forteresse. car il estoit a grand plante pour estre entour la mote*  
 133/17-18 But noo body durst not auenture for to goo to hym] *mes nul ny ala*  
 133/21 for to entre vpon] *dauoir*  
 133/24 assured were, not doubted] *asseuez estoient ne ne se doubtoient*  
 133/33 waye thyder] *contree beau compains*  
 133/34 shal be rewarded ryght welle therfore] *en auray grant merite*  
 133/35 vnderstode hys felawe that spacke soo] *se trouua bien moeque*  
 134/2-3 be so famylier, and haue hadde so goode felyship] *heu tant de priuete & compaignee*  
 134/9 for to goo to enes] *a faire*  
 134/15 & also my self] & roy (?) *aussi*  
 135/1-2 to telle that that was to come] *de deuiner*  
 135/26 they hadde on theyre hedes] *erialus auoit en sa teste*  
 135/30 forest] *forest en signe*  
 136/1 forest] *forest a sonne*  
 136/2 path] *sentier prestez*  
 136/9 swete] *beau doulx*  
 136/13 noyse of the horses] *bruyt des cheuaulx & la noyse*  
 136/17 his enmyes about his felawes] *entour son compaignon*  
 136/25 horse] *cheual sans moult dire*  
 136/31 doun ded] *tout estandu*  
 136/33 The French chapter-heading is, 'Comment le conestable fit coupper les testes a deux compaignons, & turnus les fict mectre sur deus lances, & porter deuant le chastel.'  
 137/4-5 bolcus, the conestable, to be alle foreened wyth grete rage] *a froncer vobrene de mal talent & de grand ire a alumer*  
 137/6 cam] *venoient a dire ne qui ce leur faisoit*  
 137/14-15 bolcus smote eryalus] *voulent ferir erraclanum*  
 137/18 bolcus] *rolenus*  
 137/27-8 as longe that he myghte stande] *pour garentir sa vie*  
 137/29-30 wel sharpe cuttynge] *tranchans & esmoulues*  
 137/33 Bolcus] *rolcus*  
 137/34 Turnus] *cest*  
 138/1-2 sawe there theym that made] *trouuerent*  
 138/3 tentes] *tentes & mesmement muntour y estoit grand doleur demener*  
 138/4-5 sholde be] *fust gnerallement*  
 138/7-8 made . . . to be smytten of from theyr bodyes] *fit prandre*  
 138/9 and] *il les fit*  
 138/11 fere and abasshe] *esbahir*  
 138/15 the place] *aux murs*  
 138/16-17 trompettes for to gyne a sharpe sawte] *trompetes & bussines enlost pour assallir moult aigrement*  
 138/20 theyr pauesses] *targes*  
 138/22-3 logges, wyth sharpe yron atte the ende] *espieux aguz*  
 138/25-6 walles of theyr fortresse] *mur*  
 138/27 all-to burst theyre bodyes] *tout leurs corps*  
 139/4 the toure on a fire] *le feu en celle tour qui tantost fut par tout espandu*



- 139/5 alle in a flame] *enbrasee*  
 139/10, 13 Elecor] *liecors*  
 139/18 of the other] *daultre auoir grans assaulx & pesans*  
 139/31 tidynges] *nobles nouvelles*  
 139/33 was to grete] *moult fut laidaigne au port*  
 140/1-2 his knyghtes also, for to lette theym of theyr landyng] *sa cheualerie*  
 140/2-4 Eneas, that wyth his barons that were in his ship wyth hym, was landed first of alle / And defended the porte ayenst] *puyx que enas fut sur terre et quil fut arriue et monte sur son cheual il fit tirer urriere*  
 140/7 of the one parte / And of the other] *dune part et daultre*  
 140/8 atte his comynge vpon, he ouerthrewe & slewe Sythera] *de prime face quil arriua il occist chytere*  
 140/12 there] *qui adonc veist palas comme il faisoit merucilleux faiz d'armes et tous les autres aussi. La*  
 140/14 lapped] *aduint dont il fut moult doulent triste et courrouce*  
 140/21 wrothe and sore an-angred vpon] *courrouce & bien le compararent*  
 140/26 afore] *deuant. & sachez que moult voluntiers souffrirent contre leurs ennemis pour eulx venger aux espioitz tranchans et asserez & aux especs*  
 140/28-9 the dethe] *lamour*  
 140/31 valyaunt / preu] *preux*  
 140/32 fende] *dyable*  
 141/1 harme, and euylles] *de maux*  
 141/2 dyde transforme hym self] *se mist*  
 141/14 sette nought by hys enchauntementes] *nen chaillloit gueres*  
 141/16-17 of Eneas that was nyghe by the shores] *du riuaige*  
 141/31 that heelde hit] *de quoy elle estoit atachee au port*  
 142/1-2 Eneas smote Merencyus wyth his spere in his thye a grete stroke] *merencius ferit enas d'une espee en la teste [cuisse in the after text]*  
 142/4-5 DVrynge this while that Turnus wende to haue chased Eneas] *Entre-tant*  
 142/5-6 thykest presse of the bataylle] *bataille*  
 142/7-8 to their deth wyth his swerde] *a martire*  
 142/11 soo sore an-angred he was] *tant estoit courrouce te (et) forceine*  
 142/14-5 hadde broughte hym to this grete sorowe] *auoit embate en ce point*  
 142/16 slayne afore his eyen] *destranchier*  
 142/21-23 of tonyre, wyth the streme that was so bigge, tyll that it cam in-to the hauen of the cyte of darda, where as kyng daryus] *dantoirs nuresta onques deuant au port de la cite le roy darinus*  
 142/26 Lansus] *lazus*  
 142/30 troians] *gens enas*  
 142/33-4 afore hym] *deuant luy a dextre et a senestre*  
 142/34 sawe hym] *le vit et laperceut*  
 143/4 espyotte or spere] *espioit*  
 143/6 sore an-angred . . . ranne vpon Eneas] *moult ire & courrouce . . . luy courut sus a toute lespee nue*  
 143/9-11 his wounde bled alle to sore / and yet was a parte of the spere wythin / that greued hym ryght sore] *encores estoit la cuisse enchansee de la lance*  
 143/15-16 Lansus sawe his fader merencyus thus sore hurte] *enfent fut ainsi veu nature son pere*  
 143/21 teeth] *picz*  
 143/24-5 made his wounde to be shwed vppe] *fasoit couldre sa playe*  
 143/31-2 wyth the corpus / making gret mone, & cryeng full heuely] *a tout le corps a grand cry*  
 143/34, 144/1-2, sighe, wolde haue hadde grete merueylle / He rented his clothes, and tare hys herys from his owne hede, and] *doloser & ses cheueux detyrer*  
 144/4-5 to be dressed and bounden vp] *estandre et bander*  
 144/7 y<sup>e</sup> dethe of his sone vpon] *son filz de*  
 144/9 launche or cast] *lancer*



- 144/14 sone, I am] *filz . . . que tint  
amoye veez moy*
- 144/21 went vpon hym with a spere] *luy lanca vne lance*
- 144/23-4 Thenne rose there a grete  
noyse and a grete crye] *si y eust  
grand cry.*
- 144/27 coude be vpon hys fete] *se secust  
releuer*
- 145/2 shyppe, & sente It to his fader]  
*nef*
- 145/8 corpus] *corps*
- 145/10-11 of a kynge apparteyneth, &  
putte it in to a shippe] *de roy*
- 145/12 goten] *conquestec*
- 145/17-18 moder in lykewyse, for hys  
dethe] *mere*
- 145/19 with] *qui apporterent*
- 145/23 ha, a] *hee*
- 145/32-4, 146/1 I make were aienst  
turnus, that wold haue launcynge, the  
doughter of kynge Latynus, ayenst  
the wille of the goddes] *a turnus que  
le roy latin a sa fille fiancee.*
- 146/4-7 & that he that sholde haue the  
victorye ouer the other / he sholde  
haue the pucelle lawyne, & her faders  
good wyll with-alle / and the other  
that were ouercome] *sil nen vueult  
lonneur tous les dieux le donroient et  
l'autre*
- 146/7 his lyffe] *la terre et la vie*
- 146/9-11 & reporte to the kynge that  
that I haue saide, & that I wyll  
abyde by. And that he doo me to  
knowe] *si le dictes au roy et luy faictes  
entendre ce que turnus dit ie vous en  
diz*
- 146/13 fydelyte] *loyaulte*
- 146/25 dyde ceasse] *finerent & turnus  
fut reuenu de sa cite si comme vous  
auez ouy et vint a laurence*
- 146/34 ayenste Eneas / and that bare]  
*il enuoya*
- 147/4-5 After that he came agayne  
from puylle] & de la venoient les  
messages
- 147/9-10 afore Troye / we made to hym  
due reuerence] *a troye destruire nous  
le saluasmes*
- 147/19 Gatte nor wane] *gaignasmes*
- 147/21 knyghtes destroyed] *noble cheual-  
lerie*
- 147/26 other grekes] *ayaulx des autres*
- 147/34 strengthe and proesse] *rudeesse*
- 147/35-6 two hounderd knyghtes suche  
as he is, & in theyre companye] *c c.  
& auec*
- 148/1 troylus] *troilus comme ilz estoient*
- 148/2 wasted & distroied] *destruicte*
- 148/3-4 And Also ye muste vnderstande  
for veraye certeyne] *Car sachez*
- 148/4-5 reystence that was made ayenst  
vs grekes afore Troye] *demourance  
qui fut faicte*
- 148/19-20 as longe as that the goddes  
wyll be on his side] *quant est en la  
garde des dieux*
- 148/27 marcheth towarde ceÿlle . .  
grounde] *sestant iusques en ecaille  
celle terre tiennent . . montaigne*
- 148/30 townes, eytees] *villes*
- 149/1 for to knowe his wyll in this  
byhalue] *sil le fera & sil vouldra ce  
prendre.*
- 149/4 goode kynge] *roy chose est venue*
- 149/5 knowe well] *ne scauent mye*
- 149/8-9 wherby Eneas is vexed more  
stronge] & bien sachez que encas nous  
asserra tant dedans.
- 149/15 fyghte hym selfe alone] *combatre*
- 149/23-4 wyth hym, hande for hande]  
*qui le huche et demande. Then a  
fresh chapter ¶ Comment il fut diuise  
deuant le roy latin de combatre corps  
a corps*
- 149/24-5 turnus, that was come ayen  
to Lawrence . . . Drastes] *turnus . . .  
adrasan*
- 149/29-30 wylte not come nyghe yf  
thou mayste kepe the a side] *nen as  
que faire premiers*
- 149/31 firste that shall speke] *encas et  
turnus.*
- 149/33 Drastes] *drasan*
- 149/33-4 that he neuer sawe dyomedes  
fyghte wyth eneas] & a dire que  
encores auoient ilz gens assez iamaiz  
y ne vist diomedes pour chaser encas  
dehors la terre

- 150/2 though he were as stronge as | 151/19 conroe] *couroe*  
the deuyll] *se il nauoit plus grand*  
*force que il na.*
- 150/5 the sayd Eneas] *dictes d'encas*
- 150/9-10 for to comene and take the  
cyte by force] *pour la cite prandre*  
*& venoient pour lassallir*
- 150/14-15 that they sholde be redy  
right soone for to yssue out with  
hym] *quil sen yssissent a ses murs.*
- 150/16-17 bussynes and trompettes]  
*bucines*
- 150/18 launye] *l'ruime*
- 150/21 flee, & who sholde abyde] *fuir-*  
*oyent*
- 150/25 Canulla] *Canune*
- 150/27 hys knytes] *sa compaignie et*  
*contre sa cheualerie*
- 150/28-9 that Turnus sholde abyde  
wythin for to kepe the walles of the  
cyte / And she sayde, syre, lete me  
doo with] *vous demoures aux murs*  
*de la cite et vous ne lairez conuenir de*  
*maintenir*
- 151/6-7 crosbowes and my knyghtes]  
*cheualiers*
- 151/7-8 whan our enmyes shall be  
come in to / the narrow waye] *et sil*  
*sembat sur nous aincois quil soit hors*  
*du destroit*
- 151/10-18 ye shall abyde atte this side,  
for to goo vpon the troians whan they  
shall come / And thenne came there  
Mesapus wyth a goode bande of  
folke, whiche Turnus exhorted for to  
doo well / and that he sholde fyghte  
that daye vnder the banner of the  
noble & preu lady Canulla / And  
after that he hadde sette all his  
knyghtes in goode arraye] This trans-  
poses & alters the French: *et les*  
*tristramiens comux et taurix et mesa-*  
*pux et turnus en orta moult bien faire*  
[repeated below.] *Lors sen departit*  
*turnus luy et sa cheualerie et vous*  
*qui demourez commeneers le tournay*  
*et vous et vostre compaignie en ayez*  
*la cure ces parolles vint mesapus que*  
*turnus enorta moult de bien faire.*  
*Lors sen*
- 151/20 caules] *et caules*
- 151/23 fyght togyder] *batailler que*  
*oneques ny eul treus demandeos ne*  
*dune part ne daultre*
- 151/26 atte their comynge hande to  
hande togyder] *quant ilz assembler-*  
*ent*
- 151/27 And they] *tant sentremelloient*  
*et*
- 151/28 thycke and soo faste] *durement*
- 151/31 rebuked theym] *les misrent a la*  
*voye*
- 151/33-4 the chyeff capytaynes of the  
Latynes, wyth theyr compaignye well  
horsed] *les latins les chiefz des cheu-*  
*aulx*
- 151/35-6, 152/1-5 And the Latynes bare  
theym selfe full well a while, that by  
force of armes they made the troyens  
to retourne bak / But atte the last,  
the troyens that were neuer wery of  
bataylles / made there merueylles of  
armes, so that the latynes myght  
susteyne noo lenger the weyght of  
theyre sverdes / but were ageyne  
putte abak] *que force leur fut de*  
*retourner arriere*
- 152/9-10 by force of grete fayttes of  
armes] *a force*
- 152/12 destruction and grete slawghter  
made, bothe] *destruction*
- 152/13 barres] *liecs*
- 152/15-17 other that were ther, the  
queene Caunle dyde best In armes,  
and kyled and slewe the troyens on  
eyther syde of her] *les conrois y estoit*  
*la royne canulle.* (Caxton's *Caunle*  
*is for Canule.*)
- 152/18-22 a bowe, and a sheeffe of  
arowes hangynge by her syde; One  
tyme she shotte / Another tyme she  
smotte grete strokes with her swerde,  
and hewe, eleued, and eutted of hedes  
and armes clene from the bodyes]  
*lart et conroye plaine de sagetes dont*  
*assez auens transchoient mains bras*  
*& piez et corps sans attulance*
- 152/26 his offyee] *celle*
- 152/27 fayttes of knyghted] *cheualerie*

- 152/30 sore moche] *moult*  
 152/32 Anyus] *amus*  
 152/34 of the noble troians] *leur*  
 153/1 wrathe] *dueil*  
 153/2 slayne] *tue & occis pour sa grand forenerie.*  
 153/3 his oroysen] *sa raison*  
 153/6 swerde a vengable stroke] *espee*  
 153/6-7 soo that he dyde cutte the harneys / and made his swerde to entre in to] *et luy faulsa lermure & luy entana*  
 153/8-9 ferre wythin the body of her / soo that anone after, she felle ded to the grounde: And after] *& il luy mist ou corps & fer & fuist ensemble*  
 153/14 feelde] *estour*  
 153/16 fallen down from her horse] *cheue*  
 153/18-19 began all for to tremble and shake] *fremirent toutes*  
 153/19 recoueraunce] *retournance*  
 153/20 wythin the barreers] *vers les desirois des lices*  
 153/21 ouer throwen and cast down] *dabatus*  
 153/24 of Canulla, the worthy quene] *la royne*  
 153/28-9 chynualre vpon the mountayne, as it is said afore] *cheuallerie*  
 154/4-5 the Turnyens . . . wythdrew theym selfe in-to the cyte] *se yssirent ly rutier*  
 154/6-7 of the towne / where] *en leurs lices &*  
 154/8-9 was full sory and wrothe for] *eust grand ire de*  
 154/14 conenaunte] *conuenance*  
 154/15-16 pucelle laayne to his wyff] *femme*  
 154/19 bachelor] *iouuenceau*  
 154/21-2 well thyselfe, how grete a londe thou shalt haue in thy holde after thy fader is deceassed] *a tenir si grand terre du roy dauns ton pere*  
 154/24-6 maydens ben in ytalie, of noble blode / and of highe estate, of whiche thou myghtest chose one to be thy wyff] *femmes en ytalie*  
 154/29 haue] *auoye*  
 154/29-30 graunted her to the for to be thy wyf] *donnee et octroyee*  
 154/35-6 nomore / and no longer we may not well abyde wythin] *plus estre en*  
 155/5 hole & sounde] *sain*  
 155/6 Loke & beholde] *regarde*  
 155/13 finysshed] *esleuee*  
 155/16 that my honour and praysinge be encreassed] *eroistre mon pris*  
 155/18 fyghte wyth Eneas] *combatre*  
 155/19-20 of my body more nyghe goon] *nisse de ma chair*  
 155/22 goddesse] *diuerse (for decsse)*  
 155/23 yf I] *si ie ne me*  
 155/24 Amatha] *chamata*  
 155/29 seeste falle fro myn eyen] *me roys plourer*  
 155/31 wyth Eneas] *aux troyens*  
 155/34 When Laayne] *quant tolante & moult en eust couleur laume*  
 156/13 announce] *manccer*  
 156/15 ryght glad] *lyez et ioyeux*  
 156/17 playne afore the cyte] *plaine*  
 156/22 of bothe sydes] *sachez que du part*  
 156/28-9 conuenanntes were deuysed and made] *parolle fut affairment*  
 156/34-5 harde among a grete many] *par grand redeur et si ferit en vray troupeau*  
 156/35 water] *torpeau*  
 157/2 hepe of theym] *flote des aultres*  
 157/5 couered wyth theym] *tout espes. & si demenoient moult grand noyse apres laigle*  
 157/12 Turnyens] *ruticiens*  
 157/15 bytokenynge] *signifiance*  
 157/16-17 houered in theym selfe soo sore] *fremissoient*  
 157/20 Lordes turnyens] *Seigneur ruthilen*  
 157/22 lighted amonge the hepe of] *se ferit dedans les*  
 157/23-4 wasteth and dystroyeth] *degaste*  
 157/24-6 that we ennyroune hym rounde aboute wyth goode men of armes, as the swannes dyde] *le signe firent*

- 157 27 well I wote that] *sachez que il tiendra sa roye &*  
 158 3-4 of the one parte / And of the other] *deux part et daultre*  
 158 6-7 deuysed and made That Turnus and I shall fyghte for you alle] *diuiser que nous deux nous deuons combattre*  
 158 10 quarreyll] *saicete*  
 158 13 smote hym selfe in to] *se fit . . . dedens*  
 158 19-20 launche and caste] *lancer*  
 158 25 of Ozon of troye] *dujon de troye Eumides auon*  
 158 33, 159 1-3, ayenst me / whfore I shall gyue to the thy fyller therof / and with the same, he toke hys hand fulle of erthe fro the grounde, and fylled hys throte therwithalle, while that he was a passynge] *origiaus pourquoy est a mesurer largement la partie*  
 159 3-5 wite for verace trouthe, sayde Turnus to hym, that alle thus I shall rewarde theym of thy naeyon] *saches bien que tel toux si seroit de eulx*  
 159 15-16 and spored hys horse atte] *eaus tenoit en grant espiu et point*  
 159 17-19 And he had hys knyghtes made roome afore theym, and slewe doune many of the Latynes and turnyens att euery hande of hem] *et lui et la chevalerie lui eut grant cri*  
 159 20 Ytalyens, so that they trembled for feere] *rens des italians et fremereut*  
 159 21 Afram] *afrai*  
 159 22 Atherantum] *Aterantum*  
 159 31-2 went euer here and there alonge the wynges of the bataylles] *courroit les ens des batayls*  
 159 34 dyde Eneas] *jurant*  
 159 34 And] *Eaus*  
 160 6-7 they dyde soone as Eneas hadde commaunded theym] *ainsi put estre relaissu tantost comme il se dit*  
 160 10 a-fore] *en la premiere assemblee*  
 160 13 dysorde and varyaunce] *d'scours*  
 160 14 Eneas] *eaus et le recevoir a seigneur*  
 160 20-1 that the troians dyde atte vppre to the walles] *droier*  
 160 28 knowen in the towne] *seue*  
 160 30 Launye] *laine*  
 160 32-3 And pulled of his heeres] *seras*  
 161 1 that was made wythin the eyte] *de la cite et la erie*  
 161 3 thyhe] *espe*  
 161 4 walloque] *gal per*  
 161 19 art here, gawyringe about nought] *le vers choier et eul la montaigne*  
 161 20-1 he was ashamed, and ryght sore wrothe, and on-angerd] *en eut douleur & honte*  
 161 23 charyot] *cheual*  
 161 30 In a felde, one geynst the other] *en champ*  
 162 9 to-hewen and broken alle to peeces] *de ruyne*  
 162 15 the rynges] *a moule*  
 162 17-18 the sorowe that he made for y<sup>e</sup> dethe of Palas, that turnus had shyne] *eille douleur de palas*  
 162 24-5 the pucelle Launye] *laine*  
 162 26 wedded Launye, and hadde] *eut laine et*  
 162 34 royaume] *royaume sans ce quil en eust la seigneurie tous les iours de sa vie*  
 163 3-4 del that were yet in the feeldes] *qui occis estoient*  
 163 7-8 thoroughie all the royaume of ytalye] *de quoy elle estoit enprise*  
 163 10 Launye] *laine*  
 163 18 deyed / and deceassed] *trespassast*  
 163 20 werres] *guerres et milles*  
 163 20 Merencyus] *Merantium*  
 163 22-3 By cause that dethe toke hym soomer than he wende] *pour la mort qui lui fut trop prochaine*  
 163 26 was but yonge] *lui seroit*  
 163 32 wyth the thonder bolte] *de foudre*  
 164 22-3 her son siluyus betwene her armes] *son filz*  
 164 24 londe] *terre et de ses hommes*  
 164 25 Sylhyum] *selum*  
 164 25 appartenances] *aioustances ou appartenances*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 164/26 Ascanyus buylded] <i>Il estora</i>  | 165/20 CCCC] <i>troys cens</i>  |
| 164/26 of Albe] <i>darques</i>   | 165/21 the royaume] <i>le regne son frere</i>   |
| 164/32 Lombardye that were syth As-<br>canyus] <i>aseanum qui furent en lom-<br/>bardie</i>  | 165/27 Capys siluyus] <i>capis</i>  |
| 164/33 Romulus that founded Rome]<br><i>romulin</i>  | 165/28 Ehiberynus] <i>chiberinus</i>  |
| 164/34-5 heelde and buylded Albe] <i>tint<br/>albe et iusques au temps que romulus<br/>fonda romme il fut chief du royaume.<br/>ascanus mit nul hoir a qui il laissast<br/>apres luy sa terre fors que silinus son<br/>frere. A celluy laissa il apres luy<br/>tout son royaume.</i> | 165/29 Capetus] <i>capetus</i>  |
| 164/35 Syluyus] <i>silinus</i>   | 165/29 Syluyus] <i>silinus</i>  |
| 165/2 Syluyus] <i>silinus</i>  | 165/32 syluyus] <i>filius</i>   |
| 165/13 Syluyus] <i>silinus</i> (always)  | 165/34 After] <i>Apres armelius quentius.<br/>xxx viii. ans. Apres</i>  |
| 165/14 Iulyus] <i>iulum</i>  | 165/34-5 In this kynges dayes] <i>A cestuy</i>  |
| 165/18-19 vnto Ascanyus tyme, that]<br><i>cut iusques a la mort ascanus Silinus<br/>son frere</i>  | 166/2-3 shall here make an ende of this<br>lytyll boke / named Eneydos] <i>diray<br/>qui furent les commencemens deulx et<br/>des autres royaumes. Et soubz quelz<br/>roys les royaumes furent iusques au<br/>temps potius qui tint lombardie Car<br/>de eulx entre lenseigne pour lhistoire<br/>de thebs et de troyes Mais ainsi le<br/>demandoit oir le conte pour venir aux<br/>histoires de troyes.</i> |

166/4-9 ¶ *Cy finit le liure des eneydes compile par Virgille le quel  
a este translate de latin en francois Imprime a lyon par maistre  
Guillaume le roy le dernier iour de septembre Lan mil quatre cens.  
lxxxiii.*

The collation is 'a-c in eights, the first leaf blank ; d-g in sixes ; h-l in eights ; m, six leaves, the last blank. A most beautiful copy, full of rough leaves.'—*Huth Catalogue*, v. 1539. It has 61 quaint outline woodcuts the full width of the folio page, and about half its height. The chapter-initials are in red, done by hand. The full page has 32 lines. The Prologue, on a 2, is

**A** Lonneur de dieu tout puissant de la glorieuse vierge marie mere de toute grace. & a la vtilite & prouffit de toute la police mondaine ce present liure compile par virgille tressubtil & ingenieux orateur & poete intitule esneydes a este translate de latin en commun langage auquel pourront tous valereux princes & aultres nobles veoir moult de valereux faietz darmes. Et aussi est le present liure necessaire a tous citoyens & habitans en villes & chateaulx car ilz verront comme iadis trove la grant & plusieurs aultres places fortes & inexpugnables ont este assegies apremment & assaliees & aussi corageusement & vaillamment deffendues. Et est ledit liure au temps present fort necessaire pour instruire petis & grans pour chacun en son droit garder & deffendre. car chose plus noble est de mourir que de villainement estre subiugue.

This, with the first chapter-heading and its woodcut, fills the page. The contractions of the original are expanded as usual by me.







PR  
1119  
E5  
no.3.  
etc.

Early English Text  
Society  
[Publications]  
Extra series. no.3,54,57

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

